

## INFORMATION TO USERS

This manuscript has been reproduced from the microfilm master. UMI films the text directly from the original or copy submitted. Thus, some thesis and dissertation copies are in typewriter face, while others may be from any type of computer printer.

**The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted.** Broken or indistinct print, colored or poor quality illustrations and photographs, print bleedthrough, substandard margins, and improper alignment can adversely affect reproduction.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send UMI a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if unauthorized copyright material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.

Oversize materials (e.g., maps, drawings, charts) are reproduced by sectioning the original, beginning at the upper left-hand corner and continuing from left to right in equal sections with small overlaps. Each original is also photographed in one exposure and is included in reduced form at the back of the book.

Photographs included in the original manuscript have been reproduced xerographically in this copy. Higher quality 6" x 9" black and white photographic prints are available for any photographs or illustrations appearing in this copy for an additional charge. Contact UMI directly to order.

**UMI<sup>®</sup>**

Bell & Howell Information and Learning  
300 North Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106-1346 USA  
800-521-0600



UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

DEVELOPMENT OF A MULTIPLE PEPTIDE SYNTHESIZER AND  
COMPLEMENTARY MULTIPLE PEPTIDE PURIFICATION SYSTEM

by

Devon Leigh Husband



A thesis submitted to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research in partial fulfillment  
of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

Department of Biochemistry

Edmonton, Alberta

Spring 1999



National Library  
of Canada

Acquisitions and  
Bibliographic Services

395 Wellington Street  
Ottawa ON K1A 0N4  
Canada

Bibliothèque nationale  
du Canada

Acquisitions et  
services bibliographiques

395, rue Wellington  
Ottawa ON K1A 0N4  
Canada

*Your file Votre référence*

*Our file Notre référence*

The author has granted a non-exclusive licence allowing the National Library of Canada to reproduce, loan, distribute or sell copies of this thesis in microform, paper or electronic formats.

The author retains ownership of the copyright in this thesis. Neither the thesis nor substantial extracts from it may be printed or otherwise reproduced without the author's permission.

L'auteur a accordé une licence non exclusive permettant à la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada de reproduire, prêter, distribuer ou vendre des copies de cette thèse sous la forme de microfiche/film, de reproduction sur papier ou sur format électronique.

L'auteur conserve la propriété du droit d'auteur qui protège cette thèse. Ni la thèse ni des extraits substantiels de celle-ci ne doivent être imprimés ou autrement reproduits sans son autorisation.

0-612-39541-3



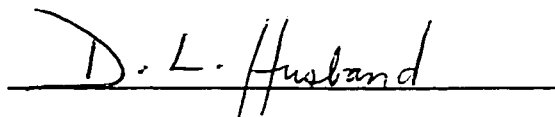
UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

LIBRARY RELEASE FORM

Name of Author: Devon Leigh Husband  
Title of Thesis: Development of a Multiple Peptide Synthesizer and  
Complementary Multiple Peptide Purification System  
Degree: Doctor of Philosophy  
Year this Degree Granted: 1999

Permission is hereby granted to the University of Alberta Library to reproduce single copies of this thesis and to lend or sell such copies for private, scholarly, or scientific research purposes only.

The author reserves all other publication and other rights in association with the copyright in the thesis, and except as hereinbefore provided, neither the thesis nor any substantial portion thereof may be printed or otherwise reproduced in any material form whatever without the author's prior written permission.

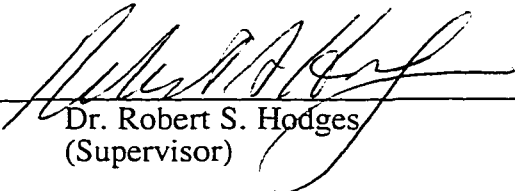
  
12707 Husband Road  
Vernon, B.C. Canada  
V1B 1N4

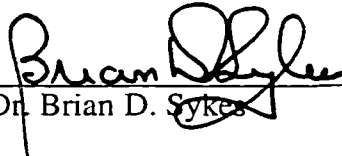
Date: January 4, 1999


UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

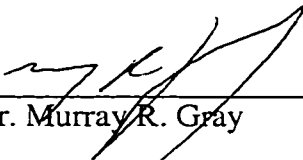
FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES AND RESEARCH

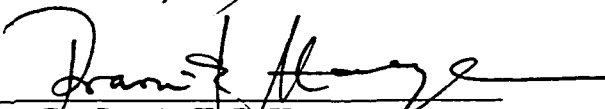
The undersigned certify that they have read, and recommend to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research for acceptance, a thesis entitled Development of a Multiple Peptide Synthesizer and Complementary Multiple Peptide Purification System submitted by Devon Leigh Husband in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy.

  
Dr. Robert S. Hodges  
(Supervisor)

  
Dr. Brian D. Sykes

  
Dr. Charles F. B. Holmes

  
Dr. Murray R. Gray

  
Dr. Pravin T. P. Kaumaya  
(External Examiner)

Date: December 22, 1998

## ABSTRACT

A simple, inexpensive semi-automated synthesizer and complementary peptide purification system have been designed to bring multiple peptide synthesis to general laboratory use. The synthesizer employs two versions of a dual-purpose reaction module containing an array of embedded column reactors to perform parallel synthesis and cleavage: a 20-reactor model conveniently designed for general use and construction of analogue series, and a 100-reactor model for large numbers of peptides and creation of peptide libraries. The novel valveless module uses positive pressure for maintaining solutions within reactors, aspiration for evacuation, and sparging for mixing. Solid-phase synthesis is based on Fmoc strategy; activated coupling solutions are added to reactors manually (permitting flexibility in synthesis chemistries for different reactors), while common washing, deprotection and cleavage steps are automated by a novel dispensing station for simultaneous delivery to reactors. A standard protocol for new practitioners provides consistent yield and purity over a range of synthesis scale.

A novel combination of sample displacement chromatography (SDC) methodology and solid-phase extraction (SPE) technology provides a simple, rapid and inexpensive process for simultaneous peptide purification under low pressure conditions for a range of peptide load, hydrophobicity and impurities. The main separation process occurs in the absence of organic modifier, greatly reducing solvent consumption and operating cost. The system employs two-stage purification units (formed from SPE cartridges packed with silica-based reversed-phase stationary phase) mounted on a vacuum-operated SPE processing station; each unit consists of a pre-column acting as a trap for hydrophobic impurities in series with a product isolation column. Crude peptide is applied in 0.05% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid at overload

conditions; hydrophobic impurities remain on the trap while product is displaced onto the product isolation column and hydrophilic impurities are displaced from the column to waste, and pure product is subsequently recovered from the column by elution with 50% aqueous acetonitrile. A reference set of model synthetic peptides spanning a range of hydrophobicity has been designed to determine key parameters for the development of standard purification protocols.

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

Bob Hodges, my supervisor, for his support and guidance.

Colin Mant and Lorne Burke for their invaluable technical assistance in the field of purification, and likewise Randy Irvin and Wah Wong in the field of immunological screening.

Bob Parker, Jack Moore, Terri Keown, and Mike Carpenter in the Alberta Peptide Institute for the benefit of their expertise and the use of their equipment.

Jonathan Tyler and his staff at Tyler Research Corporation, for their skill in all aspects of scientific equipment design.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   | Page |
|---|------|
| <b>Chapter 1.</b> Introduction .....                                  | 1    |
| <b>Chapter 2.</b> Peptide Synthesis Background                        |      |
| 2.1 Solid-phase Peptide Synthesis .....                               | 4    |
| 2.2 Development of Multiple Peptide Synthesis .....                   | 47   |
| <b>Chapter 3.</b> Design of a Novel Multiple Peptide Synthesizer      |      |
| 3.1 Design Process .....  | 55   |
| 3.2 Technical Description of Prototype .....                          | 62   |
| 3.3 Methodology .....   | 75   |
| 3.4 Synthesizer Validation .....                                      | 84   |
| <b>Chapter 4.</b> Synthetic Peptide Analogues (MPS application)       |      |
| 4.1 Peptide Analogues and their Uses .....                            | 100  |
| 4.2 Structure-function Study of the PP-1c Binding Motif .....         | 102  |
| 4.3 Background .....  | 104  |
| 4.4 Analogue Design and Synthesis .....                               | 110  |
| <b>Chapter 5.</b> Synthetic Peptide Libraries (MPS application)       |      |
| 5.1 Peptide Libraries and their Uses .....                            | 126  |
| 5.2 Construction of a Representational Peptide Library .....          | 135  |
| 5.3 Representational Library Screening and Assessment .....           | 141  |
| <b>Chapter 6.</b> Peptide Purification Background                     |      |
| 6.1 Conventional Peptide Purification .....                           | 161  |
| 6.2 Peptide Purification by Sample Displacement Mode<br>of HPLC ..... | 165  |
| 6.3 Development of Multiple Peptide Purification .....                | 176  |
| <b>Chapter 7.</b> Design of a Multiple Peptide Purification System    |      |
| 7.1 Design Proposal .....   | 179  |
| 7.2 Purification System Development .....                             | 183  |

|                    |  |            |
|--------------------|--|------------|
| 7.3                | System validation .....  | 211        |
| <b>Chapter 8.</b>  | <b>Conclusions and Recommendations .....</b>   | <b>224</b> |
| <b>Chapter 9.</b>  | <b>Bibliography .....</b>  | <b>226</b> |
| <b>Appendix A.</b> | Multiple peptide synthesizer:<br>Parts & Materials and Technical Drawings .....        | 238        |
| <b>Appendix B.</b> | Multiple peptide synthesizer operating manual .....                                    | 265        |
| <b>Appendix C.</b> | Semi-Automated Multiple Peptide Synthesizer (SAMPS)<br>Parts List and Automation ..... | 283        |

## LIST OF TABLES

| Table   | Page |
|---|------|
| 1      Recommended sidechain protecting groups .....  | 28   |
| 2      Selected functionalized resins .....   | 34   |
| 3      Selected resin handles .....   | 36   |
| 4      Selected activation method .....   | 80   |
| 5      Selected Fmoc-amino acids .....  | 81   |
| 6      Selection of a cleavage reagent cocktail .....   | 82   |
| 7      Selected peptide recovery methodology .....  | 83   |
| 8      Sequences of peptides for model syntheses .....  | 89   |
| 9      Characteristics of selected resins .....   | 91   |
| 10     KIQF analogue analytical data .....  | 117  |
| 11     Selected representative amino acids .....  | 138  |
| 12     Reduction in library size by the representative approach .....                                     | 139  |
| 13     Substitution of corresponding represented amino acids in<br>active sequences .....                 | 149  |
| 14     Positional frequency of representative amino acids in hits from<br>EXOS#50 initial screening ..... | 155  |



| <b>Table</b>  | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| 15 Sequences of model system synthetic peptides .....         | 170         |
| 16 Purification unit packing and operational procedures ..... | 196         |
| 17 Sequences of synthetic peptide standards .....             | 197         |
| 18 Selected silica-based reversed-phase packings .....        | 199         |
| 19 Initial estimate of trap-to-column packing ratio .....     | 203         |
| 20 Sequences of SDC synthetic peptide standard sets .....     | 217         |

## LIST OF FIGURES

| Figure   | Page |
|--|------|
| 1      Outline of solid-phase peptide synthesis .....  | 19   |
| 2      Boc strategy for SPPS .....   | 20   |
| 3      Boc deprotection .....  | 21   |
| 4      Fmoc strategy for SPPS .....  | 22   |
| 5      Fmoc deprotection .....   | 23   |
| 6      Common side reactions in SPPS .....   | 24   |
| 7      Merrifield peptide-resin link and possible cleavage products .....                                | 32   |
| 8      Peptide-resin link of BHA type amino-functionalized resins<br>and their cleavage products .....   | 33   |
| 9      Anchoring of peptide to resin using a handle .....  | 35   |
| 10     Oxazolone formation and racemization .....  | 39   |
| 11     Pre-formed activated acid halides and active esters .....   | 40   |
| 12     Carbodiimide activation and peptide bond formation .....  | 41   |
| 13     Structures of phosphonium <i>in situ</i> coupling reagents .....                                  | 42   |
| 14     Formation of OBt and OAt active esters from phosphonium<br><i>in situ</i> coupling reagents ..... | 43   |

| <b>Figure</b> |   | <b>Page</b> |
|---------------|---|-------------|
| 15            | Structures of aminium <i>in situ</i> coupling reagents .....              | 44          |
| 16            | Acidolytic cleavage of peptide from resin .....                           | 45          |
| 17            | Possible reactions of TFA and scavengers with protected peptide .....     | 46          |
| 18            | Schematic representation of multiple peptide synthesizer prototype .....  | 68          |
| 19            | Schematic representation of evaporator .....                              | 74          |
| 20            | Structures of selected resins .....                                       | 90          |
| 21            | Angiotensin II test synthesis on selected resins .....                    | 92          |
| 22            | Coupling time effect in the angiotensin II synthesis .....                | 93          |
| 23            | Short coupling concentration effect in the angiotensin II synthesis ..... | 94          |
| 24            | Long coupling concentration effect in the angiotensin II synthesis .....  | 95          |
| 25            | Short coupling concentration effect in the ACP[65-74] synthesis .....     | 96          |
| 26            | Long coupling concentration effect in the ACP[65-74] synthesis .....      | 97          |
| 27            | Effect of synthesis scale in the ACP[65-74] synthesis .....               | 98          |
| 28            | Mixing effect in the angiotensin II synthesis .....                       | 99          |
| 29            | Generation of PP-1c binding motif analogues by sequence variation .....   | 103         |

| <b>Figure</b> | <b>Page</b>  |
|---------------|--|
| 30            | Sequence alignment of PP-1 binding proteins in the vicinity of the (R/K)(V/I)XF motif ..... 109  |
| 31            | Inhibitory activity of I-1 peptide sequences against PP-1 ..... 114  |
| 32            | I-1 and DARPP-32 potential analogue templates ..... 115  |
| 33            | I-1 analogue template length ..... 116   |
| 34            | RP-HPLC chromatograms of I-1[6-18] synthetic peptide analogues ..... 121   |
| 35            | Quality of I-1[6-18] analogue synthesis ..... 125  |
| 36            | Schematic diagram of split synthesis procedure ..... 133   |
| 37            | Common SPCL formats ..... 134  |
| 38            | Overview of triple-defined representative library synthesis ..... 140  |
| 39            | Screening of dual-defined RPCLs: Competitive inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144] ..... 148   |
| 40            | Screening of O <sub>1</sub> O <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> X <sub>4</sub> X <sub>5</sub> X <sub>6</sub> RPCL: Competitive inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144] ..... 150 |
| 41            | Comparison of exoenzyme S and the C-terminal region sequences of eight <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> pilin strains ..... 152   |
| 42            | Screening of O <sub>1</sub> O <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> X <sub>4</sub> X <sub>5</sub> X <sub>6</sub> RPCL: Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili ..... 153   |

| <b>Figure</b> |   | <b>Page</b> |
|---------------|---|-------------|
| 43            | Selection of triple-defined RPCL best hits for deconvolution .....  | 156         |
| 44            | Screening of O <sub>1</sub> O <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> O <sub>4</sub> X <sub>5</sub> X <sub>6</sub> RPCL: Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili .....                          | 157         |
| 45            | Screening of O <sub>1</sub> O <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> O <sub>4</sub> O <sub>5</sub> X <sub>6</sub> RPCL: Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili .....                          | 158         |
| 46            | Screening of QIQO <sub>4</sub> XX SPCL: Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili .....   | 159         |
| 47            | Screening of QIQTO <sub>5</sub> X SPCL: Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili .....   | 160         |
| 48            | Separation by SDC of peptide product (P <sub>2</sub> ) from hydrophobic peptide impurities (I <sub>3</sub> , I <sub>4</sub> , I <sub>5</sub> ) .....  | 171         |
| 49            | Separation by SDC of peptide product (P <sub>5</sub> ) from hydrophilic peptide impurities (I <sub>1</sub> , I <sub>2</sub> , I <sub>3</sub> , I <sub>4</sub> ) .....                             | 172         |
| 50            | Multi-column separation by SDC of synthetic decapeptide crude mixture .....   | 173         |
| 51            | Two-column SDC approach .....   | 174         |
| 52            | Two-column separation by SDC of peptide product (P <sub>3</sub> ) from hydrophilic (I <sub>1</sub> , I <sub>2</sub> ) and hydrophobic (I <sub>3</sub> , I <sub>4</sub> ) peptide impurities ..... | 175         |
| 53            | Schematic of multiple peptide purification system .....   | 181         |
| 54            | Performance objectives of two-stage purification unit .....   | 182         |

| <b>Figure</b>   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| 55 Schematic of two-stage purification unit .....   | 192         |
| 56 Preparation of purification unit .....   | 194         |
| 57 Operation of purification unit .....   | 195         |
| 58 RP-HPLC of synthetic peptide standards S <sub>2</sub> , S <sub>4</sub> , and S <sub>5</sub> .....              | 198         |
| 59 Capacity rating of selected reversed-phase packings .....  | 200         |
| 60 Variation of packing capacity with particle size and pore size .....   | 201         |
| 61 Effect of wash volume on peptide retention by packing .....  | 202         |
| 62 Effect of trap size on trap performance (two component sample) .....   | 204         |
| 63 Purification unit performance with optimized trap<br>(two component sample) .....                              | 205         |
| 64 Purification unit performance with optimized trap<br>(three component sample) .....                            | 206         |
| 65 Effect of product isolation column size on column size on<br>column performance (three component sample) ..... | 207         |
| 66 Effect of product isolation column size on sample component<br>retention (three component sample) .....        | 208         |
| 67 Purification unit performance at different sample loads<br>(three component sample) .....                      | 209         |

| <b>Figure</b>  | <b>Page</b> |
|--|-------------|
| 68     Effect of scale-up on sample component retention<br>(three component sample) .....  | 210         |
| 69     RP-HPLC of synthetic peptide standards:<br>Comparison of SDC sets with (S <sub>2</sub> , S <sub>4</sub> , S <sub>5</sub> ) test set ..... | 218         |
| 70     Performance of purification unit (five component sample) .....  | 219         |
| 71     Effect of hydrophobic trap size on trap performance<br>(five component sample) .....  | 220         |
| 72     Performance of re-optimized purification unit<br>(five component sample) .....  | 221         |
| 73     Effect of sample composition on purification unit performance<br>(five component sample) .....  | 222         |
| 74     Effect of hydrophobicity range on purification unit performance<br>(comparison of SDC standard sets) .....                                | 223         |

## LIST OF PHOTOGRAPHS

| <b>Photograph</b> |   | <b>Page</b> |
|-------------------|---|-------------|
| 1                 | Holm and Meldal MPS synthesis unit .....  | 59          |
| 2                 | Interior of synthesis unit .....  | 59          |
| 3                 | Bottom of synthesis unit .....  | 60          |
| 4                 | Reagent tray .....  | 60          |
| 5                 | Transfer of resin-bound peptides from synthesis unit<br>to cleavage vials ..... | 61          |
| 6                 | MPS synthesizer prototype (alpha-test version) .....                            | 67          |
| 7                 | Prototype reaction modules .....  | 69          |
| 8                 | Underside of reactor block .....  | 69          |
| 9                 | Collection base of reaction module .....  | 70          |
| 10                | Collection base prepared for cleavage .....                                     | 70          |
| 11                | Cabinet dispensing station .....  | 71          |
| 12                | Reaction module in dispensing station .....                                     | 71          |
| 13                | Interior of dispenser module .....  | 72          |
| 14                | Underside of dispenser module .....   | 72          |
| 15                | N-Evap evaporator .....   | 73          |



| <b>Photograph</b>   | <b>Page</b> |
|---|-------------|
| 16            Vac Elut SPS 24 sample processing station for SPE ..... | 193         |

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

### Amino acids:

|         |               |
|---------|---------------|
| Ala (A) | alanine       |
| Arg (R) | arginine      |
| Asn (N) | asparagine    |
| Asp (D) | aspartic acid |
| Cys (C) | cysteine      |
| Gln (Q) | glutamine     |
| Glu (E) | glutamic acid |
| Gly (G) | glycine       |
| His (H) | histidine     |
| Ile (I) | isoleucine    |
| Leu (L) | leucine       |
| Lys (K) | lysine        |
| Met (M) | methionine    |
| Phe (F) | phenylalanine |
| Pro (P) | proline       |
| Ser (S) | serine        |
| Thr (T) | threonine     |
| Trp (W) | tryptophan    |
| Tyr (Y) | tyrosine      |
| Val (V) | valine        |

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 2-BrZ                   | 2-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl   |
| 2-ClZ                   | 2-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl  |
| 2,6-Cl <sub>2</sub> Bzl | 2,6-dichlorobenzyl   |
| Ac                      | acetyl   |
| Acm                     | acetamidomethyl  |
| ACP                     | acyl carrier protein   |
| ACTH                    | adrenocorticotropin hormone  |
| AOP                     | (7-azabenzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium<br>hexafluorophosphate |
| BHA                     | benzhydrylamine resin  |
| Boc                     | t-butyloxycarbonyl   |
| Bom                     | benzyloxymethyl  |
| BOP                     | (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium<br>hexfluorophosphate       |
| Bum                     | t-butoxymethyl   |
| Bzl                     | benzyl ether   |
| cAMP                    | cyclic adenosine monophosphate   |
| cdrill                  | counter drilled  |
| CHO                     | formyl   |
| DARPP-32                | dopamine- and cAMP-regulated phosphoprotein                                      |
| DCC                     | N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide  |
| DCM                     | dichloromethane  |
| DCU                     | N,N'-dicyclohexylurea  |
| DIA                     | diameter   |

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| DIEA           | N,N-diisopropylethylamine   |
| DIPCDI         | N,N'-diisopropylcarbodiimide  |
| DMAP           | 4-dimethylaminopyridine   |
| DMF            | dimethylformamide   |
| DMS            | dimethylsulfide   |
| Dnp            | 2,4-dinitrophenyl   |
| DVB            | divinylbenzene  |
| EDT            | 1,2-dithioethane (ethanedithiol)  |
| ELISA          | enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay   |
| EQ SP          | equally spaced  |
| Fmoc           | 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl  |
| G <sub>L</sub> | liver glycogen binding protein  |
| G <sub>M</sub> | glycogen binding protein  |
| HAL            | 5-(4-hydroxymethyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)valeric acid handle   |
| HAPyU          | 1-(1-pyrrolidinyl-1H-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-ylmethylene)-pyrrolidinium hexafluorophosphate N-oxide          |
| HATU           | N-[(dimethylamino)-1H-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-ylmethylene]-N-methylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate N-oxide |
| HBTU           | N-[(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)(dimethylamino)methylene]-N-methylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate N-oxide                |
| HF             | hydrogen fluoride   |
| HIV            | human immunodeficiency virus  |
| HMPA           | 4-hydroxymethylphenoxyacetic acid handle  |
| HMPB           | 4-(4-hydroxymethyl-3-methoxyphenoxy)butyric acid handle   |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| HOAt             | 7-aza-1-hydroxybenzotriazole                                 |
| HOBt             | 1-hydroxybenzotriazole                                       |
| HPLC             | high performance liquid chromatography                       |
| I <sub>50</sub>  | peptide concentration required for 50% inhibition of binding |
| I-1              | inhibitor protein-1  |
| I-2              | inhibitor protein-2  |
| ID               | inner diameter   |
| IRAA             | internal reference amino acid                                |
| LHRH             | luteinizing hormone releasing hormone                        |
| M <sub>110</sub> | myofibrillar binding protein                                 |
| MBHA             | 4-methylbenzyhydramine resin                                 |
| Meb              | 4-methylbenzyl   |
| MPS              | multiple peptide synthesis                                   |
| Mtr              | 4-methoxy-2,3,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl                     |
| Mts              | mesitylene-2-sulfonyl  |
| NIPP-1           | nuclear inhibitor of protein phosphatase-1                   |
| NMM              | N-methylmorpholine   |
| Nonb             | 3-nitro-4-aminomethylbenzoic acid handle                     |
| O                | sulfoxide  |
| O-1-Ada          | 1-adamantyl  |
| O-2-Ada          | 2-adamantyl  |
| OAt              | 7-aza-1-hydroxybenzotriazole active ester                    |
| OBt              | 1-hydroxybenzotriazole active ester                          |

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| OBzl    | benzyl ester   |
| OcHx    | cyclohexyl ester   |
| OD      | outer diameter   |
| ODhbt   | 1-oxo-2-hydroxy-dihydrobenzotriazine active ester                              |
| ONb     | 3-nitro-4-hydroxymethylbenzoic acid handle                                     |
| OPfp    | pentafluorophenyl active ester   |
| OtBu    | t-butyl ester  |
|         |  |
| p110Rb  | retinoblastoma protein   |
| PAL     | 5-(4-aminomethyl-3,5-dimethoxyphenoxy)valeric acid handle                      |
| PAM     | 4-hydroxymethylphenylacetic acid handle  |
| PEG     | polyethylene glycol  |
| PKA     | cAMP-dependent protein kinase  |
| Pmc     | 2,2,5,7,8-pentamethylchroman-6-sulfonyl  |
| PP-1    | protein phosphatase-1  |
| PP-1c   | protein phosphatase-1 catalytic subunit  |
| PPG     | polypropylene glycol   |
| PTFE    | polytetrafluoroethylene (teflon)   |
| PyAOP   | (7-azabenzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium<br>hexafluorophosphate |
| PyBOP   | (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium<br>hexafluorophosphate      |
|         |  |
| RP      | reversed phase   |
| RPCL    | representative peptide combinatorial library                                   |
| RP-HPLC | reversed phase HPLC  |
|         |  |
| SAMPS   | semi-automated multiple peptide synthesizer                                    |

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| SDC                  | sample displacement chromatography  |
| SDM                  | sample displacement mode of HPLC  |
| SOP                  | standard operating procedure  |
| SPCL                 | soluble peptide combinatorial library   |
| SPE                  | solid phase extraction  |
| SPPS                 | solid-phase peptide synthesis   |
| SS                   | stainless steel   |
|                      |   |
| TATU                 | N-[(dimethylamino)-1H-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-b]pyridin-1-ylmethylene]-<br>N-methylmethanaminium tetrafluoroborate N-oxide |
| TBTU                 | N-[(1H-benzotriazol-1-yl)(dimethylamino)methylene]-N-methyl-<br>methanaminium tetrafluoroborate N-oxide               |
| tBu                  | t-butyl ether   |
| TEA                  | triethylamine   |
| TFA                  | trifluoroacetic acid  |
| TFMSA                | trifluoromethanesulfonic acid   |
| Tl(Tfa) <sub>3</sub> | thallium trifluoroacetate   |
| Tmob                 | 2,4,6-trimethoxybenzyl  |
| TMSOTf               | trimethylsilyltrifluoroacetate  |
| Tos                  | 4-toluenesulfonyl (tosyl)   |
| Trt                  | triphenylmethyl (trityl)  |
|                      |   |
| V <sub>col</sub>     | Total volume of solvated product isolation column packing bed   |
| V <sub>trap</sub>    | Total volume of solvated hydrophobic trap packing bed   |
| V <sub>unit</sub>    | Total combined volume of solvated trap and column packing beds  |
| V <sub>tube</sub>    | SPE tube volume   |
|                      |   |
| XAL                  | 5-(9-aminoxanthen-2-oxy)valeric acid handle   |

**Xan**

**9-xanthenyl**



We are indebted to the development of solid-phase peptide synthesis for the ready availability of synthetic peptides as tools in biological and medical research . The replacement of difficult, time-consuming, and labour-intensive solution synthesis with a more tractable solid-phase method amenable to automation, along with improvements in synthesis chemistries, purification, and analytical techniques, have made synthetic peptides accessible to investigators in the field of protein research. Application of these synthetic peptides to classical protein structure-function studies has significantly improved our understanding of peptide and protein structure and conformation.

This knowledge, in combination with rapid advances in molecular biology and immunology, is now suggesting new approaches and expanding opportunities for the application of designed synthetic peptides to a wide range of problems in biology and medicine. For example, peptide substrates of kinases, phosphatases, and proteases are now used not only in the isolation and study of enzymes, but also in the design of enzyme inhibitors. Synthetic analogues of peptides functioning as hormones, growth factors, cytokines, and neurotransmitters are used as tools to investigate the physiology and pharmacology of these peptides, and radio- and affinity-labeled analogues are used in receptor type and subtype characterization and isolation. The potential of peptide-based therapeutics is apparent: several peptide hormones and their synthetic analogues have already found use, including vasopressin, oxytocin, LHRH (luteinizing hormone releasing hormone), ACTH (adrenocorticotropin hormone), and calcitonin, and peptide inhibitors of a number of enzymes are in use or under investigation, most notably HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) protease.

Peptides can be employed as synthetic antigens for the preparation of antibodies targeted to specific protein sequences. Putative gene products are commonly assigned

and characterized using anti-peptide antibodies raised against synthetic fragments of the predicted protein sequence, and this technique has special application to the detection of protein processing intermediates. Protein antigenicity is routinely studied by epitope mapping with small (6 to 10 residue) synthetic protein fragments, and conformational analysis of antigenic peptide analogues provides information on molecular recognition processes between antigens and antibodies, and in similar fashion, between receptors and ligands. A novel approach to the search for antigenic sequences which requires no previous knowledge of protein sequence or native epitopes involves the synthesis of "peptide libraries"; screening these libraries with monoclonal antibodies raised against a native protein facilitates the discovery of not only linear epitopes but also "mimotopes", a concept introduced to describe discontinuous epitopes which mimic the essential binding properties of a native epitope (Geysen *et al.*, 1986). Both epitope mapping and library screening can be employed to identify candidates for the preparation of synthetic peptide vaccines, which should overcome toxicity problems of conventional whole cell vaccines and more easily incorporate antigenic variability.

These new approaches have prompted an escalating demand for synthetic peptides. While numerous automated synthesizers for both batchwise and continuous flow operation at various production scales have been available commercially since the introduction of the first instrument in the 1960s (Merrifield *et al.*, 1966), they have been restricted to single synthesis or a few simultaneous syntheses in series. This traditional technology is time-consuming and expensive when applied to analogue series, and totally impractical in the case of synthetic libraries where large numbers of peptides are involved - for example, a library of all possible hexapeptides requires the synthesis of  $20^6$  (i.e. 64,000,000) peptides! In response to the growing demand, a number of different concepts for multiple peptide synthesis (MPS) have been developed since the mid 1980s, yet various limitations have prevented commercialization in most

cases. Available technology may be expensive or require a certain level of expertise which may pose a barrier to the novice. Peptide products may be provided in unsuitable format or insufficient yield for routine use (designed primarily for ease in immunological testing rather than for aqueous solution studies). In addition, attention has focussed on multiple peptide synthesis while neglecting the equally important areas of multiple cleavage and multiple purification. Peptide availability has once again become an issue, especially for those lacking experience in the field of peptide synthesis.

This project was designed to address the need for simple, reliable and inexpensive multiple peptide synthesis, cleavage, and purification, thereby ensuring the availability of synthetic peptides to any investigator in any field who perceives a need for them and wishes to pursue their use. The project has been divided into two stages: the first concerned with the development of instrumentation, methodology, and applications for a multiple peptide synthesizer capable of multiple cleavage, and the second devoted to the development of a complementary multiple peptide purification system.

## 2.1 Solid-Phase Peptide Synthesis

Current peptide synthesis methodologies are based on solid-phase peptide synthesis (SPPS), an approach conceived and developed by R. B. Merrifield to provide an alternative to classical solution-phase synthesis which requires reaction conditions and purification procedures to be optimized for each synthesis intermediate (Merrifield, 1963). The introduction of a covalent attachment step to anchor the nascent peptide at its C-terminal to an insoluble polymeric support or resin allows excess reagents to be used to drive reactions to completion, and ensures soluble byproducts and unused reagents can be removed easily by filtration. Solid-phase synthesis proceeds at ambient temperature with high fidelity and yield using chemistries (protection schemes and reagents) proven in solution-phase synthesis, while avoiding the manipulation losses associated with the latter. A number of comprehensive reviews of SPPS have been written, including Erickson and Merrifield (1976), Barany and Merrifield (1979), Stewart and Young (1984), Merrifield (1986), Barany *et al.* (1987), Atherton and Sheppard (1989), Fields and Noble (1990), Fields *et al.* (1992), and Merrifield (1995).

As outlined in **Figure 1**, SPPS is based on sequential addition of  $\alpha$ -amino and sidechain protected amino acid residues to the anchored peptide. "Temporary" blocking of the  $\alpha$ -amino group during residue addition is provided by a labile protecting group and ensures peptide growth in the C-terminal to N-terminal direction, while "permanent" sidechain protecting groups prevent side reactions of trifunctional residues during peptide elongation. Each addition cycle consists of deprotection, neutralization (depending on protection strategy), and coupling steps. Deprotection involves removal of the peptide's  $N^\alpha$ -protecting group, and the resulting charged peptide intermediate

may require neutralization before residue addition can proceed. Peptide bond formation requires an activated carboxyl function on the incoming amino acid residue, and this is provided in the coupling step as a pre-activated derivative or is generated by an *in situ* coupling reagent. Once peptide elongation is complete, the final N $\alpha$ -protecting group is removed before cleaving the peptide from the resin under conditions which are minimally destructive towards sensitive residues in its sequence. Sidechain protecting groups, which remain in place during peptide elongation, are chosen normally so as to be released simultaneously with peptide cleavage from the resin, but they may be retained to provide protected fragments for further condensation or to undergo specialized deprotection procedures later in solution. Synthesis of homogeneous peptides requires that deprotection and coupling proceed to completion and both the peptide-resin anchorage and sidechain protection remain completely stable through each addition cycle.

The most widely used solid supports in SPPS are gel-type resins, i.e. inert, highly solvated and flexible polymer networks. Ideal for assembling relatively large molecules such as peptides, these matrices are composed of polystyrene, polyacrylamide, polyethylene glycol (PEG)-grafted polystyrene, or PEG-based composites, with evenly distributed functional groups acting as anchoring sites for peptide synthesis. Hydrophobic polystyrene resins crosslinked with 1% divinylbenzene (DVB) were the original SPPS supports developed by Merrifield and continue to be used today; average bead sizes of 10-200  $\mu\text{m}$  are available with chloromethyl, hydroxymethyl, or aminomethyl functional groups in typical loadings (i.e. functionalization levels) of 0.2-1.0 mmol/g. Polystyrene resin swells best in non-polar solvents such as dichloromethane (DCM); unfortunately, these solvents do not solvate peptide chains very well due to the hydrophilic nature of the peptide backbone, and resin swelling may change dramatically over the synthesis, making these supports

unsuitable for continuous flow operation. Peptide synthesis efficiency can be improved with the use of a solvent such as dimethylformamide (DMF) which not only swells the resin but also solvates peptide chains.

Polyacrylamide resins were conceived as a means to overcome the problem of inadequate peptide solvation leading to premature peptide termination, by providing a polarity comparable to the peptide chain being synthesized (Atherton *et al.*, 1978). This hydrophilic alternative to polystyrene resin consists of poly-*N,N*-dimethylacrylamide crosslinked with 5% bis-*N,N'*-acryloylethylenediamine and functionalized with *N*-acryloylsarcosine methyl ester functional groups. In contrast with polystyrene resin, polyacrylamide resin swells best in polar solvents such as DMF, but the improved flexibility is accompanied by greater fragility and insufficient mechanical stability to withstand continuous flow conditions. The problem of resin stability under these conditions has been solved by the development of low density, high permeability rigid matrices to support gel-type resins. Kieselguhr, an inert and porous material prepared from sediments, is one example of such a material, and is used as a matrix for dimethylacrylamide polymerization to overcome the problem of gel deformation (Atherton *et al.*, 1981); unfortunately, Kieselguhr is highly heterogeneous with a tendency to generate fines (causing reduced flow and back pressure build-up), and the supported resin suffers from low loadings (typically around 0.1 mmol/g). Macroporous polystyrene particles with a high degree of crosslinking (i.e. 50%) provide an alternative scaffold with improved flow properties, and polyacrylamide resin can be grafted by acryloylation to the matrix at aminomethyl functional groups (Small and Sherrington, 1989). These polyacrylamide-Polyhipe supported resins also permit higher loadings (0.3-1.0 mmol/g). Polystyrene properties have also been modified successfully for continuous flow operation. Grafting amphipathic PEG on to a polystyrene resin in a weight ratio of approximately 1:1 allows resin swelling in both

non-polar and polar solvents, provides reasonably constant swelling throughout peptide synthesis, and ensures a more mechanically stable support suitable for use in both batch and continuous flow modes of operation (Hellerman *et al.*, 1983; Rapp *et al.*, 1989). The PEG chains also act as spacers, distancing the site of peptide synthesis from the resin backbone by 7 to 10 (or more) ethylene glycol residues. One drawback is a lower loading than obtained with polystyrene resins. New resins have also been obtained by polymerizing functionalized PEG with a small amount of polystyrene or polyacrylamide, or with polypropylene glycol (PPG) to form a PEG/PPG network; the result is a highly crosslinked polymer with long PEG links (Meldal, 1992; Renil and Meldal, 1995 and 1996).

Within the last decade there has been considerable experimentation with alternative solid supports for SPPS. Surface-type supports require regular topology and a large surface area to provide an appropriate level of functional groups as sites for peptide attachment and to allow unhindered reagent access. Materials which have been tested include controlled pore glass (Büttner *et al.*, 1988), cellulose fibres (Frank and Döring, 1988), polyethylene filters (Büttner *et al.*, 1994), and sintered polyethylene particles (Cook and Hudson, 1996). While some of these materials show promise, none are available commercially. Surface-type supports can be extended by grafting linear polymers (normally polystyrene) onto a rigid surface such as non-crosslinked polyethylene to form film or brush polymers (Berg *et al.*, 1989), but the linear polymers are restricted to one-dimensional swelling and this may hinder the synthesis of long peptides.

The choice of protection chemistry is generally the key factor in the success of a peptide synthesis. The "temporary" N $\alpha$ -protecting group must be sufficiently labile to allow quantitative removal before each residue addition, while "permanent" sidechain

protecting groups must be capable of withstanding repeated N $\alpha$ -deprotection yet be removed under conditions causing minimal effects on the completed peptide chain. Two major protection strategies exist in SPPS. The approach developed in the classic Merrifield synthesis employs a common chemical mechanism for the removal of both classes of protection, relying on kinetic "fine-tuning" to ensure sufficiently large differences in reactivity between the "temporary" and "permanent" groups. Boc strategy (**Figure 2**) relies on graduated acid lability of the N $\alpha$  and sidechain protecting groups: the *t*-butyloxycarbonyl (Boc) group of McKay and Albertson (1957) is used for N $\alpha$ -protection and can be removed by moderately strong trifluoroacetic acid (TFA), while the benzyl-derived groups (ether, ester, and urethane derivatives) commonly selected for sidechain protection are removed simultaneously with peptide cleavage by a strong acid such as hydrogen fluoride (HF), trifluoromethane-sulfonic acid (TFMSA), or trimethylsilyltrifluoroacetate (TMSOTf). The Boc group is released as isobutylene and carbon dioxide, leaving behind the acid salt of the peptide-resin which must be neutralized by a tertiary amine such as triethylamine (TEA) or *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (DIEA) to generate the free amine for coupling (**Figure 3**). Incomplete neutralization can lead to activation of the TFA carboxyl function during the subsequent coupling step and premature peptide termination through trifluoroacetylation of the deprotected N-terminal.

Concern over the effect of repetitive acidolysis on the peptide-resin link (especially with increasing peptide length) and the possibility of acid-catalyzed side reactions has led to the development of an alternative orthogonal protection scheme, which relies on different mechanisms for the removal of the two classes of protecting groups. Since selectivity is based on differences in chemistry rather than reaction rate, the protecting groups can be removed in any order and in the presence of another class, which permits substantially milder conditions for removal and allows synthesis of



protected fragments. By far the most common example of this strategy employs the 9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc) group of Carpino and Han (1972) for N $\alpha$ -protection, and this group is removed by mild base treatment using a secondary amine such as piperidine; *t*-butyl-derived groups are commonly selected for sidechain protection, and are removed simultaneously with acidolytic cleavage of peptide from the resin by TFA (**Figure 4**). The Fmoc group is released as carbon dioxide and a highly reactive dibenzofulvene intermediate which is rapidly trapped by the secondary amine; a neutralization step is not required since the base-catalyzed  $\beta$ -elimination mechanism proceeds through a carbanion intermediate (**Figure 5**). This mild procedure is the method of choice for the synthesis of most modified peptides, including glycosylated, phosphorylated, and sulfated peptides. Fmoc protection strategy is employed in continuous flow operation due to the capability for real-time spectrophotometric monitoring of deprotection: the release of the Fmoc group can be followed at 300-320 nm to determine the progress of the reaction.

Sidechain protection for trifunctional amino acids must be compatible with N $\alpha$ -protection strategy, and is designed to minimize potential side reactions during coupling and the final deprotection/cleavage step. Protection is essential for the sidechains of aspartate (Asp), glutamate (Glu), lysine (Lys) and cysteine (Cys) residues, and may be desirable for other residues depending on peptide length, sequence, and chosen activation chemistry. A number of common side reactions are presented in **Figure 6**, and some recommended sidechain protecting groups for Boc and Fmoc strategies are listed in **Table 1**. The sidechain carboxyl functions of Asp and Glu are routinely protected as benzyl (OBzl) and *t*-butyl (OtBu) esters in Boc and Fmoc strategies respectively. During cleavage, Asp is susceptible to intramolecular cyclization through elimination of the sidechain protecting group and formation of an aspartimide, which then partitions to the desired  $\alpha$ -peptide and a byproduct in which the peptide chain

grows from the  $\beta$ -carboxyl function. Glu may also undergo cyclization, with subsequent rearrangement to form the  $\gamma$ -glutamyl peptide. Depending on sequence, the  $\alpha$ -to- $\beta$  rearrangement may occasionally pose a serious problem, which may be minimized by using a sterically hindered ester for protection of the  $\beta$ -carboxyl function, as provided by the 1-adamantyl (O-1-Ada) group in Fmoc strategy and either the 2-adamantyl (O-2-Ada) or cyclohexyl (Ochx) group in Boc strategy. The related uncharged amino acids asparagine (Asn) and glutamine (Gln) may be incorporated without sidechain protection, although there is the possibility of carboxamide sidechain dehydration and nitrile formation upon activation and Gln may also undergo acid-catalyzed intramolecular cyclization in Boc chemistry to form pyroglutamate during chain elongation (bringing about premature chain termination). Sidechain protecting groups such as 9-xanthenyl (Xan) in Boc strategy and 2,4,6-trimethoxybenzyl (Tmob) or trityl (Trt) in Fmoc strategy can minimize these problems, but may introduce others: the Xan group is not completely stable to  $N^\alpha$ -deprotection, the Trt group may cause steric hindrance of chain elongation, and all three groups may modify adjacent Trp residues during cleavage.

The  $\epsilon$ -amino function of Lys is best protected by the 2-chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl (2-ClZ) group in Boc strategy and by the Boc group in Fmoc strategy, while the guanidino sidechain of arginine (Arg) can be protected by benzenesulfonyl derivatives such as 4-toluenesulfonyl (Tos) or mesitylene-2-sulfonyl (Mts) in Boc strategy and by 4-methoxy-2,3,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl (Mtr) or the more acid-labile 2,2,5,7,8-pentamethylchroman-6-sulfonyl (Pmc) in Fmoc strategy. Most Arg derivatives are susceptible to  $\delta$ -lactam formation during activation, resulting in peptide chain termination if the  $\delta$ -lactam transfers the protected guanidino group to a free amino group; couplings are commonly performed in the presence of HOBt (1-hydroxybenzotriazole) to prevent this intramolecular aminolysis. Histidine (His) is

very susceptible to base-catalyzed racemization after proton abstraction from the optically active  $\alpha$ -carbon by the imidazole  $\pi$ -nitrogen, but racemization can be suppressed by  $N^\pi$ -blocking or by reducing the basicity of the imidazole ring through  $N^\tau$ -blocking. The former is accomplished by use of the benzyloxymethyl (Bom) group in Boc strategy and the *t*-butoxymethyl (Bom) group in Fmoc strategy, although final deprotection releases formaldehyde which in turn can modify other susceptible sidechains. The alternative  $N^\tau$ -blocking may also pose difficulties: in Boc strategy, the Tos group must be accompanied by appropriate selection of activation chemistry to avoid premature loss of the protecting group, while the 2,4-dinitrophenyl (Dnp) group requires a separate final deprotection using thiophenol before cleavage. In Fmoc strategy, this form of blocking can be achieved with the Boc group (although it is only reasonably stable to repetitive base-catalyzed deprotection), or more securely with the Trt group.

Protection of the sulfhydryl function of the Cys sidechain is the most challenging. Many protecting groups are available for Cys, including those which are retained through the cleavage step for removal after peptide purification (to allow formation of disulfide bridges); the latter require special reagents and procedures for removal: for example, the acid- and base-stable acetamidomethyl (Acm) group is removed by mercuric acetate followed by treatment with  $H_2S$  or excess mercaptan to free the thiol, or the protected residue is converted directly to a disulfide by treatment with  $I_2$  or  $Tl(Tfa)_3$  (thallium trifluoroacetate). Of the groups compatible with Boc strategy, the 4-methylbenzyl (Meb) group is optimized for removal by strong acid, and the protected residue may also be directly converted to the oxidized form (i.e. cystine) using  $Tl(Tfa)_3$ , while Fmoc-compatible Tmob and Trt groups are removed by TFA in the presence of scavengers to prevent Cys realkylation by the resulting stable carbonium ions. No protection is necessary for the sidechains of methionine (Met) and

tryptophan (Trp) using Fmoc strategy, but there may be occasion for protection in Boc strategy, in which case the sulfoxide (O) and formyl (CHO) groups are employed for Met and Trp respectively. The sidechain hydroxyl functions of serine (Ser), threonine (Thr), and tyrosine (Tyr) can be protected as benzyl (Bzl) and *t*-butyl (tBu) ethers in Boc and Fmoc strategy respectively, but during cleavage in strong acid the Bzl group on the Tyr phenol can migrate to the 3-position of the ring, making 2,6-dichlorobenzyl (2,6-Cl<sub>2</sub>Bzl) or 2-bromobenzyloxycarbonyl (2-BrZ) preferable for Tyr protection in Boc strategy. Deprotected Ser and Thr residues may experience N-to-O acyl shifts (i.e. intramolecular migration of the peptide chain from the  $\alpha$ -amino to the hydroxyl function) during strong acid cleavage of the peptide from the resin, but this is a very slow and reversible process.

The nature of the peptide-resin link anchoring the nascent peptide C-terminal residue via its  $\alpha$ -carboxyl group is also affected by the choice of protection strategy. In classic Merrifield synthesis based on graduated acidolysis, the first amino acid residue is attached through a *p*-alkylbenzyl ester link to a chloromethyl- or hydroxymethyl-functionalized polystyrene resin, and this ester link is cleaved by strong acid to yield the free peptide acid (**Figure 7**). Unfortunately, the link is slightly labile to TFA removal of the Boc group during deprotection. The benzyl ester link can undergo different reactions to yield a variety of C-terminal end groups: ammonolysis (for a peptide amide), aminolysis (for a substituted peptide amide), reduction (for a peptide alcohol), transesterification (for a peptide ester), and hydrazinolysis (for a peptide hydrazide, which can undergo further azide couplings in solution). However, these alternate cleavage procedures are not suitable for peptides containing Asp or Glu residues, since their sidechain carboxyl functions will be modified as well. This has led to the development of resins which anchor the peptide directly through the desired C-terminal functionality. Most important of these are the amino-functionalized resins, which

anchor the peptide through an amide bond and are designed to yield a C-terminal amide on cleavage by transferring the amino function from the support to the released peptide (**Figure 8**). Aminomethyl-functionalized resins are not suitable for this purpose, since the resulting peptide-resin link is completely stable to acid cleavage; however, modifications such as the addition of a phenyl ring to form benzhydrylamine (BHA) resin permits cleavage by strong acid (although yield may be affected by the nature of the C-terminal residue), and an additional methyl substitution to form 4-methylbenzhydrylamine (MBHA) resin provides a more appropriately labile peptide-resin link by virtue of the electron-donating ability of the methyl group. Other resin functional groups are available to release a variety of C-terminal modified peptides by the standard acidolysis of Boc and Fmoc strategies or the use of other cleavage agents. Examples of functionalized resins and the resulting C-terminal end groups produced on cleavage are presented in **Table 2**.

The development of bifunctional spacers known as linkers or handles provides a permanent attachment to the functionalized resin at one end of the handle (usually by means of an amide bond, although other links are possible) and a temporary attachment to the growing peptide at the other end (**Figure 9**). Advantages of employing a handle include potential use of any previously functionalized resin for synthesis, greater control over substitution levels, more versatile chemistry in the form of cleavage mechanism (i.e. acidolysis, reduction, photolysis, etc.), C-terminal end group, and compatible N $\alpha$ - and sidechain protection, and minimization of side reactions. Cyclic peptides can be synthesized using handles which attach to a sidechain or to an amide N in the peptide backbone. A new element is the incorporation of an internal reference amino acid (IRAA) such as norleucine between the handle and the resin functional group to provide a means of monitoring yields. Generally, the handle is attached to the resin before addition of the first amino acid residue, but a pre-formed version exists in

which the handle is linked to the initial residue, circumventing the possibility of direct peptide anchorage to resin functional groups. A selection of handles is presented in **Table 3**. The desire to develop a more acid-stable peptide-resin link than that provided by the classic Merrifield resin led to the development of the first PAM (4-hydroxymethylphenyl acetic acid) handle, which increases link stability by a factor of 100 through the addition of the electron-withdrawing acetamido group. Much of the subsequent effort has been directed at diversification by decreasing the acid stability of a handle to allow faster cleavage and/or use of a milder cleavage agent such as TFA in Fmoc strategy. This involves fine-tuning the structural and electronic features of the handle, and a common theme is the addition of electron-donating substituents, exemplified in the progressive acid lability of the handle series PAM < HMPA < HMPB < HAL by the corresponding addition of *p*-alkyl, *p*-alkoxy, *p*- and *o*-alkoxy, and tris-alkoxy substituents. The most common handles employed in Fmoc strategy are the HMPA handle for peptide acids and the Rink handle for peptide amides.

Once the nascent peptide is anchored to the chosen support, peptide bond formation with an incoming N $\alpha$ -protected amino acid can only proceed with high coupling efficiency if the amino acid C $\alpha$ -carboxyl group is activated. The best methods of activation generally involve conversion of the amino acid to a derivative with a good leaving group, but this tends to increase the risk of racemization around the  $\alpha$ -carbon through formation of an oxazolone (**Figure 10**). Fortunately, the presence of an alkoxy group in urethane N $\alpha$ -protecting groups such as Boc and Fmoc reduces the tendency to form an oxazolone, and decreases the tendency of such an oxazolone to racemize. Coupling methods can be divided into two major classes: coupling via pre-formed activated amino acid derivatives, and coupling via *in situ* activation of amino acids. Advantages of using the former include the high reactivity of the isolated derivatives and the simple byproducts formed. The most common pre-formed activated

species are acid halides and active esters (**Figure 11**). Amino acid chlorides have limited use since they can only be prepared and successfully stored using Fmoc-amino acids without *t*-butyl sidechain protection; amino acid fluorides are more widely used due to compatibility with *t*-butyl-based sidechain protecting groups, high solubility in organic solvents, greater stability, reduced risk of racemization, and the ability to couple successfully multiple sterically hindered residues. Common pre-formed active esters include pentafluorophenyl (OPfp) and 1-oxo-2-hydroxy-dihydrobenzotriazine (ODhbt) esters; 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (OBt) and the recently introduced 7-aza-1-hydroxybenzotriazole (OAt) esters are less stable and are not normally isolated. OPfp esters react more slowly but their use allows the incorporation of some amino acids (Asn, Fmoc-Ser, and Fmoc-Tyr) without sidechain protection, and the addition of HOBt or HOAt will speed up coupling; ODhbt esters react rapidly, but ester stability declines with prolonged storage.

Common coupling reagents which instead rely on *in situ* activation of amino acids include carbodiimides and phosphonium and aminium salts. *N,N'*-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC) is the most widely used of the carbodiimides in Boc strategy, although its byproduct *N,N'*-dicyclohexylurea (DCU) is insoluble in DCM and must be removed by filtration; other carbodiimides generate urea byproducts which are more soluble in DCM. *N,N'*-diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIPCDI) is used in Fmoc strategy due to the solubility of its urea byproduct in DMF. Carbodiimide activation proceeds through an O-acylisourea intermediate formed by interaction of the protected amino acid with the carbodiimide in a 1:1 ratio; the use of a 2:1 ratio allows the intermediate to react with the second equivalent of amino acid to produce the corresponding symmetric anhydride, while activation in the presence of HOBt produces the active OBt ester (**Figure 12**). All three activated species are capable of forming the peptide bond, but the symmetric anhydride is the least efficient due to the coupling of only one of the two

equivalents of amino acid. The presence of HOBt during generation of the active ester reduces the risk of racemization and prevents carboxamide dehydration during the coupling of Asn and Gln without sidechain protection. A modification for Boc strategy involves DCC-based preactivation of protected amino acids in DCM to form symmetric anhydrides; DCU is removed by filtration, and solvent exchange allows optimal coupling to proceed in DMF.

Other *in situ* activating reagents are phosphonium salts based on either HOBt or the recently introduced HOAt; the former includes (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (BOP) and (benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyBOP), while HOAt-based examples include (7-azabenzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (AOP) and (7-azabenzotriazol-1-yloxy)tris(pyrrolidino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate (PyAOP) as depicted in **Figure 13**. The reactive species formed in the presence of an equivalent of a tertiary base such as DIEA or *N*-methylmorpholine (NMM) are the OBt and OAt esters (**Figure 14**). Aminium analogues of phosphonium salts include *N*-[(1*H*-benzotriazol-1-yl)(dimethylamino)methylene]-*N*-methylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate *N*-oxide (HBTU), *N*-[(dimethylamino)-1*H*-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl-methylene]-*N*-methylmethanaminium hexafluorophosphate *N*-oxide (HATU), and 1-(1-pyrrolidinyl-1*H*-1,2,3-triazolo[4,5-*b*]pyridin-1-yl-methylene)pyrrolidinium hexafluorophosphate *N*-oxide (HAPyU), and the tetrafluoroborate TBTU and TATU equivalents (**Figure 15**).

The removal of sidechain protecting groups and release of the completed peptide are normally performed simultaneously in the final deprotection/cleavage step, and the reagents and procedures used depend once again on the protection strategy, although acidolysis is the procedure of choice (**Figure 16**). Acidolytic cleavage of sidechain

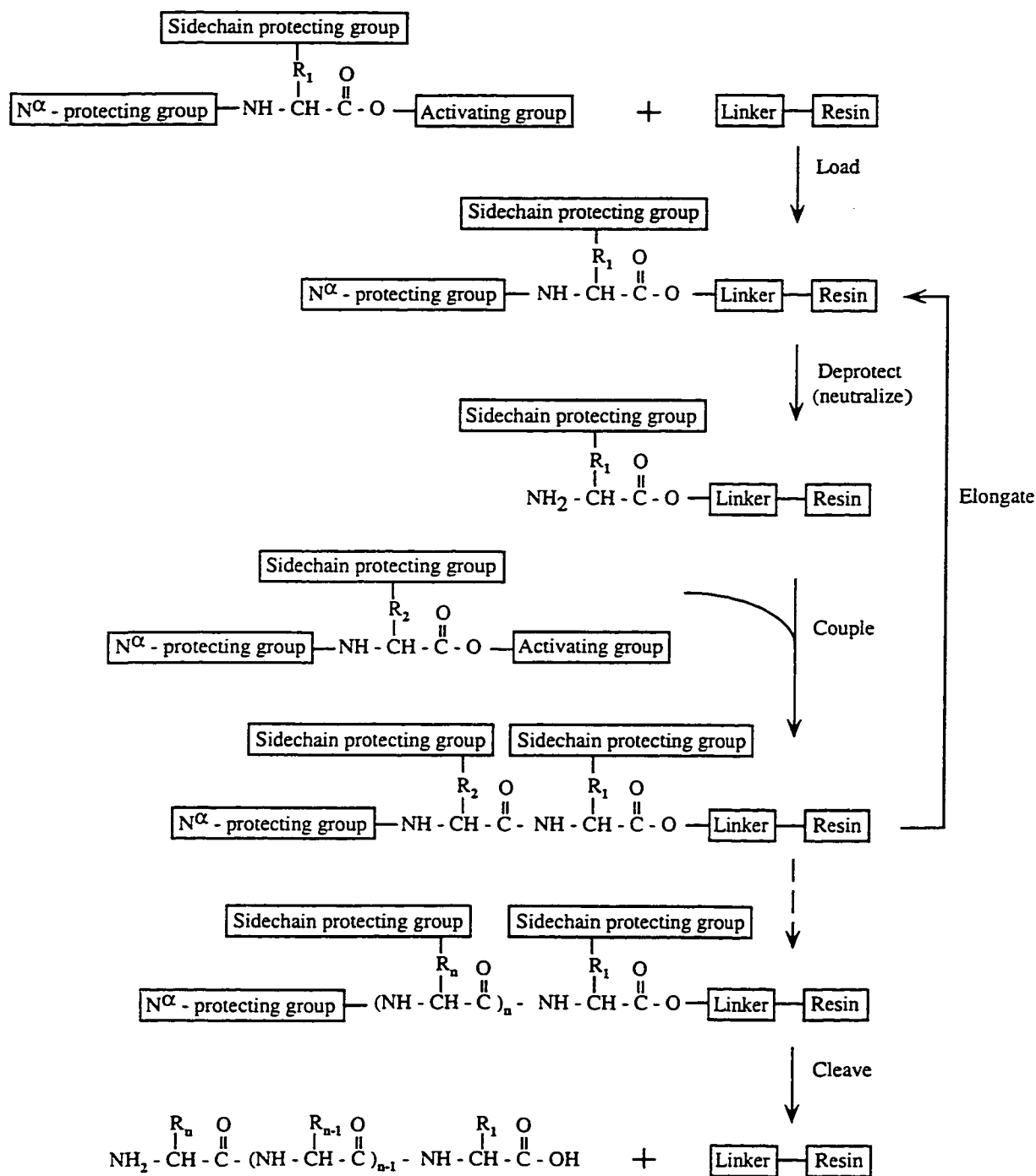


protecting groups generates reactive carbonium and acylium ions which can attack residues susceptible to alkylation: for example, benzyl and *t*-butyl carbonium ions readily alkylate Cys, Met, Trp and Tyr residues. However, these side reactions can be prevented by the addition of suitable nucleophilic scavengers to the cleavage reaction mixture. The most popular strong acid reagent in Boc strategy is anhydrous liquid HF, which appears to be the most versatile and least harmful cleavage reagent for a wide variety of peptides. Both time and temperature are important factors in minimizing side reactions, and HF cleavage is generally performed at 0° - 5° C for 45 - 60 minutes. A preliminary cleavage at a lower temperature may be performed to assist the removal of sidechain protecting groups, but this can be very slow and impractical when residues such as Lys (2-ClZ) and Arg (Tos) are present. Anisole is one of the most widely used scavengers, and other possibilities include DMS (dimethyl sulfide), *m*- or *p*-cresol, resorcinol, thioanisole, EDT (1,2-dithioethane), and ethyl methyl sulfide, or mixtures of several scavengers; thioanisole should not be used with Trp-containing peptides since thioanisole cation adducts can alkylate the indole ring nitrogen of Trp. Many of the side reactions observed in "difficult" cleavages can be circumvented by the low-high procedure of Tam *et al.* (1983), which employs an equimolar mixture of HF and DMS (1:3 by volume) to change the cleavage mechanism from S<sub>N</sub>1 (in which carbonium and acylium ions are produced) to S<sub>N</sub>2 (in which DMS attacks the protonated intermediate before the carbonium ion can form). This procedure prevents alkylation of Tyr by Bzl and 2,6-Cl<sub>2</sub>Bzl cations, acylation of scavengers by Glu side chains, and formation of succinimide peptides from Asp-Gly sequences, and reduces Met sulfoxide residues to Met. The procedure alone may not be sufficient to cleave peptides from MBHA resins if the C-terminal residue is sterically hindered, nor will it remove all sidechain protecting groups, but these problems can be remedied by following the procedure with a standard HF cleavage.

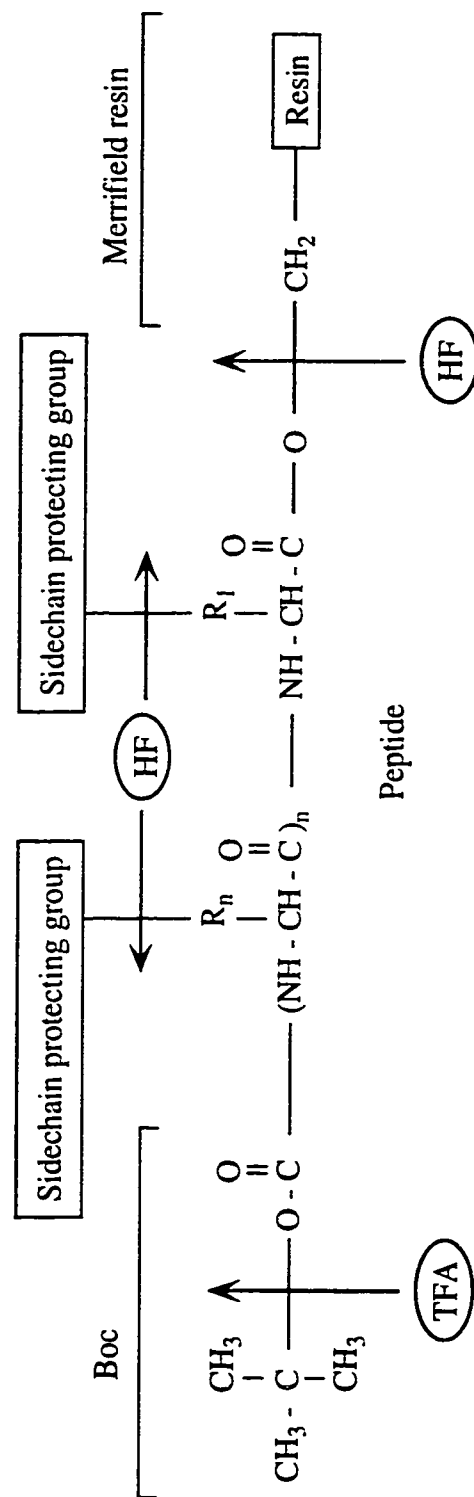
In Fmoc strategy, the acidolytic cleavage agent is normally TFA, and cleavage is performed at room temperature. Under certain circumstances, TFA may cleave at both the peptide-handle link and at the point of attachment of the handle to the resin, giving rise to handle carbonium ions which can alkylate Trp, and TFA itself may react with *t*-butyl cations to form *t*Bu trifluoroacetate. Highly reactive carbonium ions and sulfonyl species generated on cleavage of the sidechain protecting groups can alkylate or sulfonate susceptible amino acid residues, especially Met, Trp, and Tyr. Nucleophilic scavengers are required to prevent irreversible modifications to vulnerable residues of the peptide, and may even assist in the removal of stubborn sidechain protecting groups. The scavenger EDT traps *t*Bu, *t*Bu trifluoroacetate, Pmc, and linker cations, preventing their attachment to Met, Trp, or Tyr residues and reattachment of Trt to Cys, and also prevents oxidation of Trp. Water quenches the reactivity of *t*Bu and Pmc ions and inhibits the formation of a TFA adduct with EDT. Thioanisole prevents *t*-butylation and oxidation of Met and speeds up the removal of aryl sulfonyl protecting groups, and phenol assists in scavenging Pmc cations. As in Boc strategy, multiple scavengers are often required to quench all the reactive species originating from sidechain protecting groups and resin handles. Some examples of scavenger-protecting group adducts resulting from TFA cleavage are presented in **Figure 17**.

The final step in solid-phase peptide synthesis is the recovery of the crude peptide from solution. Post-cleavage work-up usually consists of cold ether precipitation of the crude peptide; peptide yield is improved by removing TFA from solution with a rotary evaporator prior to performing the precipitation. As an alternative, the cleavage mixture can be subjected to an ether extraction using a 50:50 water to ether solution, after which the peptide can be recovered from the aqueous layer by lyophilization.

**Figure 1**                      **Outline of Solid-Phase Peptide Synthesis**

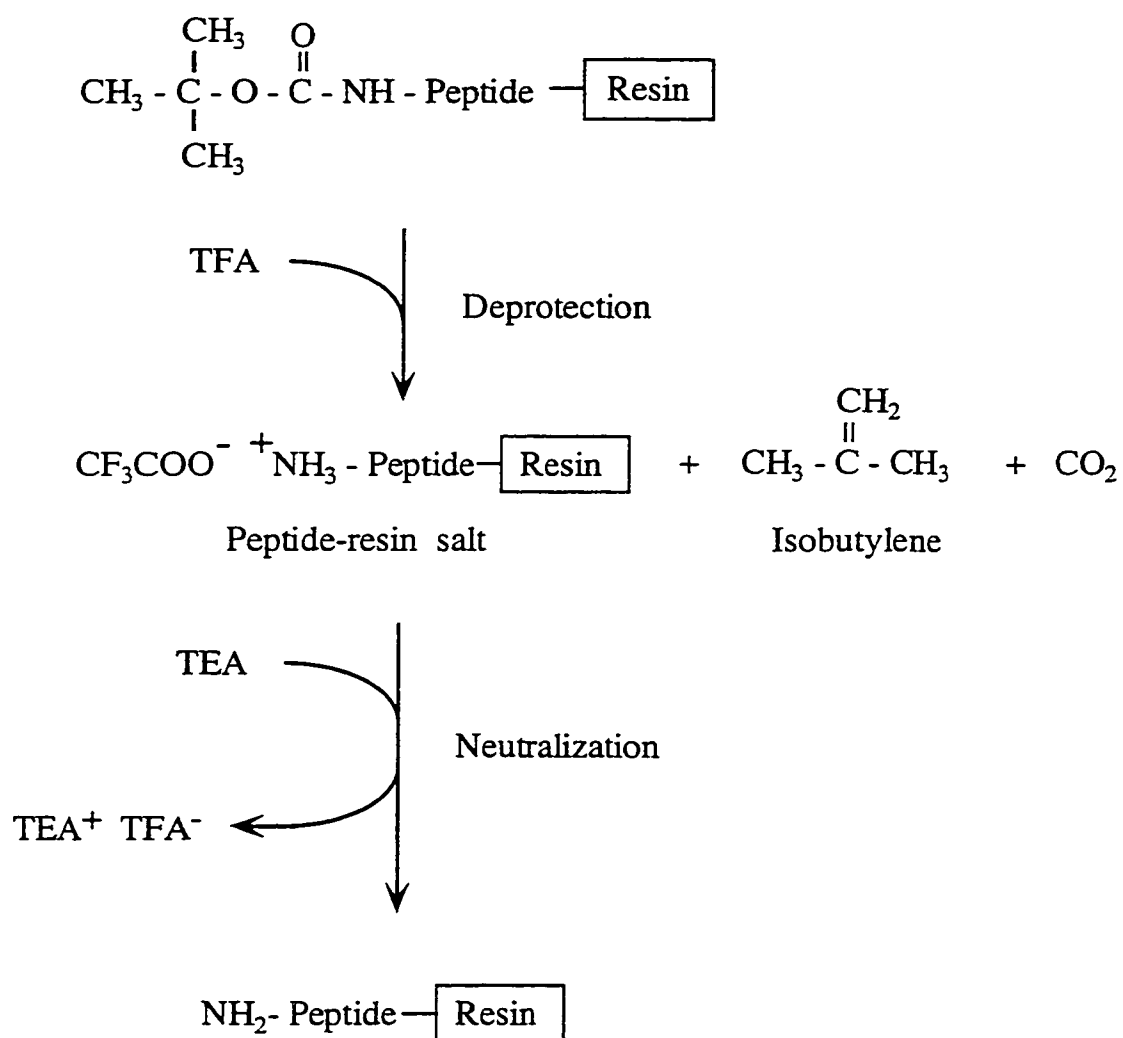


**Figure 2 Boc Strategy for SPPS**

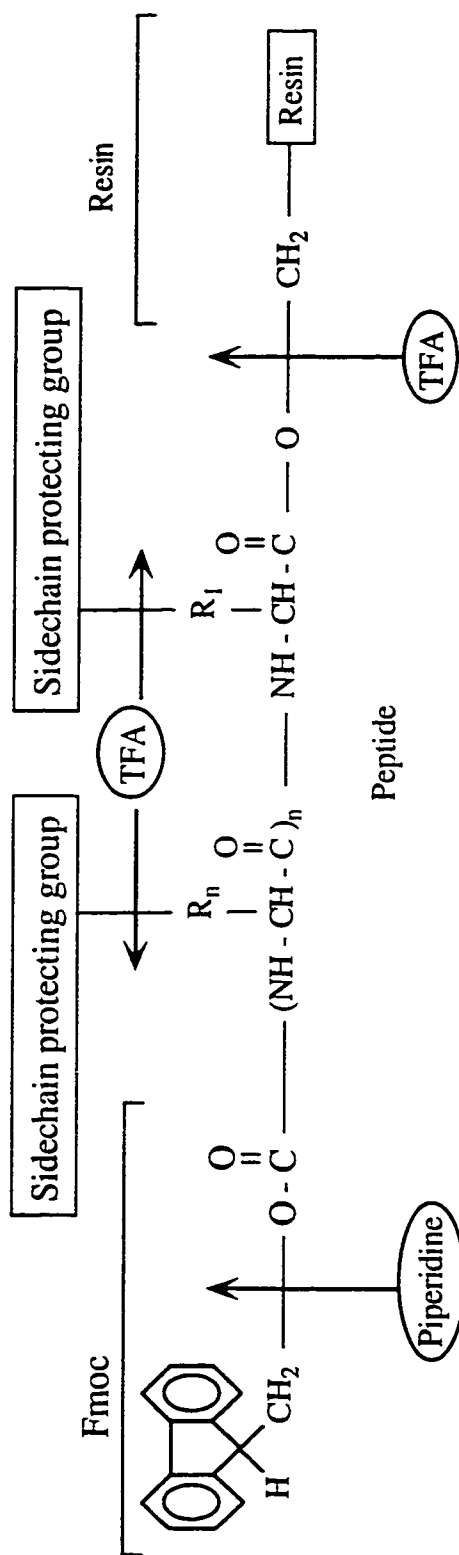


R = Sidechain of amino acid residue

**Figure 3      Boc Deprotection**

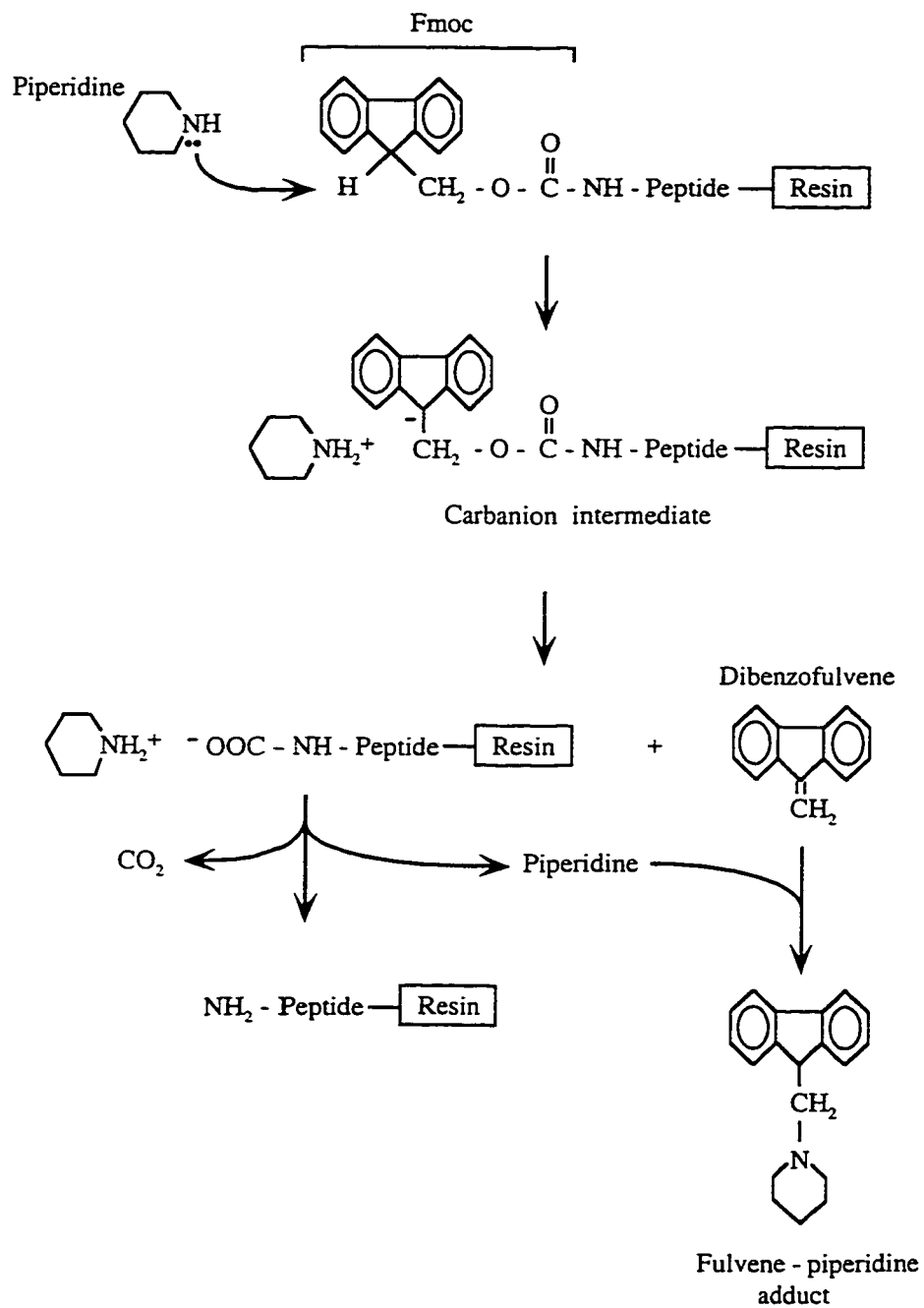


**Figure 4 Fmoc Strategy for SPPS**



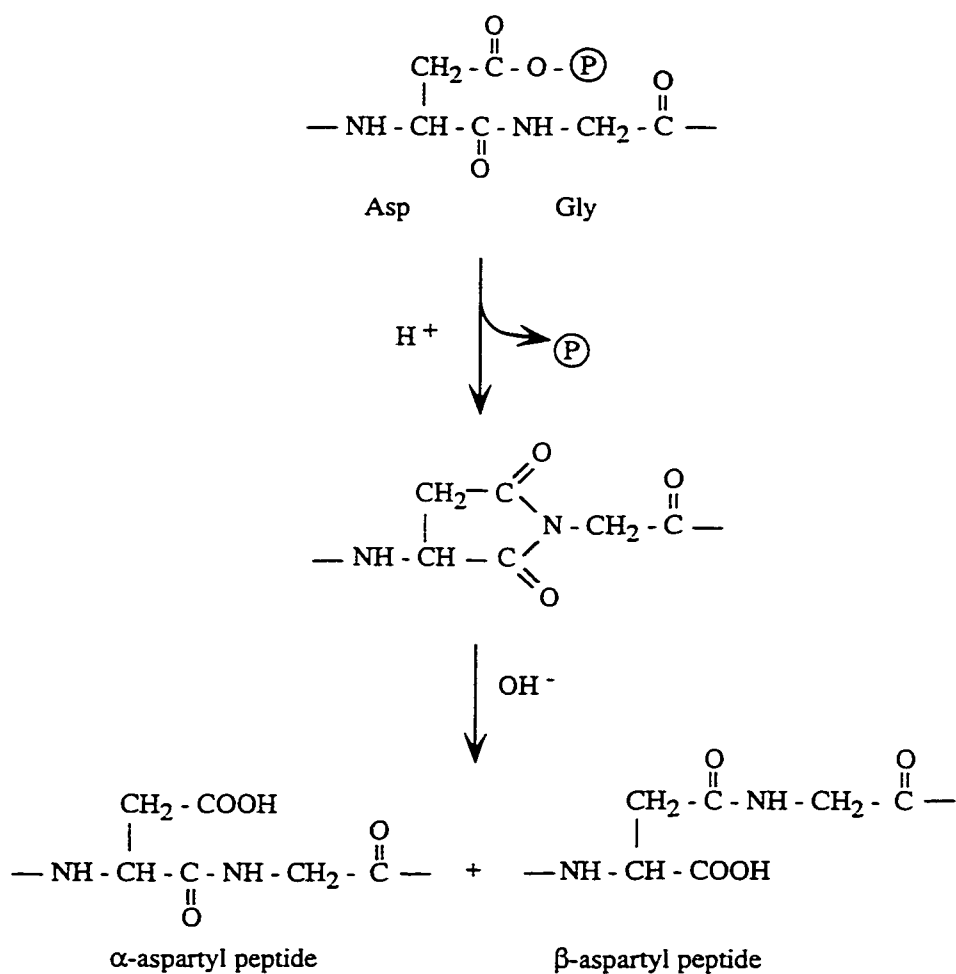
R = Sidechain of amino acid residue

**Figure 5 Fmoc Deprotection**



**Figure 6 Common Side Reactions in SPPS**

**A. Formation of  $\beta$ -aspartyl peptide**

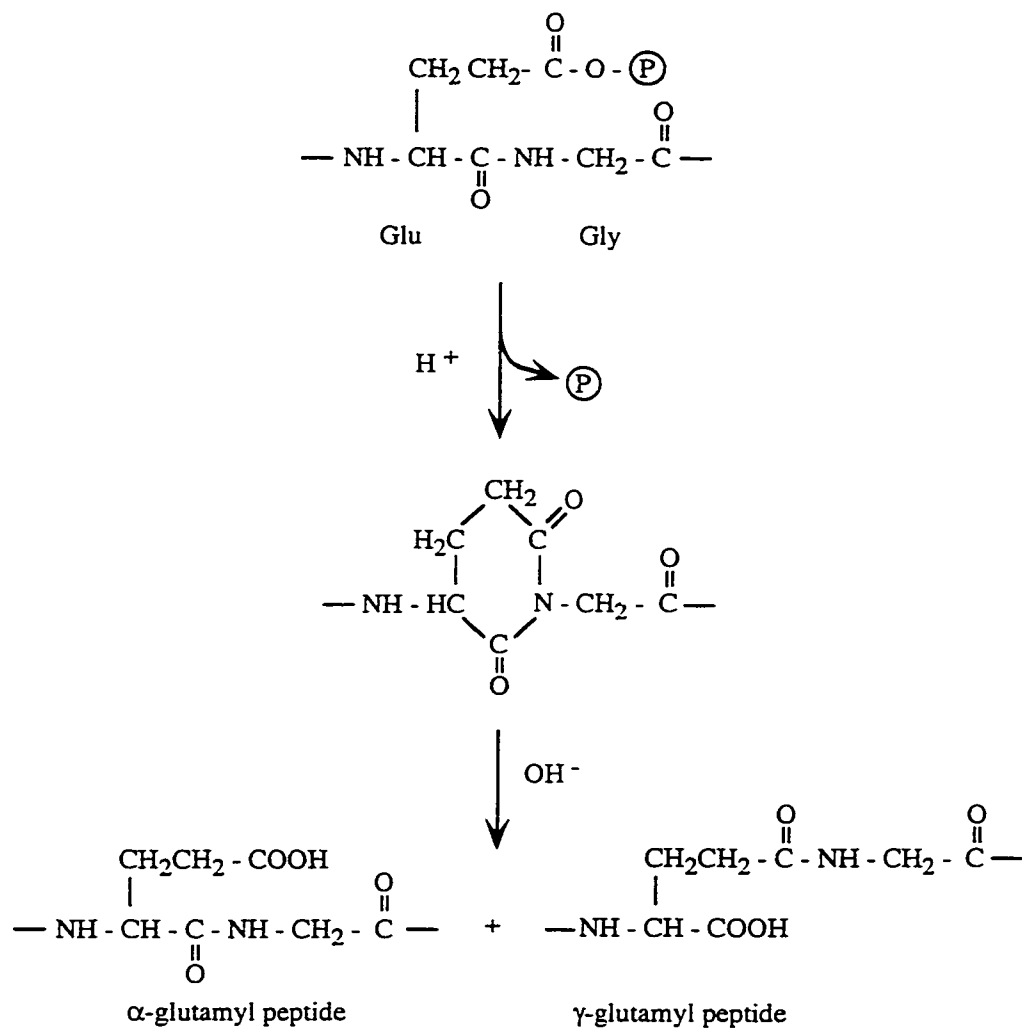


(P) = sidechain protecting group



**Figure 6 Common Side Reactions in SPPS (cont'd)**

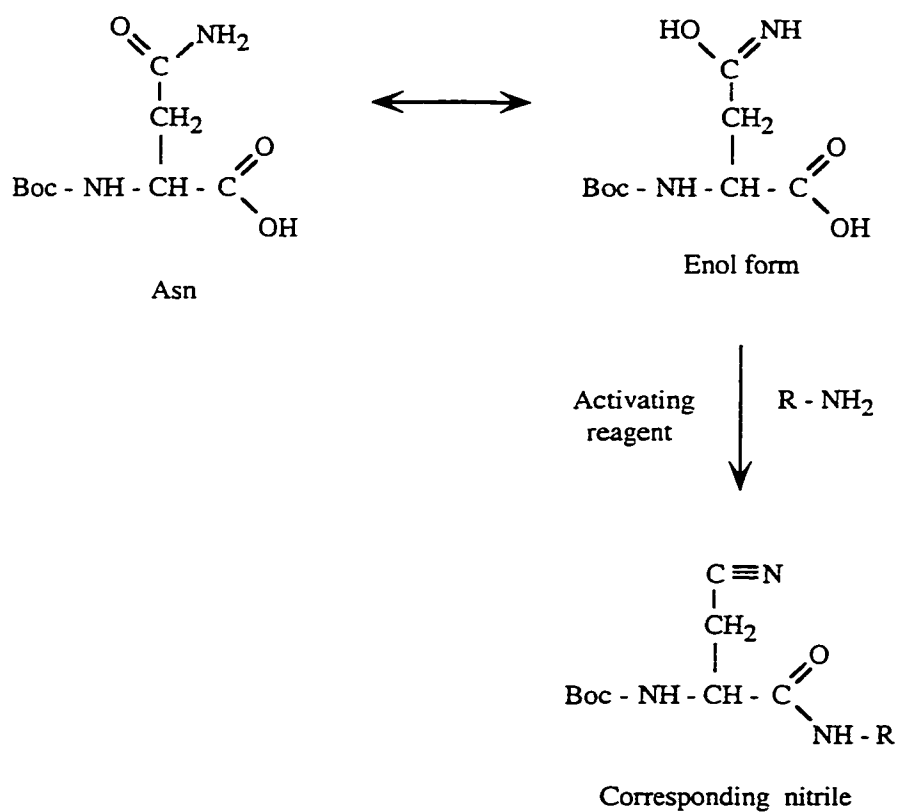
**B. Formation of  $\gamma$ -glutamyl peptide**



$\textcircled{\text{P}}$  = sidechain protecting group

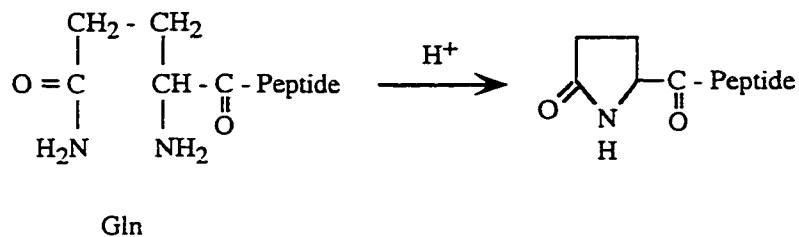
## Figure 6 Common Side Reactions in SPPS (cont'd)

### C. Dehydration of asparagine and glutamine

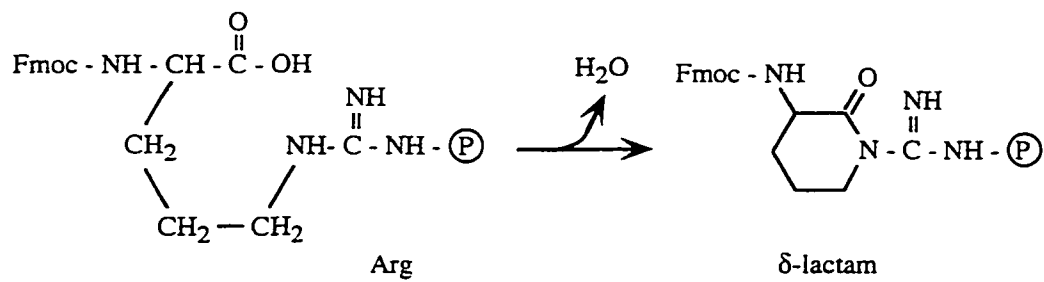


## Figure 6 Common Side Reactions in SPPS (cont'd)

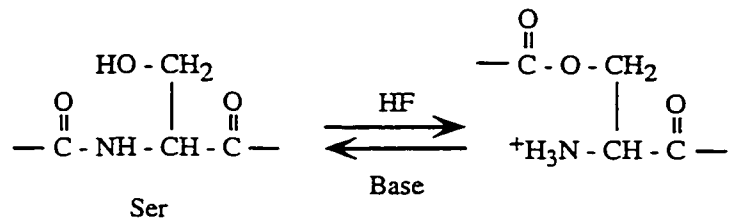
### D. Chain Termination By Formation Of Pyroglutamate



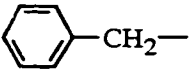
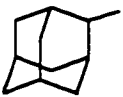

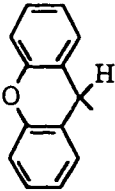
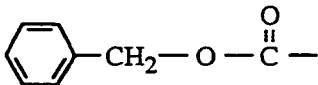
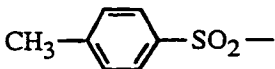
### E. Formation of $\delta$ -lactam from Arg



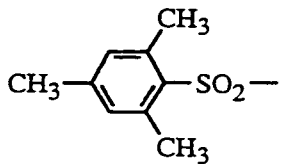
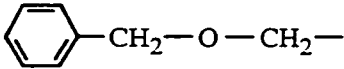
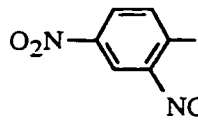
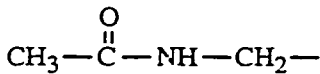
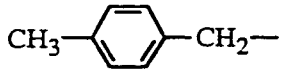

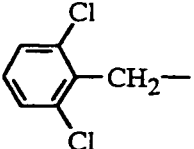
### F. N - to - O acyl shifts in Ser and Thr



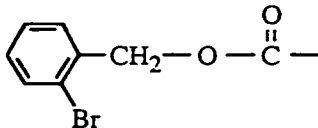
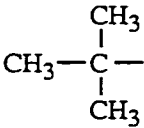
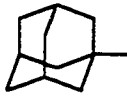
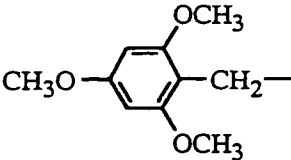
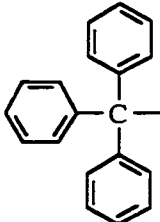
**Table 1 Recommended Sidechain Protecting Groups**

| Protecting Group   | Protected Amino Acid Derivative   | Removal                    | References  |
|--|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Compatible with Boc chemistry:</b>  |                                   |                            |   |
| Benzyl<br>                      | Asp/Glu(OBzl)<br>Ser/Thr/Tyr(Bzl) | Strong acid<br>Strong acid | Barany and Merrifield (1979)<br>Yajima <i>et al.</i> (1988) |
| 2-Adamantyl<br>                 | Asp(O-2-Ada)                      | Strong acid                | Okada and Iguchi (1988)                                     |
| Cyclohexyl<br>                | Asp(OcHx)                         | Strong acid                | Tam and Merrifield (1987)                                   |
| 9-Xanthenyl<br>               | Asn/Gln(Xan)                      | Strong acid                | Dorman <i>et al.</i> (1972)                                 |
| 2-Chlorobenzyloxycarbonyl<br> | Lys(2-ClZ)                        | Strong acid                | Erickson and Merrifield (1973b)                             |
| 4-Toluenesulfonyl<br>         | Arg(Tos)<br>His(Tos)              | HF<br>Strong acid          | Tam and Merrifield (1987)<br>Stewart <i>et al.</i> (1972)   |

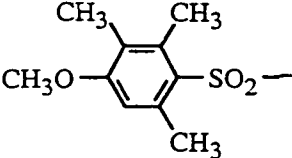
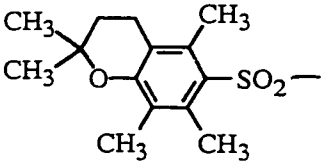
**Table 1 Recommended Sidechain Protecting Groups (continued)**

| Protecting Group   | Protected Amino Acid Derivative | Removal  | References                      |
|--|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| <b>Compatible with Boc chemistry:</b>  |                                 |  |                                 |
| Mesitylene-2-sulfonyl<br> | Arg(Mts)                        | Strong acid                                      | Yajima <i>et al.</i> (1978)     |
| Benzyloxymethyl<br>       | His(Bom)                        | Strong acid                                      | Brown <i>et al.</i> (1982)      |
| 2,4-Dinitrophenyl<br>    | His(Dnp)                        | Thiophenol                                       | Chillemi and Merrifield (1969)  |
| Acetomidomethyl<br>     | Cys(Acm)                        | Hg(II)<br>I <sub>2</sub><br>Tl(Tfa) <sub>3</sub> | Veber <i>et al.</i> (1972)      |
| 4-Methylbenzyl<br>      | Cys(Meb)                        | Strong acid<br>Tl(Tfa) <sub>3</sub>              | Erickson and Merrifield (1973a) |
| Sulfoxide<br>           | Met(O)                          | low HF+DMS                                       | Tam and Merrifield (1987)       |
| Formyl<br>-CHO   | Trp(CHO)                        | low HF+DMS<br>TFMSA                              | Bodanszky and Bodanszky (1984)  |
| 2,6-Dichlorobenzyl<br>  | Tyr(2,6-Cl <sub>2</sub> Bzl)    | Strong acid                                      | Erickson and Merrifield (1973a) |

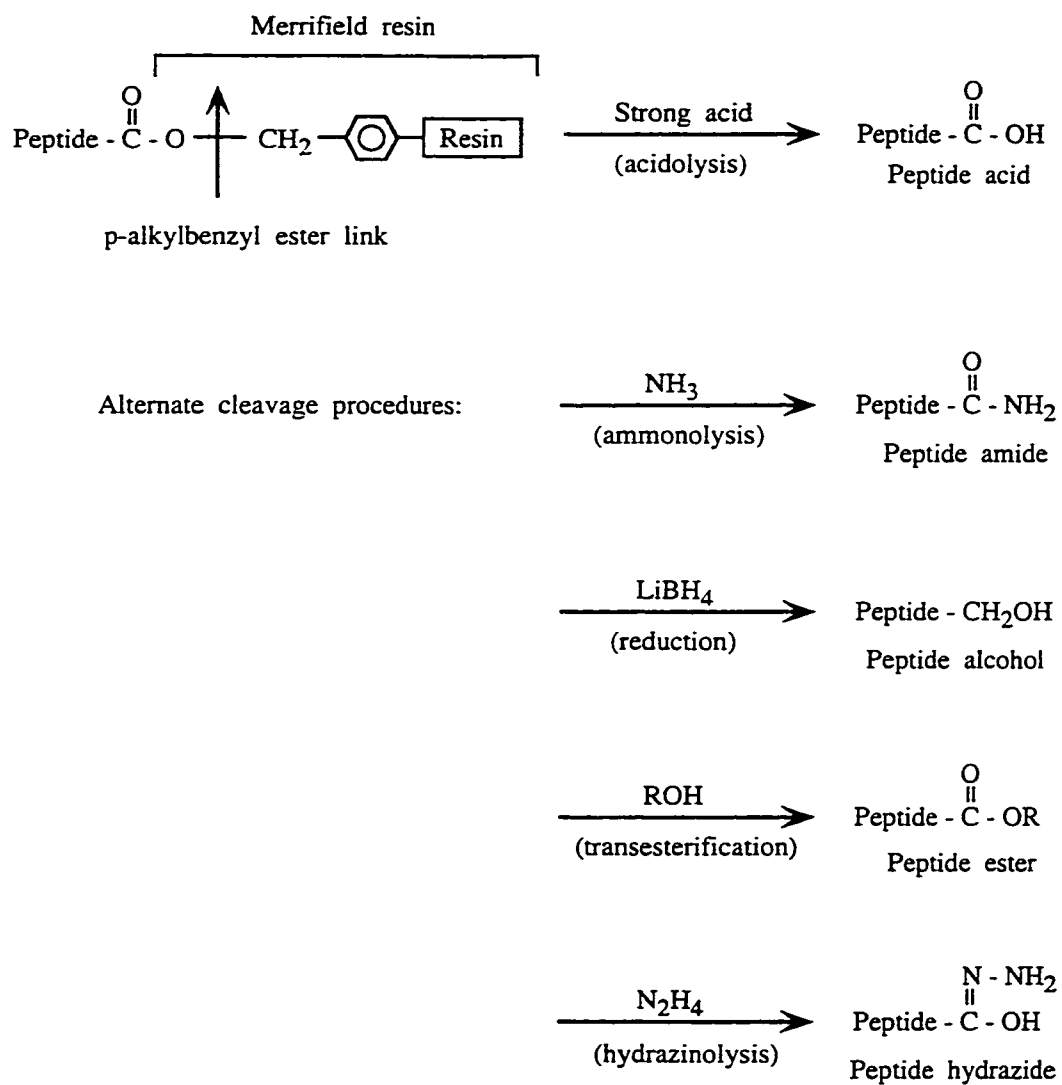
**Table 1 Recommended Sidechain Protecting Groups (continued)**

| Protecting Group  | Protected Amino Acid Derivative | Removal     | References                   |
|---|---------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Compatible with Boc chemistry:</b>   |                                 |             |                              |
| 2-Bromobenzyloxycarbonyl  | Tyr(2-BrZ)                      | Strong acid | Yamashiro and Li (1973)      |
|    |                                 |             |                              |
| <b>Compatible with Fmoc chemistry:</b>  |                                 |             |                              |
| t-Butyl   | Asp/Glu(OtBu)                   | TFA         | Chang <i>et al.</i> (1980)   |
|   | Ser/Thr/Tyr(tBu)                | TFA         | Lajoie <i>et al.</i> (1990)  |
| 1-Adamantyl   | Asp(O-1-Ada)                    | TFA         | Okada and Iguchi (1988)      |
|  |                                 |             |                              |
| 2,4,6-Trimethoxybenzyl  | Asn/Gln(Tmob)                   | TFA         | Weygand <i>et al.</i> (1968) |
|  | Cys (Tmob)                      | TFA         | Munson <i>et al.</i> (1992)  |
| Triphenylmethyl (trityl)  | Asn/Gln(Trt)                    | TFA         | Sieber and Riniker (1991)    |
|  | His(Trt)                        | TFA         | Barlos <i>et al.</i> (1982)  |
|   | Cys(Trt)                        | TFA         | Photaki <i>et al.</i> (1970) |

**Table 1 Recommended Sidechain Protecting Groups (continued)**

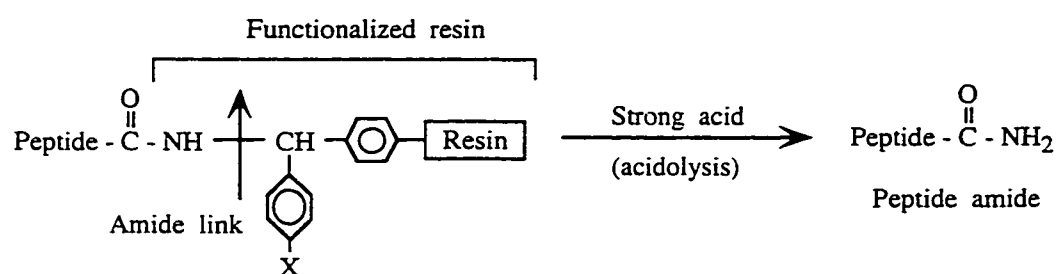
| Protecting Group   | Protected Amino Acid Derivative | Removal | References                     |
|--|---------------------------------|---------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Compatible with Fmoc chemistry:</b>   |                                 |         |                                |
| t-Butyloxycarbonyl   | Lys(Boc)                        | TFA     | Bodanszky and Bodanszky (1984) |
| $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{C}(=\text{O}) - \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ | His(Boc)                        | TFA     | Atherton and Sheppard (1989)   |
| 4-Methoxy-2,3,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl   | Arg(Mtr)                        | TFA     | Fujino <i>et al.</i> (1981)    |
|    |                                 |         |                                |
| 2,2,5,7,8-Pentamethylchroman-6-sulfonyl  | Arg(Pmc)                        | TFA     | Ramage and Green (1987)        |
|   |                                 |         |                                |
| t-Butoxymethyl   | His(Bum)                        | TFA     | Colombo <i>et al.</i> (1984)   |
| $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{O} - \text{CH}_2 - \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$         |                                 |         |                                |

**Figure 7 Merrifield Peptide - Resin Link and Possible Cleavage Products**





**Figure 8 Peptide-Resin Link of BHA Type Amino-Functionalized Resins and Their Cleavage Products**



Benzhydrylamine type resins :

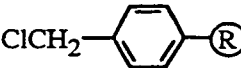
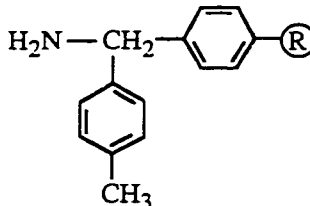
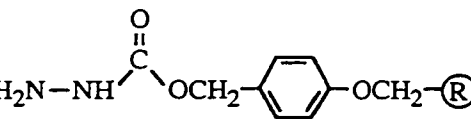
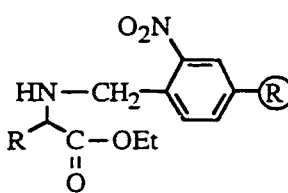
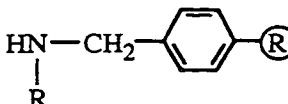
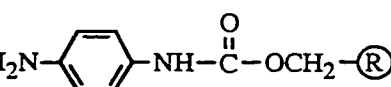
Benzylhydrylamine (BHA) resin

X = H

4 - methylbenzhydrylamine (MBHA) resin

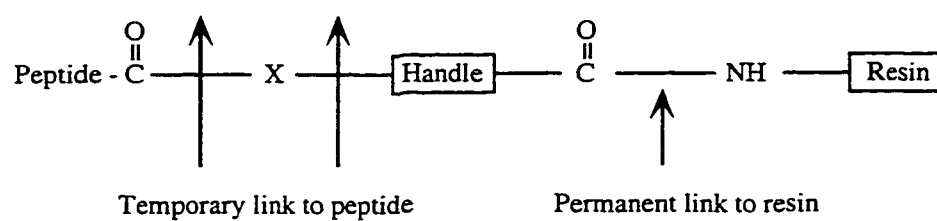
X = CH<sub>3</sub>

## Table 2

| Functionalized Resin  | Resulting Peptide C-terminal        | Cleavage agent                        | References  |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| 4-Chloromethyl (Merrifield)   | Acid                                | Strong acid                           | Gutte and Merrifield (1971)                                   |
|    |                                     |                                       |   |
| 4-Methylbenzhydrylamine (MBHA)  | Amide                               | Strong acid                           | Matsueda and Stewart (1981)                                   |
|    |                                     |                                       |   |
| p-Alkoxybenzyloxycarbonyl-hydrazide   | Hydrazide                           | TFA                                   | Wang (1973)   |
|   |                                     |                                       |   |
| 2-Nitrobenzylamine (N-terminal anchored amino ester substituted)                    | Ester<br>(R = amino acid sidechain) | hv (350 nm)                           | Renil and Pillai (1994)                                       |
|  |                                     |                                       |   |
| N-alkylaminomethyl  | N-alkylamide<br>(R = alkyl group)   | HF                                    | Rivier <i>et al.</i> (1977)<br>Kornreich <i>et al.</i> (1985) |
|  |                                     |                                       |   |
| p-Aminoanilidocarbonyloxymethyl   | p-Nitroanilide                      | HF<br>NaBO <sub>3</sub> / acetic acid | Burdick <i>et al.</i> (1993)                                  |
|  |                                     |                                       |   |

Resin polymer represented by  $\textcircled{\text{R}}$  on far right; resin functional groups drawn with the point of peptide attachment on far left.

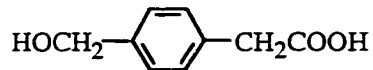
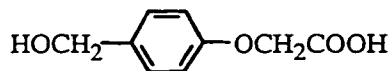
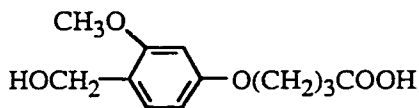
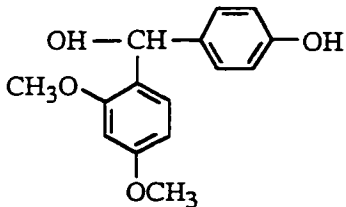
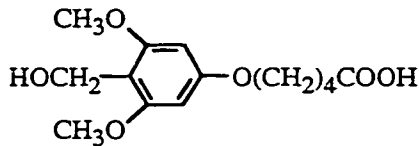
**Figure 9      Anchoring of Peptide to Resin Using a Handle**



X may be derived from the handle or the first residue,  
and cleavage may occur on either side of X.

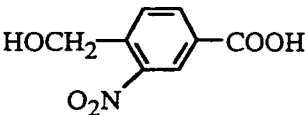
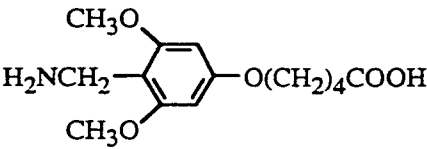
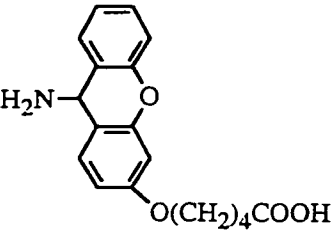
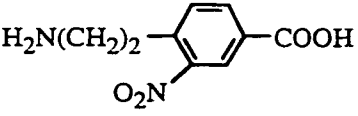
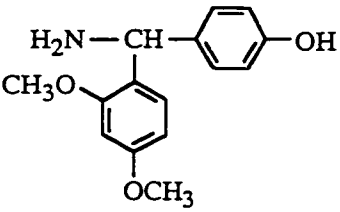
|                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Possible cleavage products include: | Peptide acid (X=O)          |
|                                     | Peptide amide (X=NH)        |
|                                     | C-terminal modified peptide |

**Table 3      Selected Resin Handles**

| Handle   | Resulting<br>C-terminal | Cleavage<br>agent | References                     |
|--|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 4-Hydroxymethylphenylacetic<br>acid (PAM)<br>   | Acid                    | Strong acid       | Mitchell <i>et al.</i> (1978)  |
| 4-Hydroxymethylphenoxy-<br>acetic acid (HMPA)<br>   | Acid                    | TFA               | Sheppard and Williams (1982)   |
| 4-(4-Hydroxymethyl-3-methoxy-<br>phenoxy)butyric acid (HMPB)<br>                         | Acid                    | dilute TFA        | Florsheimer and Riniker (1991) |
| 4-(2',4'-Dimethoxyphenyl-hydroxy-<br>methyl)methylphenoxyacetic acid<br>(Rink acid)<br> | Acid                    | dilute TFA        | Rink (1987)                    |
| 5-(4-Hydroxymethyl-3,5-<br>dimethoxyphenoxy) valeric<br>acid (HAL)<br>                  | Acid                    | dilute TFA        | Albericio and Barany (1991)    |

Handles drawn with the point of peptide attachment on far left  
and resin attachment on far right

**Table 3      Selected Resin Handles    (continued)**

| Handle   | Resulting<br>C-terminal | Cleavage<br>agent | References                     |
|--|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| 3-Nitro-4-hydroxymethyl<br>benzoic acid (ONb)<br>                                       | Acid                    | hv (350 nm)       | Rich and Gurwara<br>(1975)     |
| 5-(4-Aminomethyl-3,5-di-methoxy-<br>phenoxy)valeric acid (PAL)<br>                      | Amide                   | TFA               | Albericio and Barany<br>(1987) |
| 5-(9-Aminoxanthen-2-oxy)<br>valeric acid (XAL)<br>                                    | Amide                   | dilute TFA        | Sieber (1987)                  |
| 3-Nitro-4-aminomethyl<br>benzoic acid (Nonb)<br>                                      | Amide                   | hv (350 nm)       | Hammer <i>et al.</i> (1990)    |
| 4-(2',4'-Dimethoxyphenylamino-<br>methyl)methylphenoxyacetic acid<br>(Rink amide)<br> | Amide                   | dilute TFA        | Rink (1987)                    |

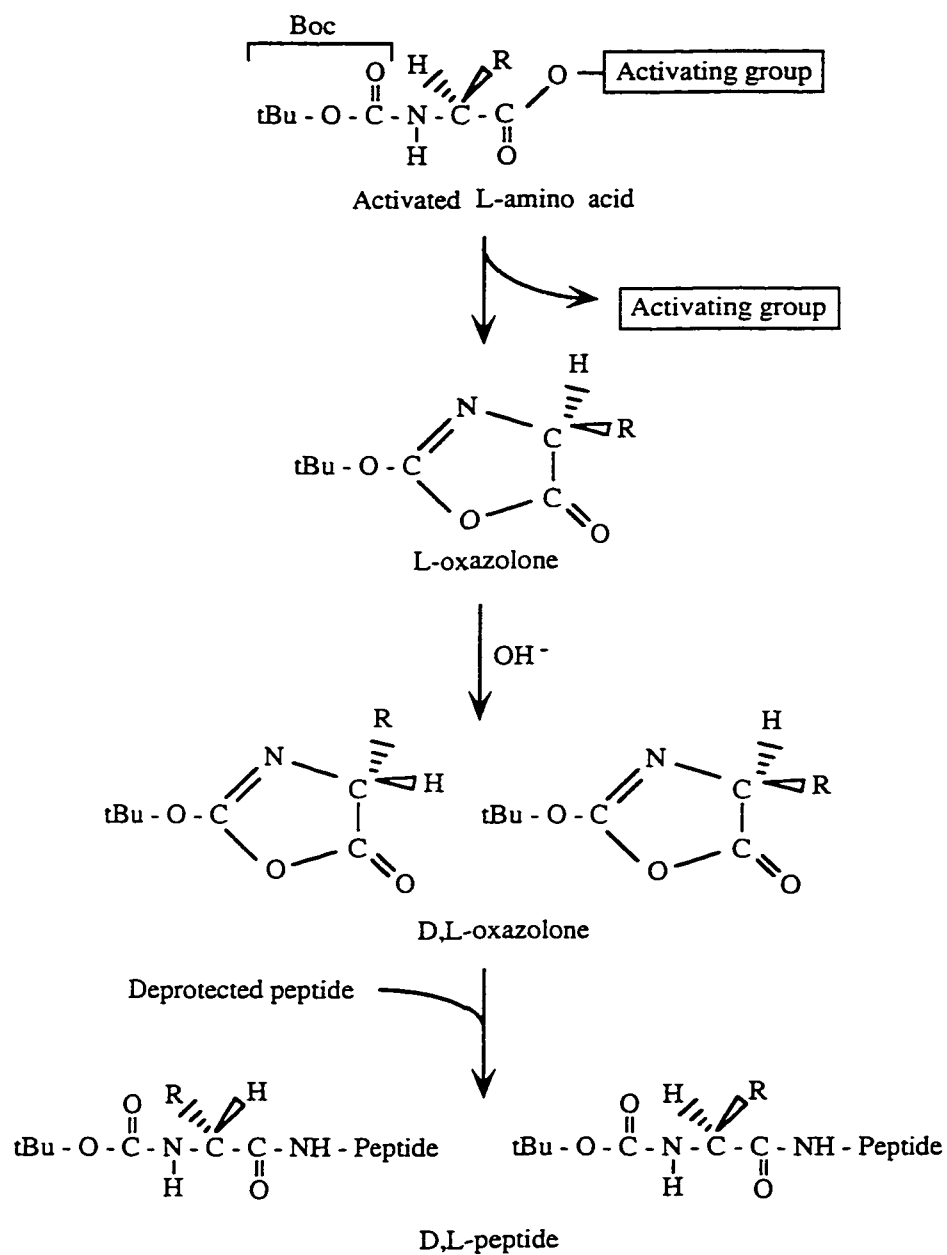
Handles drawn with the point of peptide attachment on far left  
and resin attachment on far right

**Table 3      Selected Resin Handles (continued)**

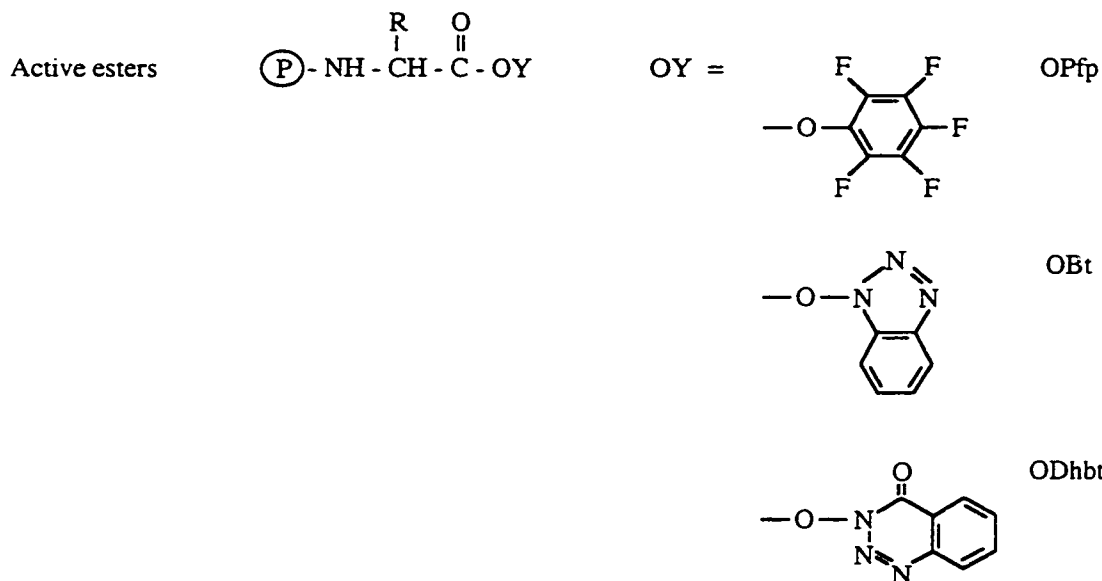
| Handle  | Resulting C-terminal   | Cleavage agent   | References                        |
|---|------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <p>4-(2-Aminoethylmercapto)-methylphenoxyacetic acid</p> $\text{H}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{SCH}_2\text{---}\langle\bigcirc\rangle\text{---OCH}_2\text{COOH}$  | N-mercapto-alkylamides | HF               | Engelbretsen <i>et al.</i> (1995) |
| <p>3-(N-methoxyamino)propionic acid</p> $\begin{array}{c} \text{HN} \text{---} \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{COOH} \\   \\ \text{OCH}_3 \end{array}$  | Aldehydes              | $\text{LiAlH}_4$ | Fehrentz <i>et al.</i> (1995)     |
| <p>4-(<math>\alpha</math>-Mercaptobenzyl)phenoxyacetic acid</p> $\begin{array}{c} \text{SH} \\   \\ \langle\bigcirc\rangle\text{---CH}_2\text{---}\langle\bigcirc\rangle\text{---OCH}_2\text{COOH} \end{array}$ | Thioacids              | HF               | Canne <i>et al.</i> (1995)        |

Handles drawn with the point of peptide attachment on far left or top center and resin attachment on far right

**Figure 10 Oxazolone Formation and Racemization**



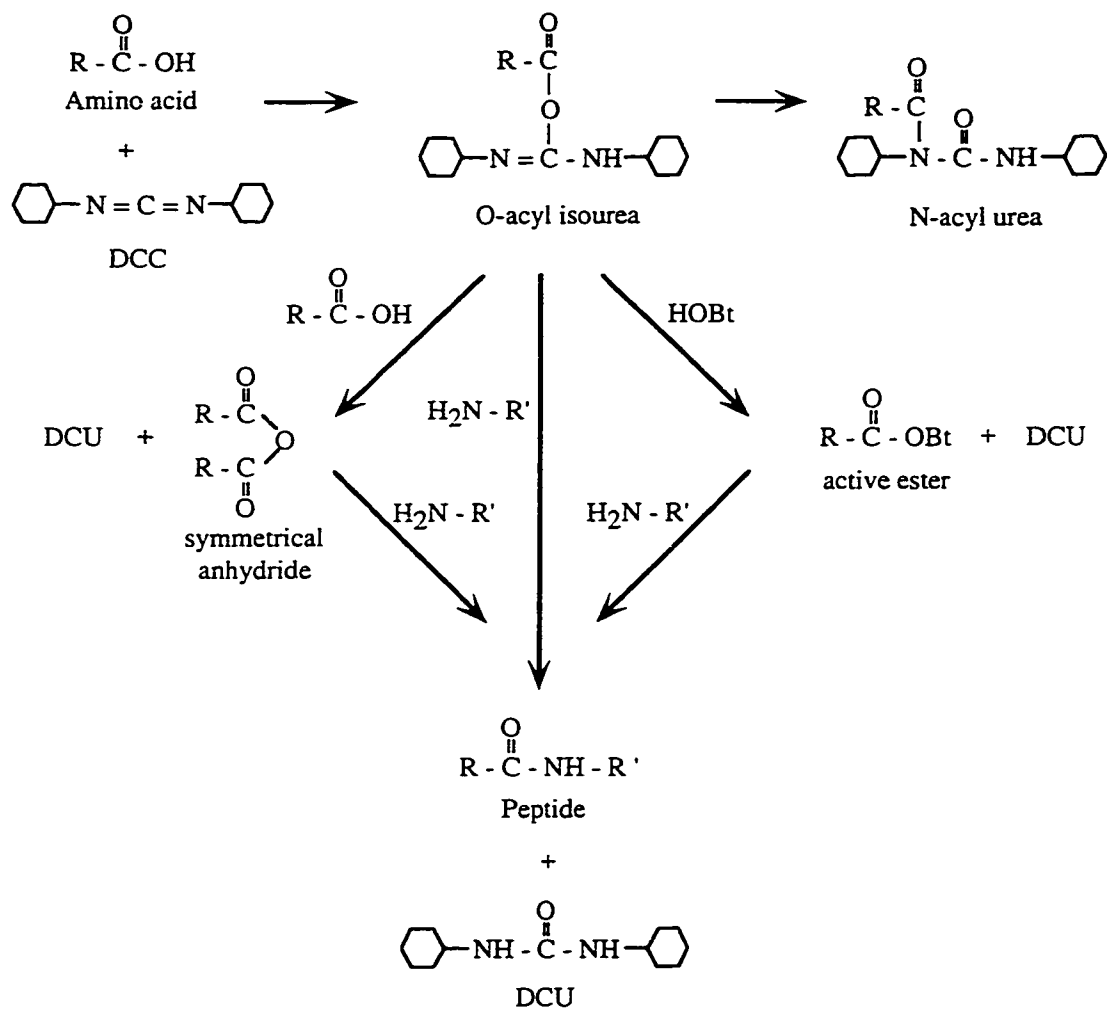
**Figure 11      Pre-formed Activated Acid Halides  
and Active Esters**



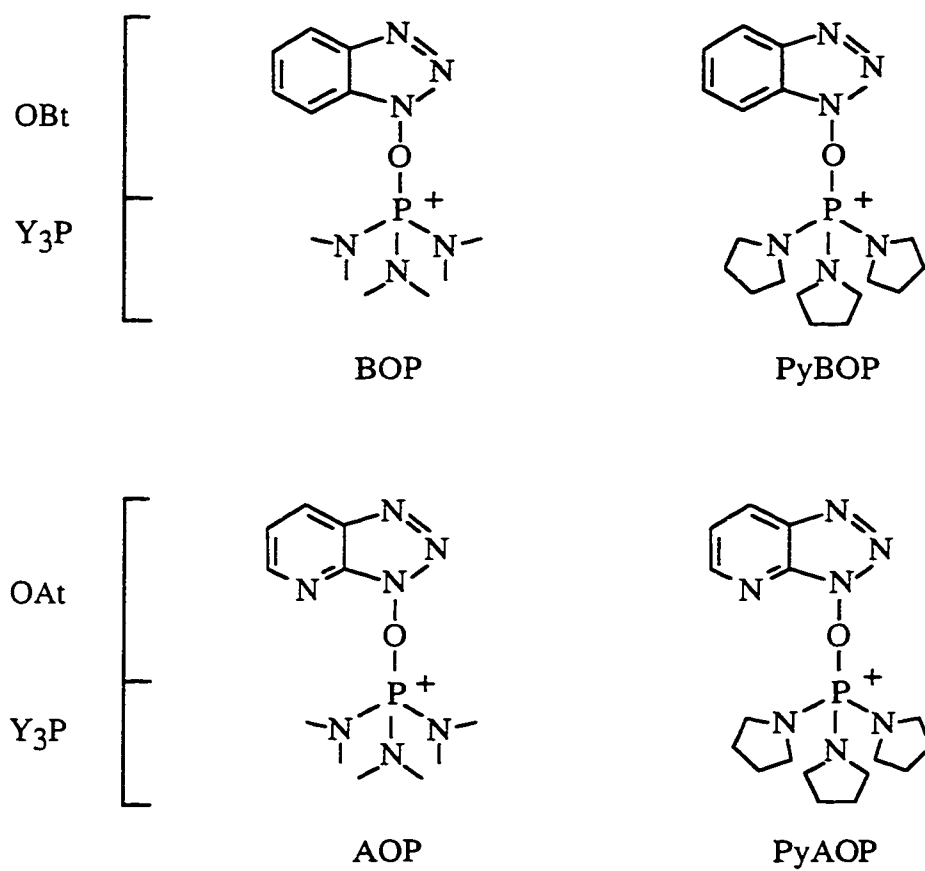
Ⓟ = Urethane N<sup>α</sup>-protecting group (Boc or Fmoc)



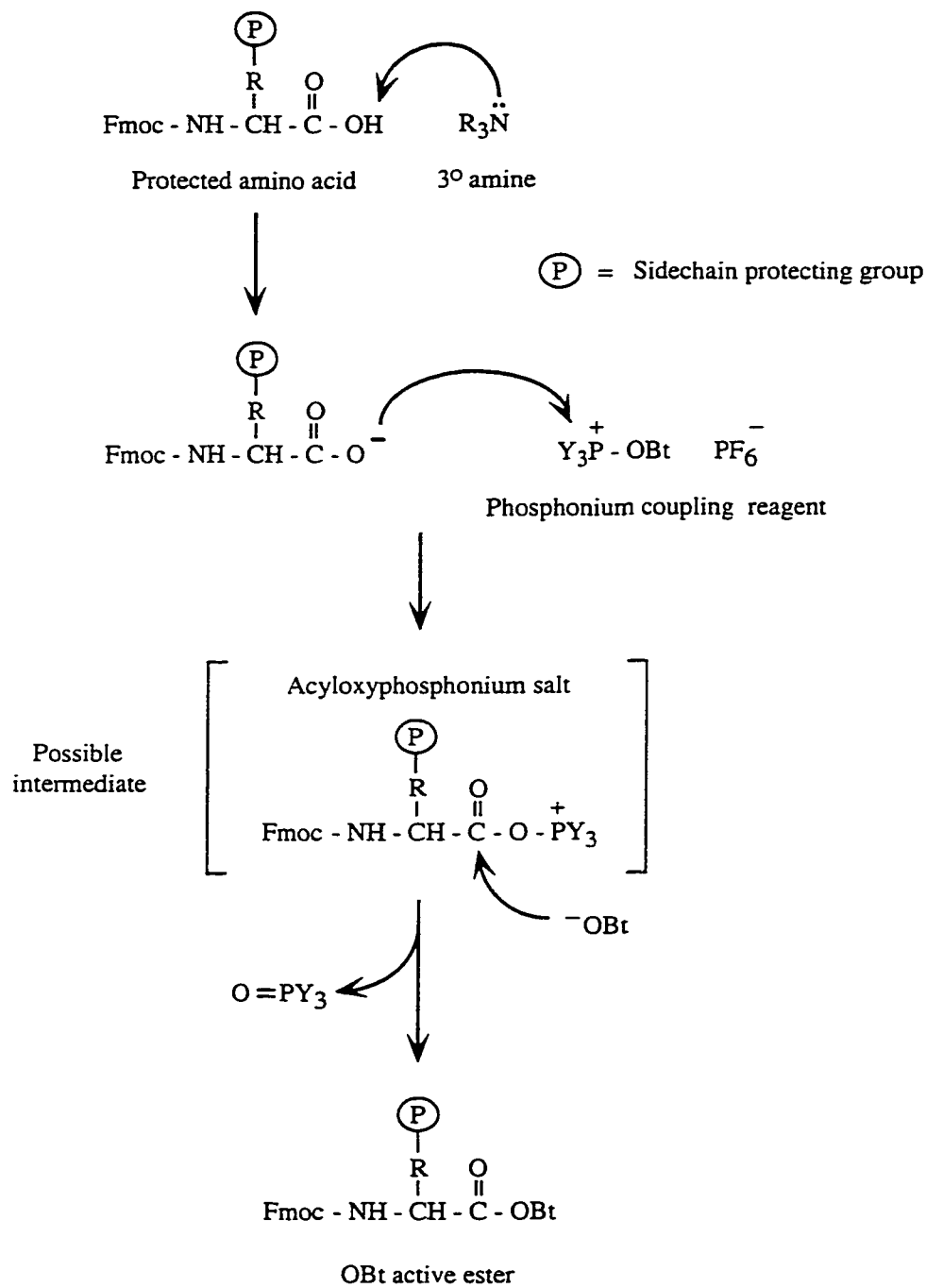
**Figure 12      Carbodiimide Activation and Peptide Bond Formation**



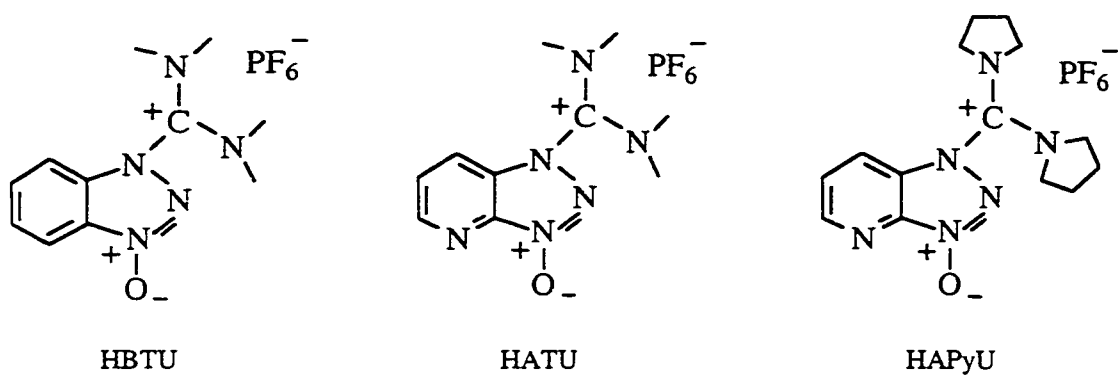
**Figure 13      Structures of Phosphonium *In situ*  
Coupling Reagents**



**Figure 14      Formation of OBt and OAt Active Esters From  
Phosphonium *In situ* Coupling Reagents**

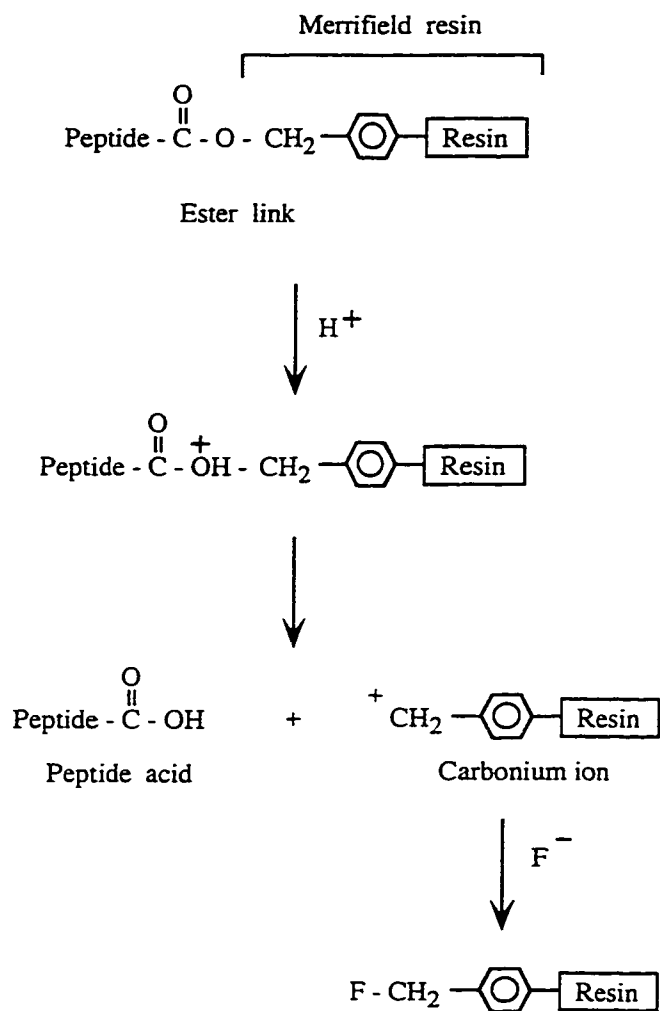


**Figure 15**      **Structures of Aminium *In situ* Coupling Reagents**



TBTU and TATU are the equivalent tetrafluoroborate (BF<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>) salts

**Figure 16      Acidolytic Cleavage of Peptide From Resin**

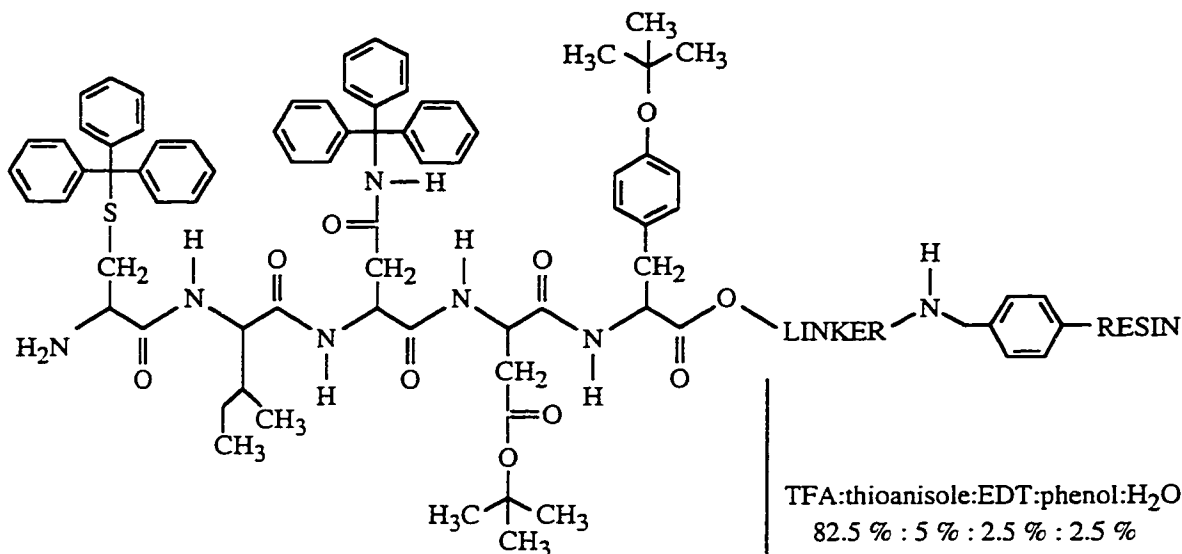


# Figure 17 Possible Reactions of TFA and Scavengers With Protected Peptide

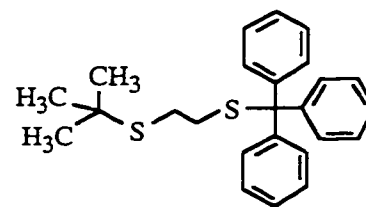
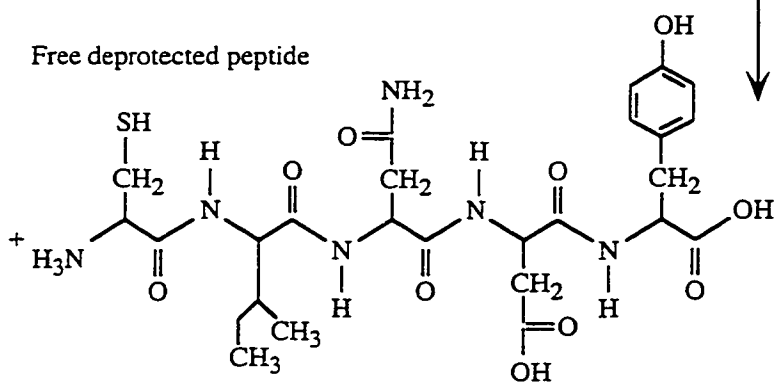
Guy and Fields (1997)

Protected peptide

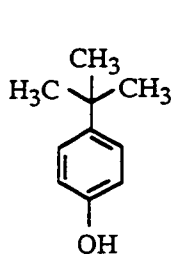
Cys(Trt) - Ile - Asn(Trt) - Asp(OtBu) - Tyr(tBu)



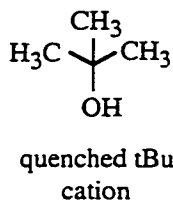
Free deprotected peptide



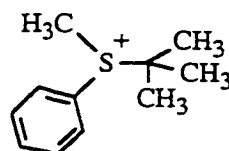
EDT - tBu - Trt adduct



phenol - tBu adduct



quenched tBu cation



thioanisole - tBu adduct

## 2.2 Development of Multiple Peptide Synthesis

One of Merrifield's goals in developing SPPS was the automation of peptide synthesis based on the simplicity and speed of the repetitive steps in chain elongation, which can be carried out in a single reaction vessel at ambient temperature. The development of an automatic peptide synthesizer required a suitable reaction vessel to contain the resin and to provide for its mixing (by inversion, vortexing, or nitrogen bubbling) with reagents and wash solvents, a pressurized system for selecting, metering and transferring the correct solvent or reagent from the appropriate reservoir to the reaction vessel with a minimum of cross contamination and removing reagents or solvent from the vessel after an appropriate time interval, and a programmer for sequencing and timing all operations. Numerous models for both batchwise and continuous flow operation at various scales of operation (generally 0.1-1.0 mmol) have been offered since the introduction of the first synthesizer in 1966, some with continuous monitoring capability. Both Boc and Fmoc strategies have been accommodated (although only the latter is appropriate for continuous flow operation), and coupling methods include the use of pre-formed activated amino acid derivatives, pre-activation, or *in situ* coupling reagents. These synthesizers allow virtually unattended peptide production, interrupted only by the requirements for initial set-up and manual cleavage at the end of each synthesis. Yet despite the reduction in synthesis time and the increased efficiency, these conventional instruments are still limited to performing individual peptide syntheses in a serial manner (or at most, a few simultaneous syntheses using several continuous flow reaction columns).

Initial attempts at developing multiple peptide synthesis (MPS) were driven by the escalating demand for synthetic peptides for immunological screening - the inability of serial synthesis to meet the demand for large numbers of peptides in a reasonable

time frame necessitated the development of alternate methods based on parallel (i.e. simultaneous) synthesis. Very small amounts of peptide (in the nmol range) are often sufficient for screening purposes, reducing initial demands on multiple peptide synthesis methodology and instrumentation. This concept was refined in the **Pin method** (Geysen *et al.*, 1984), which recognized that solution-phase immunoassays could be replaced by solid-phase testing in which the same solid support could be used for both peptide synthesis and immunological screening. This allowed synthesis to be limited to the production of very small amounts of individual peptides retained on the support for subsequent screening, removing only the N $\alpha$  and sidechain protecting groups required during synthesis. In the Pin method, up to 96 peptides can be prepared simultaneously on a novel solid support consisting of functionalized polyethylene or polypropylene rods or "pins" radiation-grafted with methacrylic acid/dimethylacrylamide and assembled in a polyethylene holder in the 8x12 array format and spacing of a standard 96 well microtitre plate used in immunoassays (Bray *et al.*, 1990). Washing and deprotection steps are carried out collectively in baths, whereas amino acid coupling is performed individually in the wells of solvent-resistant microtitre plates by immersing the pins. Since peptides are support-bound both during and after synthesis, the binding capability of antibodies can be investigated by placing the entire block on an ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) plate and incubating the pin-peptides in antibody solutions distributed in the plate wells. After testing, it is usually possible to regenerate the peptides for repeated screening by disrupting the peptide-antibody complex. This method has been developed extensively by Chiron Mimotopes (Clayton, Victoria, Australia) and is marketed as the "Multipin System". The major limitation to the support-bound peptide approach is that many molecular interactions of interest involve membrane-bound (i.e. solid-phase) receptors interacting with solution-phase peptides or proteins in the surrounding environment.



Recent modifications include increased peptide capacity and the introduction of cleavable handles on the pins to facilitate the generation of free peptides in larger quantities for solution-based assays. However, this MPS system remains directed towards rapid solid-phase immunological testing, and the low (i.e.  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) peptide yield may well be insufficient for solution-phase research applications.

**Spot synthesis** was devised as an inexpensive alternative to the original Pin method for generating surface-bound arrays of peptides targeted for immunological testing. In this approach, peptides were synthesized as 8x12 arrays of discrete spots on functionalized support sheets replacing the polypropylene rods of the Pin method, and these sheets were directly employed in screening. The simplest method utilized cellulose sheets (Frank *et al.*, 1991), whereas a more elaborate procedure made use of polypropylene membranes for greater ease of handling and stability (Wang and Laursen, 1992). In the latter case, the membrane was first sandwiched between two aluminum templates with holes bored in the standard array of a 96-well microtitre plate, pierced in the center of each hole, and mounted on a polypropylene vacuum chamber sealed by a rubber gasket. In both methods, coupling was accomplished by applying small aliquots of solution directly to the spots. Cellulose sheets were washed and deprotected by immersion in baths, but in the case of the polypropylene membranes the deprotection and wash solutions were pipetted onto the membranes and removed by evacuation of the vacuum chamber. In both methods, the focus was directed to support-bound immunological testing, although small quantities of free peptide could be obtained from the support by punching out the spots and cleaving them individually.

**Light-directed, spatially addressable synthesis** (Fodor *et al.*, 1991) is the most technologically advanced addition to the collection of syntheses generating permanent support-bound peptide arrays (or indeed, to the entire range of multiple

peptide syntheses). This method employs light to direct solid-phase synthesis on a glass microscope slide. Photolabile N $\alpha$ -protection and a computer-controlled masking system (used during irradiation to accomplish selective deprotection) determines which regions of the solid support are activated for coupling. The pattern of masks and the sequence of amino acid coupling defines the resulting surface-bound peptides and their locations. Immunological screening by fluorescence immunoassay can detect and identify peptides by the location of the fluorescing region on the slide. The method is targeted towards the creation of large peptide libraries: the number of peptides which can be synthesized is limited only by the number of synthesis sites which can be addressed with appropriate resolution (i.e. 10,000 per cm<sup>2</sup>), conferring a high degree of miniaturization. Binary masking (one of many possible combinatorial synthesis strategies which have been developed) yields 2<sup>n</sup> peptides in *n* steps. Since the position of each peptide in the library is known (i.e. spatially addressed), fluorescence immunoassays can provide rapid identification from the location of fluorescing regions on the slide. Potential problems with this method include incomplete photolytic deprotection during synthesis and the possibility of multivalent antibody-peptide interactions during screening (due to high peptide density) so that fluorescence may give only a qualitative indication of binding affinity. Designed to create vast peptide diversity on a miniature scale rather than generate significant quantities of individual peptides, this new and expensive technology is not yet appropriate for routine peptide synthesis, and may find its true role in biosensor research.

Methods for generating support-bound peptides such as those described above were devised to provide large peptide arrays suitable for rapid immunological testing, and the success of the Multipin System verifies this design approach. However, even with modifications such as the incorporation of cleavable handles on the support and procedures to allow free peptide recovery, these methods cannot generate sizeable

yields of individual peptides. Alternate approaches have been developed to provide free peptides on a scale suitable for solution-based studies. The **Tea Bag method** (Houghten, 1985) is one of the oldest strategies for multiple peptide synthesis and remains in current use, especially for the creation of peptide libraries. The method is capable of generating 50 mg quantities of up to 150 peptides. Small amounts of polymeric support are sealed in polypropylene mesh bags, and these resin packets are brought through collective deprotection and washing steps and are separated for coupling and cleavage. Prior to each coupling step the "tea bags" must be sorted according to amino acid residue addition, and then reacted in parallel in separate reaction vessels. This method not only provides high yields but also allows flexibility in the choice of coupling schemes and solvents, since separate reaction vessels are used. However, the labour component is significant due to the number of mechanical operations with the tea bags. The Tea Bag method has been semi-automated for washing (Beck-Sickinger *et al.*, 1991) and commercialized by Biotech Instruments. A variant on the Tea Bag method employed sheets of long-chain polystyrene grafted on to polyethylene film in place of resin packets for the solid support (Berg *et al.*, 1989). The **Film method** eliminated the labour involved in preparing the solid support (other than cutting up film), but individual pieces of film still required sorting and parallel coupling in separate reaction vessels. Otherwise, the two methods were similar and peptide yields on PS-PE film were comparable to those of the Tea Bag method.

The **Cellulose Disk method** (Frank and Döring, 1988) was also based on a redistributed solid support, but was operated as a continuous flow version. Peptides were synthesized on functionalized cellulose paper disks of 3 mm thickness stacked in a reactor column to allow continuous flow operation. Peptides could be retained on the cellulose support or cleaved for use as free peptides. Redistribution of the solid support during synthesis followed a "segmental support approach" in which those

disks which required the same amino acid coupling were stacked together in a column to undergo the reaction together. Washing and deprotection steps were also performed collectively in the column under continuous flow conditions. Up to 100 disks could be accommodated in a single column, and several columns could be operated in parallel. Once again it was not possible to automate redistribution of the solid support, and a great deal of organization was required to sort disks and stack columns according to the amino acid to be coupled. Collective coupling in a column also imposed limited flexibility in the choice of coupling schemes, and individual peptide yields of only 8-10 mg restricted potential applications.

A different version of the segmental support approach stacked individual reactor columns in series and operated the system in continuous flow mode under low pressure conditions (Krchnák *et al.*, 1989). Each column consisted of a 5 mL polypropylene syringe, and up to 10 columns could be joined in series. This system was designed for the synthesis of analogous peptides, where most couplings could be performed collectively in continuous-flow mode and very few required disconnection of the individual reactors for batch-mode coupling of individual amino acids. For synthesis of completely different peptides, all reactors had to be disconnected for manual coupling in batch-mode. For this reason, automation was not possible.

**Fully automated multiple peptide synthesis** was finally achieved with the use of robotic sample processors, i.e. pipetting robots modified and programmed for the requirements of peptide synthesis. The version developed by Schnorrenberg and Gerhardt (1989) employed a PC-controlled pipetting robot equipped with two independent arms, one for serial reagent addition and the other for serial washing. Amino acids were dispensed by needle from a reagent rack of glass vials into another rack of test tubes or Eppendorf tubes serving as reaction vessels. The washing arm

was equipped with two needles, one for solvent addition and the other (fitted with a stainless steel sieve) for solution removal by suction. This allowed for the simultaneous synthesis of a large number of peptides (up to 96) at a scale useful for solution-based studies. Another version developed by Gausepohl *et al.* (1990) utilized a single arm pipetting robot for reagent addition with the advancement of simultaneous rather than serial distribution, employing six needles on the arm for row-by-row reagent transfer to a 6x8 array of reaction vessels. In place of a second washing arm, each reaction vessel (a polypropylene tube) was equipped with a bottom sintered glass frit to allow solution removal by suction applied through a vacuum pump. Yet another version developed by Nokihara *et al.* (1992) supplied the amino acids, solvents and reaction vessels on eight tracks. Each track was used for the synthesis of one peptide and contained the complete set of reagents for a synthesis; the single arm of the pipetting robot was equipped with eight needles for simultaneous reagent delivery. Unfortunately, this version was limited in that it did not allow any expansion in the number of peptides to be synthesized.

None of the previously described MPS systems met all the project requirements for a simple, reliable and inexpensive multiple peptide synthesizer capable of generating large numbers of peptides in reasonable quantities for solution-based studies (i.e. at least 20 mg per peptide), and the problem of multiple cleavage was only beginning to be addressed. Support-bound systems removed the need to track individual peptides during synthesis, but could not operate at a suitable production scale. The Tea Bag, cellulose disk, and stacked syringe methods were designed to operate at a greater scale of synthesis, but the considerable labour required for sorting operations prior to batch coupling precluded automation. Continuing development of multiple peptide synthesis and appropriate instrumentation parallel with this project has focussed on automation using robotic pipettors (even though this retains a serial component to peptide

synthesis), and recently more elaborate programmable synthesizers with completely enclosed systems in the fashion of conventional (i.e. single peptide) synthesizers have become available commercially. However, this approach greatly increases the cost of a multiple peptide synthesizer and will restrict accessibility to large-scale users such as pharmaceutical companies or service facilities.

### 3.1 Design Process

An alternate approach to multiple peptide synthesis was devised by Holm and Meldal (1989), combining an increased production scale (made possible by the use of dedicated reaction vessels for peptide synthesis) with the convenience of the array format utilized by support-bound methods. This approach eliminated the sorting manipulations (and peptide tracking) required in the Tea Bag and other similar methods prior to common coupling steps, by distributing the coupling solution amongst reactors in the array rather than redistributing solid-support between coupling baths. The introduction of liquid distribution manifolds for common washing and deprotection steps and a valveless reactor evacuation system provided a simple but effective means of conferring automation to a degree achieved only later by robotic pipettors at far greater expense. The key concepts illustrated by the resulting laboratory instrument served as the starting point in this synthesizer design project.

The Holm and Meldal synthesis unit was based on the 96-well microtitre plate used in immunoassays, and consisted of a small teflon block of approximately the same dimensions (130 mm length x 95 mm width) and format as the plate (**Photograph 1**). The upper section of the block contained 96 "wells" in the standard 8x12 array and 9 mm spacing of the microtitre plate. These cylindrical "wells" (6 mm diameter, 25 mm depth) were actually small column reactors with a volume of approximately 700  $\mu\text{L}$ , draining through narrow (1 mm ID) stainless steel tubes extending from the bottom of each reactor. A bottom teflon frit (2 mm thick, 70  $\mu$  nominal pore size) was used to retain solid support for peptide synthesis within each reactor, reducing the working

volume to approximately 650  $\mu\text{L}$ . Coupling reagents were added manually to reactors in a manner modelled after immunoassay reagent addition: an 8-channel multi-pipettor was used for column-by-column transfer from reagent tray wells in the standard 8x12 arrangement and spacing. Reactor drainage tubes protruded 5 mm below the upper section into a base which directed waste to an outlet port through a series of milled grooves or channels (**Photograph 2**). The two sections of the synthesis unit were sealed by a silicone rubber gasket and held together by screws inserted from the bottom of the base (**Photograph 3**). A unique feature of this design was the ability of the base to function as a vacuum chamber (assisting reactor drainage) as well as a reactor "shut-off" system (base pressurization eliminating the need for individual reactor valves); a version of this vacuum chamber was seen later in combination with spot synthesis on polypropylene membranes (Wang and Laursen, 1992). Another desirable feature was the semi-automation of common washing and deprotection steps through the introduction of two dedicated overhead liquid distribution manifolds for simultaneous delivery of solvent or deprotection reagent to reactors. Each manifold was constructed from two teflon blocks, with a silicone gasket spacer ensuring the formation of a liquid layer between the blocks; simultaneous delivery to the reactors in the synthesis unit was performed through a series of stainless steel tubes (0.5 mm ID) extending into the liquid reservoir between the blocks and protruding from the underside of the manifold in the standard 8x12 arrangement. As in all MPS systems described previously, no provision was made for multiple cleavage; this labour-intensive procedure was carried out in small glass culture tubes (6 x 50 mm) inserted tightly into the reagent tray (**Photograph 4**). Transfer of the thoroughly dried support-bound peptides from the reactors to the cleavage vessels was accomplished by positioning the reagent tray upside down over the synthesis unit (using the raised edges of the tray to grasp the synthesis unit chamfered edges), upending the combination,



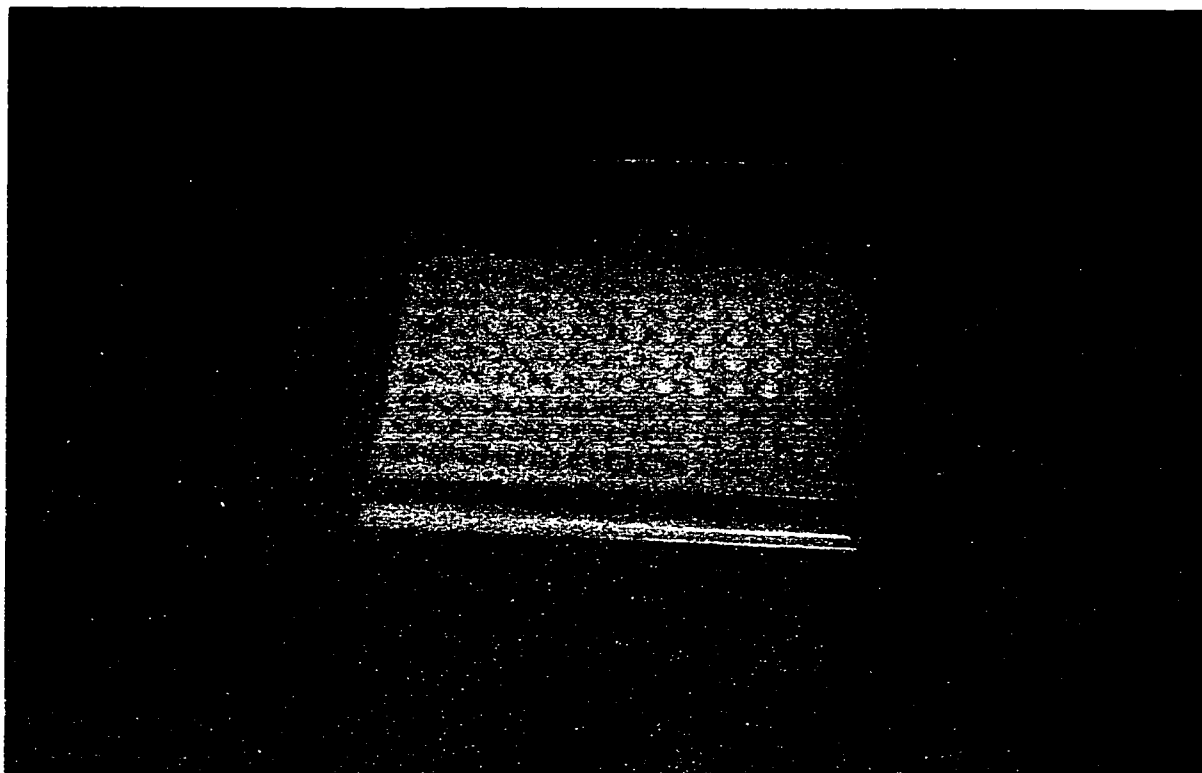
and tapping the synthesis unit to ensure complete transfer of the support before removal of the unit (**Photograph 5**). Resins were cleaved individually, and the resulting peptide solutions were removed by pipet for further processing and peptide recovery.

The adoption of key design concepts in this instrument (i.e. the array format of the reactors, the dual purpose base, and the use of a liquid distribution manifold), a significant increase in production scale (with attendant technical problems to be solved), and the design of a multiple cleavage system to complement the multiple peptide synthesizer were critical elements in the development of a commercial multiple peptide synthesizer prototype. Column reactors were retained in the design process, but the microtitre plate format, while convenient for manipulation, was unsuitable for production scaleup. Two reactor array formats differing in reactor number were selected to accommodate a range of synthesis projects. Column width and length were approximately doubled to provide a 7-fold increase in reactor volume, which represented a compromise between increasing production scale and growing demands on the base pressurization system to hold solutions within the reactors. A multiple peptide cleavage system was designed on the basis of dual-purpose column reactors suitable for both synthesis and cleavage, using Fmoc chemistry and TFA as the cleavage reagent. A greatly expanded base with a large interior chamber was constructed to accommodate a removeable, chemically resistant test tube rack during cleavage (for the collection of cleaved peptide solutions), while maintaining its role as a vacuum/pressurization chamber. The increased demands on the base pressurization system caused by the greater reactor volume, the large interior chamber of the collection base, and the tendency of TFA to "creep" posed the greatest problem; this was eventually overcome by the combination of smaller reactor drainage tubes (0.5 mm ID), an improved seal between reactor block and collection base (formed by a more durable and chemically resistant o-ring in place of a sealing gasket) and the use of adjustable

tension clamps (in place of cumbersome screws) for assembly of the reactor block and base into a reaction module. Potential corrosion problems caused by TFA led to the choice of glass rather than stainless steel reactor drainage tubes, selecting thick-walled capillary tubing to minimize breakage and address handling concerns; reactor drainage tubes were recessed to provide further protection and improve safety during handling (adding to reactor block dimensions). Alternate block materials with suitable chemical resistance were investigated due to the prohibitive expense of teflon. A multi-purpose distribution manifold was developed from the original Holm and Meldal design for dispensing washing, deprotection, or (where desired) cleavage solutions simultaneously to reactors in the reaction module. The various elements of the multiple peptide synthesizer design were incorporated into an open cabinet equipped with a control panel for valves and distribution systems, a "working area" for manual operations with the reaction module, and a dispensing station with easy sideways access for the reaction module; the open cabinet format was chosen to ensure easy access, minimize damage caused by chemical spills, and reduce material costs.

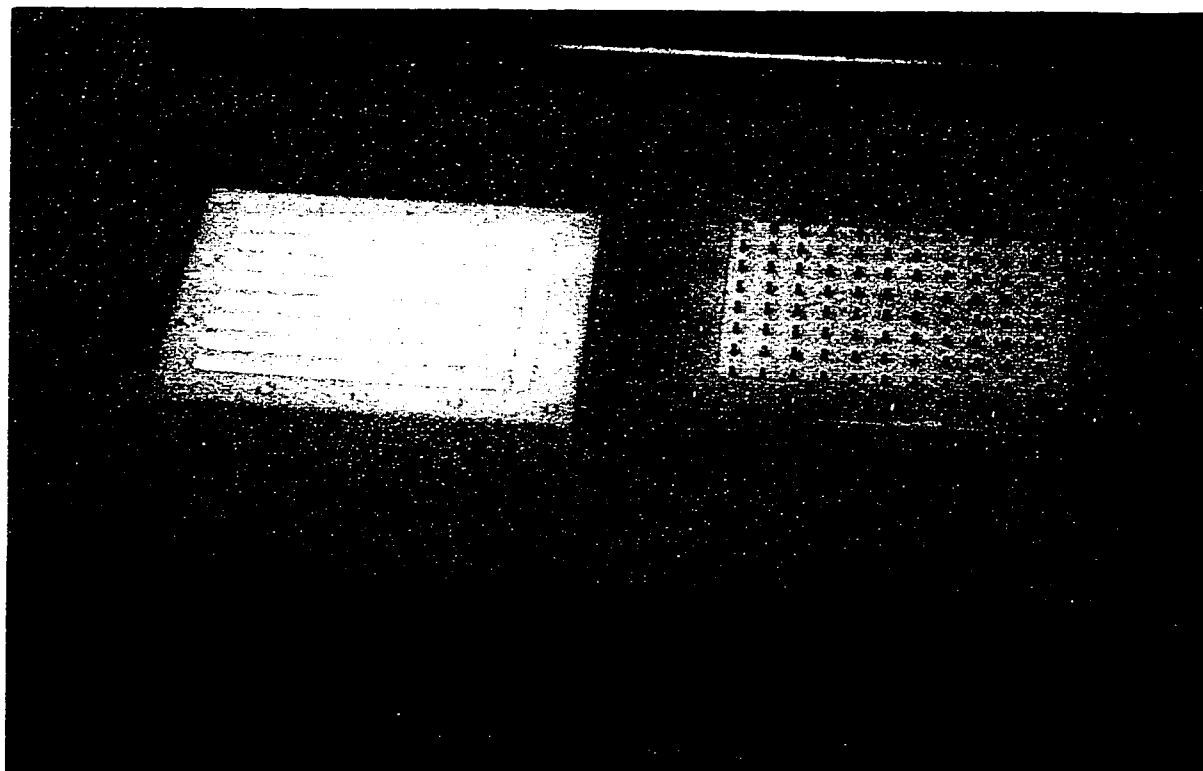
The design process generated a simple and affordable semi-automated multiple peptide synthesizer with multiple peptide cleavage capability and the potential for further low-cost automation by placing the dispensing station under microprocessor control.

**Photograph 1** Holm and Meldal synthesis unit, showing reactors in 8x12 array of a microtitre plate

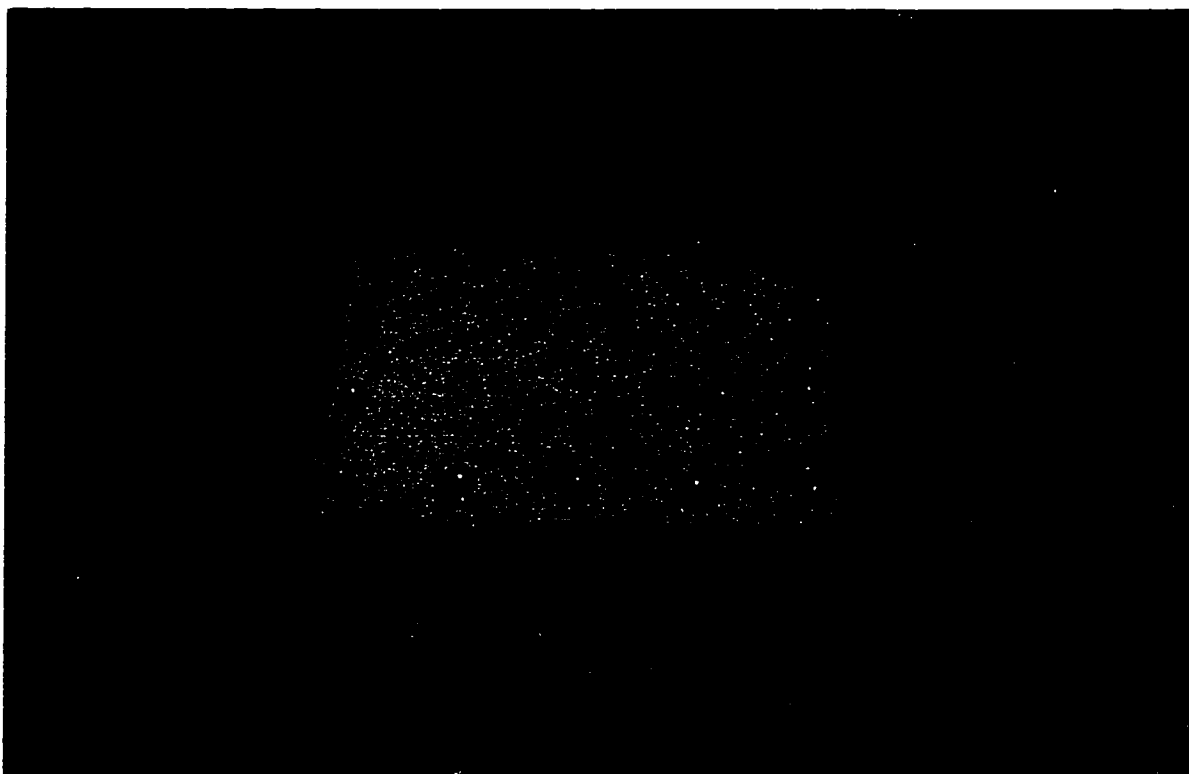


**Photograph 2** Interior of synthesis unit

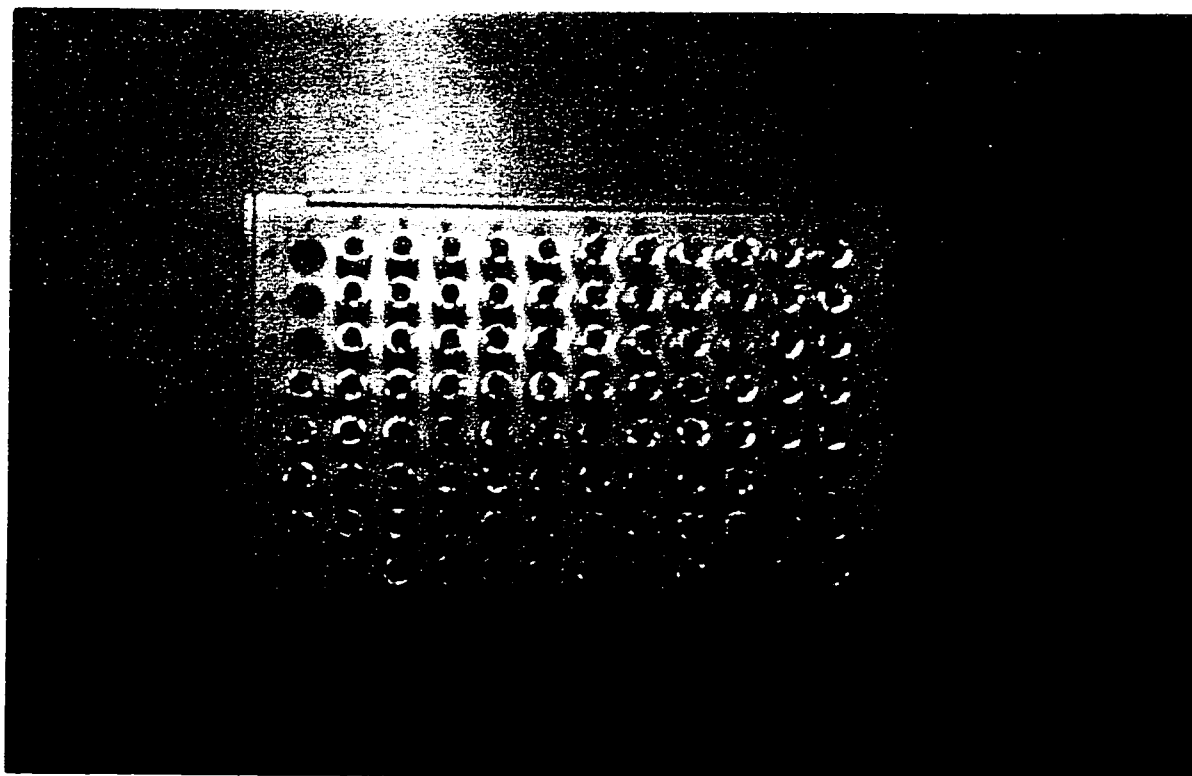
Right: Underside of well section with protruding drainage tubes  
Left: Grooved collection base



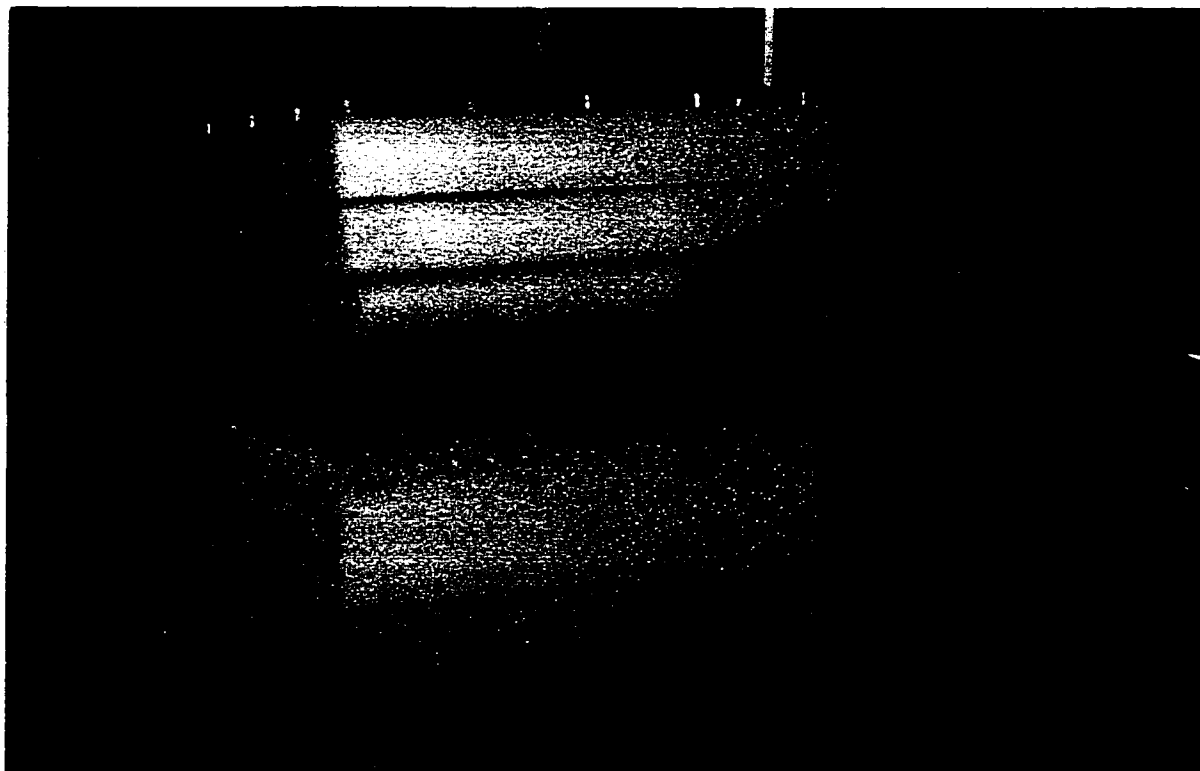
**Photograph 3** Bottom of synthesis unit, showing screws holding sections together



**Photograph 4** Reagent tray with glass vials in place for cleavage



**Photograph 5      Transfer of resin from synthesis unit to cleavage vials**



### 3.2 Technical Description of Prototype

The multiple peptide synthesizer prototype (alpha-test version) resulting from the design process is presented in **Photograph 6**, with an accompanying schematic representation in **Figure 18**. The semi-automated synthesizer is designed to operate in a standard fumehood dedicated to peptide synthesis, and its service requirements include a water tap equipped for aspiration and a nitrogen gas cylinder for pressurization purposes. Two models are available: a 20-reactor version for general use (conveniently designed for analogue synthesis using the 20 naturally occurring amino acids), and a 100-reactor version for routine synthesis of large numbers of peptides or for the creation of peptide libraries; the overall width, depth, and height of the two models are 450 mm x 230 mm x 390 mm (17.5" x 9" x 15.5") and 635 mm x 330 mm x 465 mm (25" x 13" x 18"), respectively. Each model consists of an open cabinet with a conveniently located back control panel, a working area for the reaction module on the left, and a dispensing station on the right, with wash solvent and deprotection reagent reservoirs located to the right of the cabinet and an aspirator trap for waste collection located to the left.

The chemically resistant 316 stainless steel cabinet is equipped with a bubble level on the dispensing station and adjustable feet to ensure the dispenser module mounted in the station remains level. Manually-operated on/off miniature (1.5 mm bore) teflon valves encased in two distribution manifolds (Omnifit, New York, U.S.A.) are mounted on the back panel, one controlling nitrogen gas flow, vacuum and access to the reaction module, and the other controlling solvent and deprotection reagent flow and access to the dispensing station. The nitrogen gas flowrate can be precisely regulated to a maximum 1.0 L/min using a panel-mounted gas rotameter equipped with a fine-control valve and positioned in advance of the reaction module manifold. A

single on/off valve controls vacuum access to the dispensing station for evacuation and cleaning purposes. Pressurization and evacuation of the reaction module are performed through a common teflon tubing line (0.5 mm ID, 1.5 mm OD). Solvent and deprotection reagents are supplied to the dispenser through individual teflon tubing lines (0.5 mm ID, 1.5 mm OD) using manually-operated bottletop dispensers mounted on the 4L amber glass bottle reservoirs. All line connections are made with flangeless polypropylene nut and PTFE ferrule connectors (Omnifit, New York, U.S.A.) to allow repetitive connection/disconnection and rapid replacement.

The dual-purpose reaction module is designed to perform peptide synthesis and cleavage in a single unit, and detailed technical drawings are supplied in **Appendix A**. The 20-reactor module has a width, depth and height of 140 mm x 122 mm x 180 mm (5.5" x 4.75" x 7"), while the equivalent dimensions of the 100-reactor module are 230 mm x 230 mm x 180 mm (9" x 9" x 7"). Each inert polypropylene module is assembled from an upper reactor block and a lower hollow collection base. The reactor block contains multiple columns in a 4x5 array or a 10x10 array, depending on the model (as seen in **Photograph 7**); reactors are labeled by column (letter designation) and row (number designation) to aid peptide identification and reagent addition. Each column reactor has a diameter of 13 mm and holds an approximate volume of 5 mL, and the spacing between individual reactors in each array is 18 mm. Column reactors loaded with solid support (the amount depending upon the synthesis scale) are operated in batch-mode. An outlet at the bottom of each reactor opens into a glass drainage tube, and a disposable polyethylene frit (2 mm thick, 20  $\mu$  nominal pore size) placed at the bottom of the reactor column using an insertion rod retains the solid support within the reactor. The recessed drainage tubes are constructed from thick-walled 0.5 mm ID glass capillary tubing, inserted by press-fit, and are designed to prevent contamination of neighboring reactors by reagents with a tendency to "creep". The drainage tubes can

be seen in **Photograph 8** of the 100-reactor block underside, which also shows the o-ring of inert and chemically resistant C-flex tubing (1/8" ID, 1/4" OD) sealing the two sections of the reaction module. The hollow base with an outlet port on the left side (**Photograph 9**) serves as a pressurization or vacuum chamber during synthesis, maintaining solutions within the reactors by compensating nitrogen pressure or evacuating liquid out of the bottom of the reactors under reduced pressure; if desired, overpressurization of the base can be used to generate nitrogen bubbles for reactor mixing. A collection tube rack, labeled by row and column and equipped with 13x100 mm disposable polypropylene test tubes (8 mL nominal volume), is inserted into the base for the cleavage procedure, and the asymmetric fit ensures correct alignment of the rack with the reactor array (**Photograph 10**); the test tubes project above the base into the recessed bottom of the reactor block, partially sheathing the reactor drainage tubes to prevent cross-contamination by spraying during collection of the cleaved peptide solutions. The two sections of the reaction module, correctly aligned by guide pins in the base to prevent mismatch of reactors and collection tubes during cleavage, are clamped together using external 2" stainless steel adjustable tension clamps (Spae-Naur, Kitchener, Ont.): two clamps on the 20-reactor module and four clamps on the larger 100-reactor module.

Reagent addition to the reaction module is performed manually, transferring by pipet from the corresponding tube array in a reagent rack; conical polypropylene centrifugation tubes (15 mL or 50 mL, depending on the scale of synthesis) are recommended as reagent containers which permit rapid vortex mixing. In contrast, the common steps of washing and deprotection are semi-automated, performed simultaneously for all reactors in the module through a dispensing station connected to wash solvent and deprotection reagent reservoirs equipped with manual bottletop dispensers (**Photograph 11**). Precise alignment of the reaction module and the

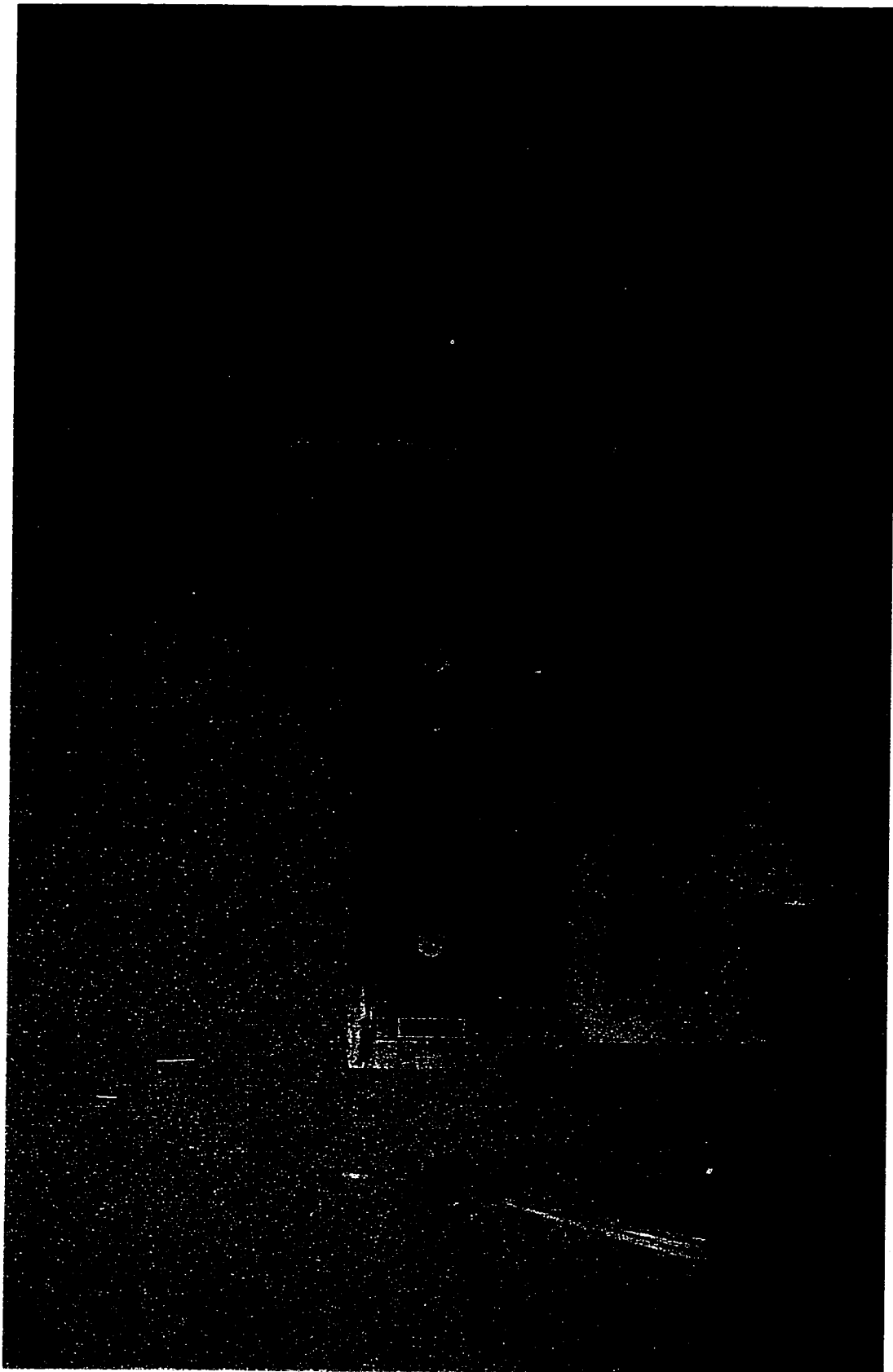


overhead dispenser is achieved by sliding the module into the dispensing station on a track equipped with a polypropylene block positioning stop (**Photograph 12**); the minimal clearance between dispenser and reaction module and the moderate rate of flow from the dispenser into each reactor eliminates potential cross-contamination due to spraying. Two models of the dispenser module are provided, corresponding with the two formats of the reaction module, and detailed technical drawings of each are supplied in **Appendix A**. The inert polypropylene dispenser is assembled from an upper section containing a row-and-column array of hemispherical concave depressions on its lower surface and a solid base pierced in the same array format by stainless steel drainage tubes (0.5 mm ID, 0.8 mm OD) extending slightly above the base into the corresponding concave depressions (**Photograph 13**). A thin solvent chamber is formed between the two sections by a spacing seal consisting of an o-ring composed of inert C-flex tubing (1/8" ID, 1/4" OD), and the two sections are held together by external 1" stainless steel adjustable tension clamps; this arrangement ensures even distribution of liquid through the dispenser to each reactor and prevents bubble locks forming in the drainage tubes, since the tops of the tubes extending into the depressions of the upper section permit trapped air to escape before liquid flow begins. The drainage tubes direct solvent or deprotection reagent into the center of each reactor column in the reaction module stationed below (see **Photograph 14** of the underside of the dispenser module, displaying the recessed tubes in the base). The dispensing station can also be used for simultaneous transfer of cleavage reagent to the reaction module from a third reservoir, or cleavage reagent may be transferred manually by serial pipetting (when more than one type of reagent is desired).

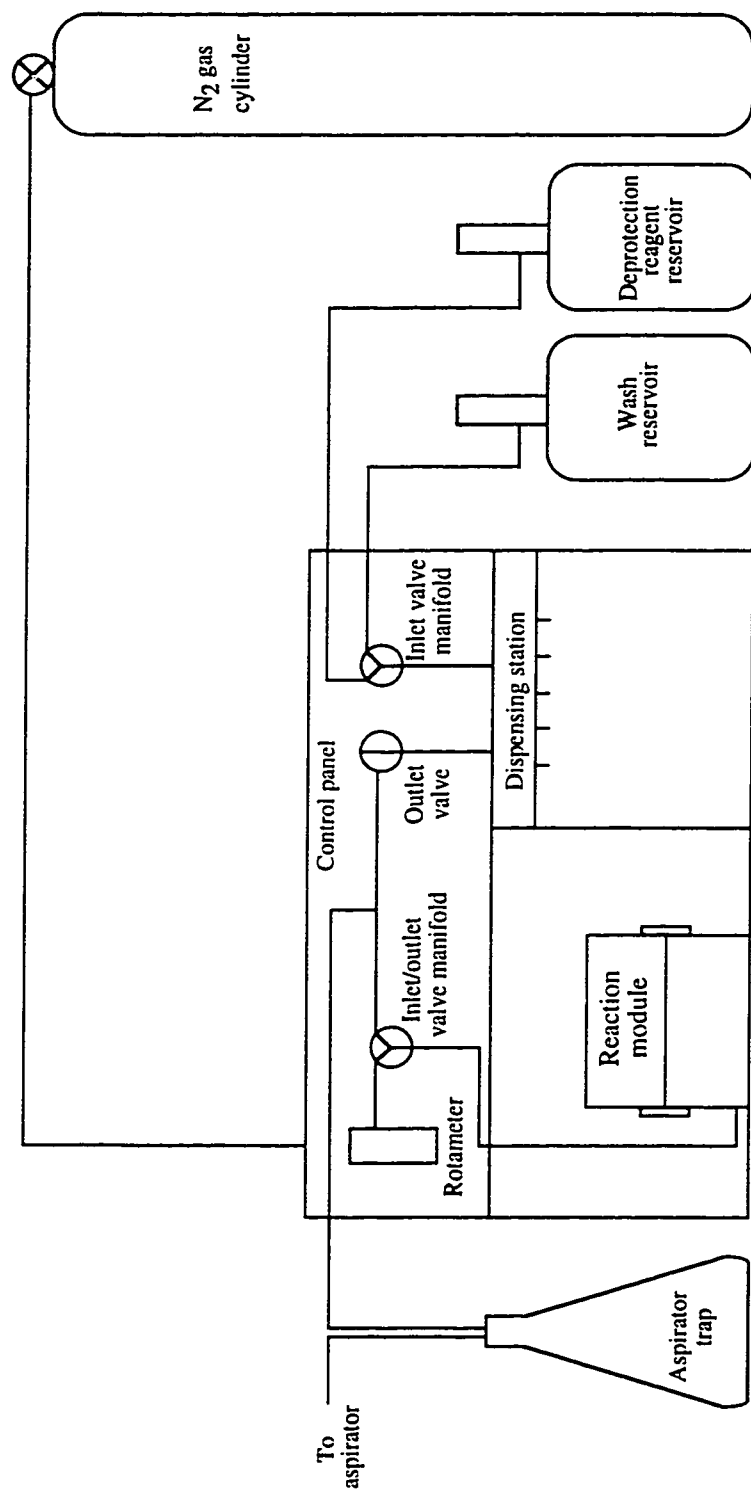
Depending upon the scale of synthesis in each reactor, precipitation of crude peptide from cleavage solutions drained from the reactors may be carried out directly in the 13x100 mm collection tubes or after manual transfer of the cleaved peptide solutions

from these collection tubes to 50 mL polypropylene conical centrifugation tubes. While centrifugation can be used to aid collection of the precipitated peptides, it is not essential (especially as the requirement for a volatile solvent-compatible centrifuge may pose a problem). Supernatant removal after precipitation and serial washing of the precipitates is performed by aspiration, and an N-Evap evaporator (Organomation Assoc., U.S.A.) connected to the nitrogen gas cylinder is used to dry the crude peptides in batches (**Photograph 15**). Tubes containing the wet peptide precipitates are spring-loaded into a holding rack positioned within a 30° C waterbath to compensate for heat loss during evaporation. The evaporator is equipped with 12 hollow needles to direct gas flow into the tubes for forced convection assistance to evaporation; gas flowrate to individual tubes can be adjusted as required during evaporation using separate valves on the gas lines leading to the needles (**Figure 19**). Lyophilization of the crude peptides can be performed directly in the tubes, which are loaded into a circular holder designed to fit within a standard glass dessicator for attachment to a vacuum manifold (or alternately, for use in a large-scale tray lyophilizer).

**Photograph 6      Multiple peptide synthesizer prototype (alpha-test version)**



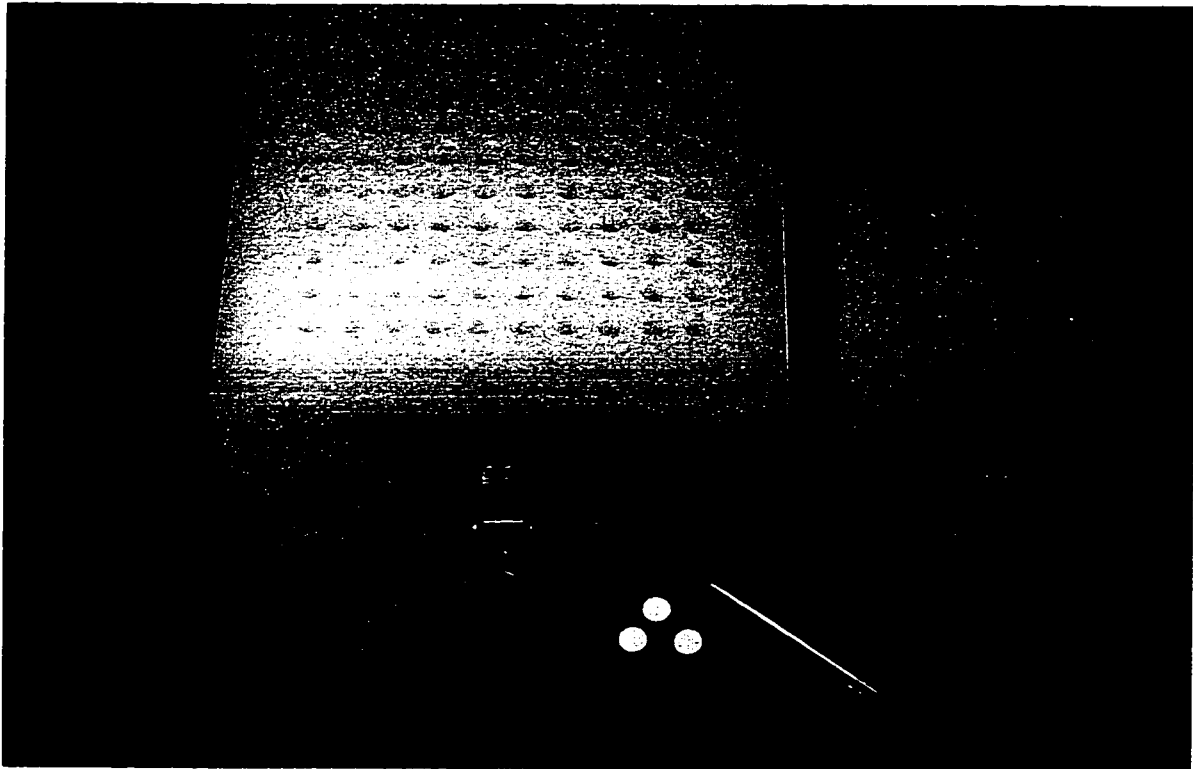
**Figure 18** Schematic Representation of Multiple Peptide Synthesizer Prototype



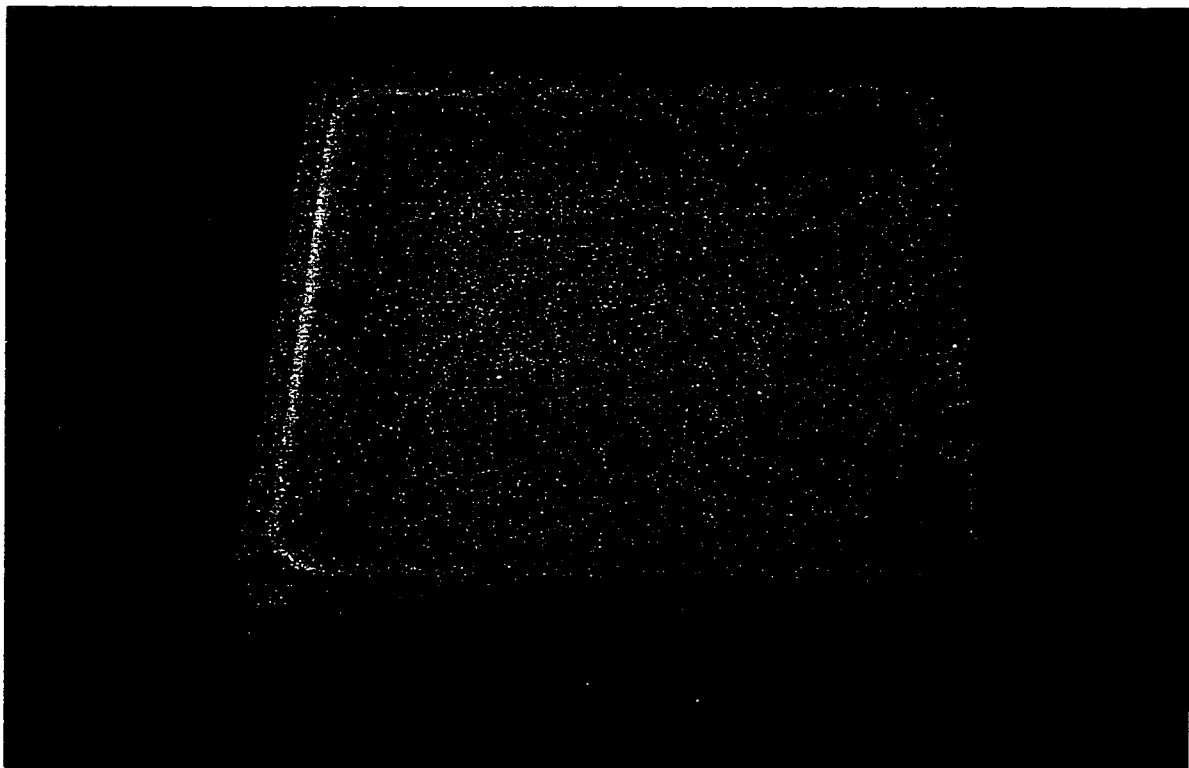
**Photograph 7** Prototype reaction modules with reactor frits and insertion rod

Left: 100-reactor model

Right: 20-reactor model



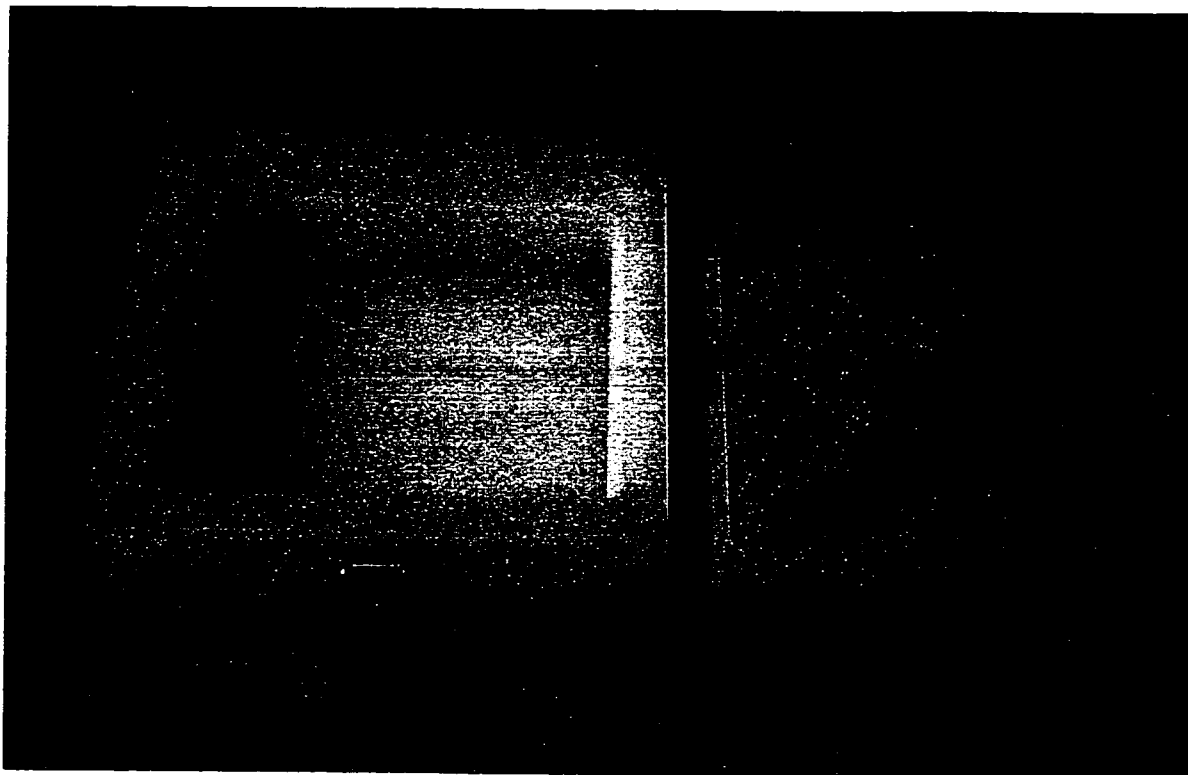
**Photograph 8** Underside of 100-reactor block with recessed drainage tubes



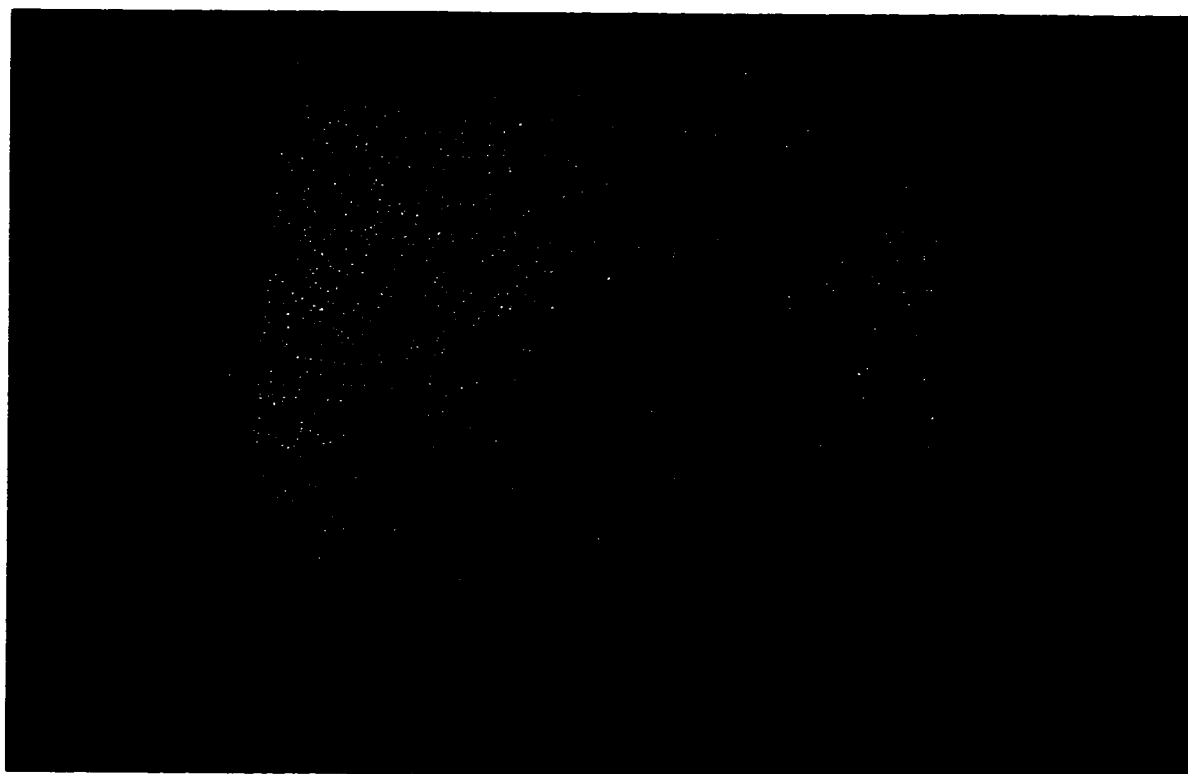
**Photograph 9    Collection base of reaction module (100-reactor model)**

Left:    Hollow base used for synthesis, showing guide pins for error-proof assembly

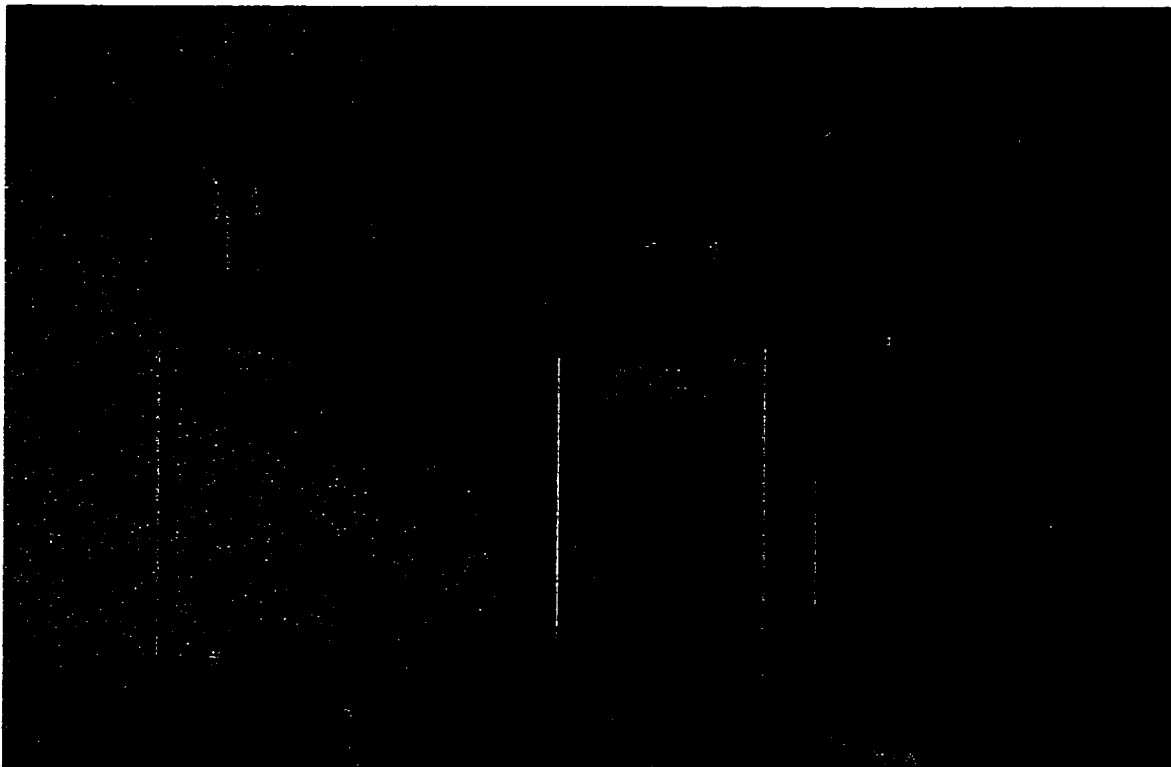
Right:    Cleavage collection tube rack



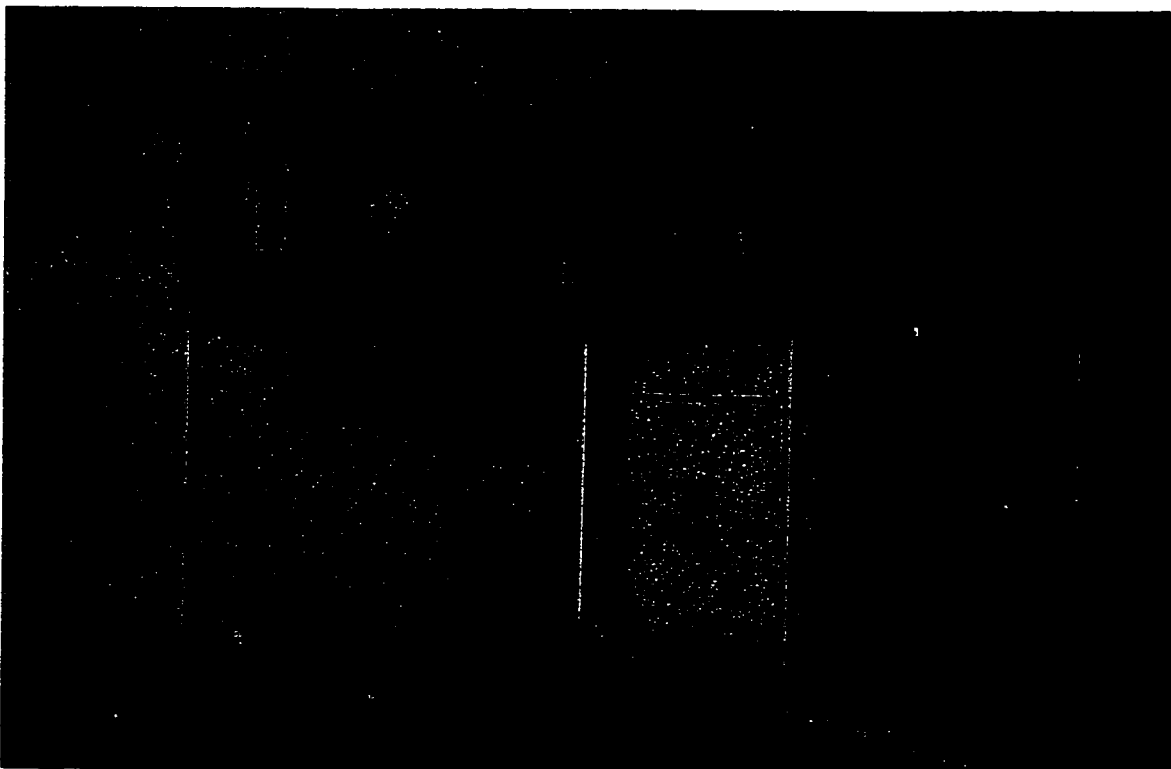
**Photograph 10    Collection base prepared for cleavage (100-reactor model)**



**Photograph 11** Cabinet dispensing station, showing track for reaction module and positioning stop



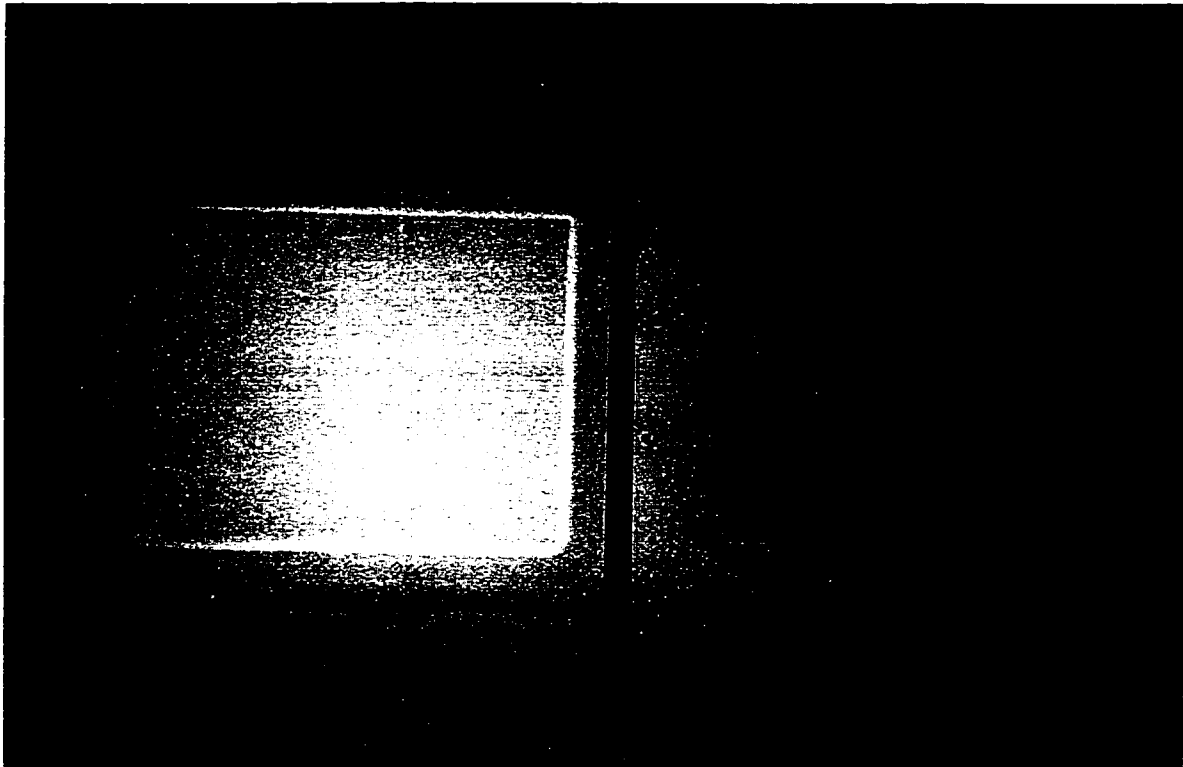
**Photograph 12** Reaction module in dispensing station (20-reactor model)



**Photograph 13 Interior of disassembled dispenser module (100-reactor model)**

Left: Underside of top section, showing air vent depressions

Right: Base with drainage tubes extending to interior

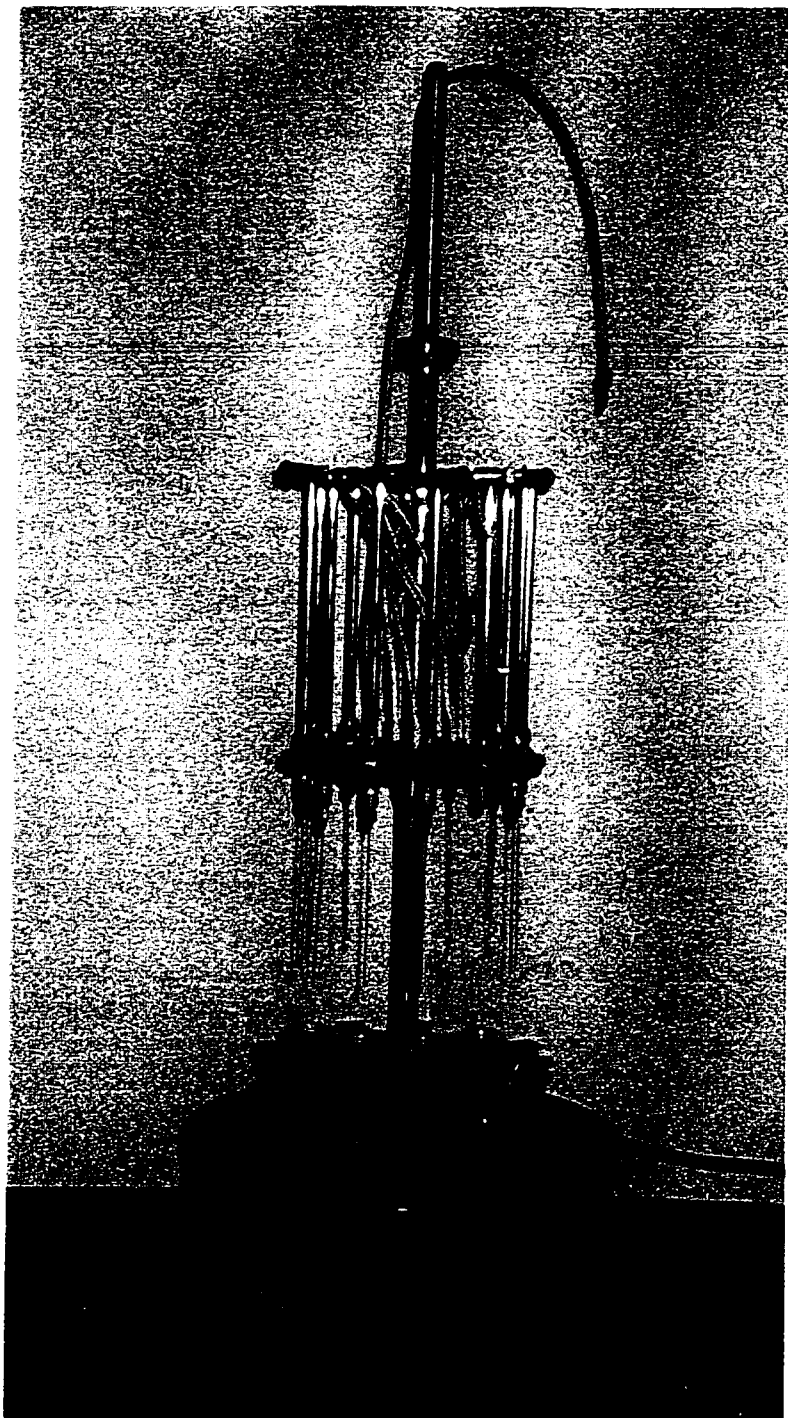


**Photograph 14 Underside of dispenser module with recessed drainage tubes**

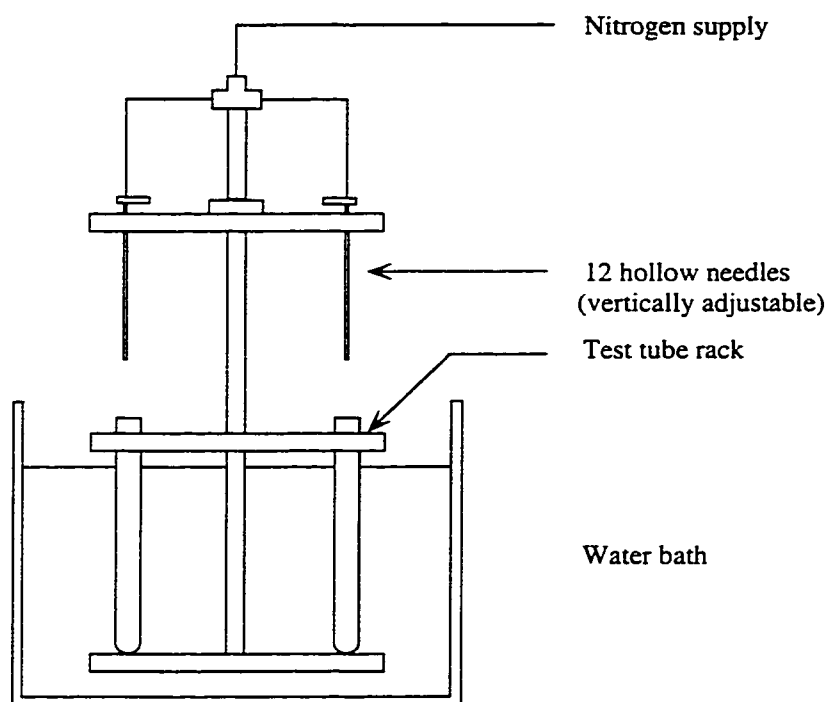




**Photograph 15** N-Evap evaporator with hollow needles for directed nitrogen gas flow



**Figure 19      Schematic Representation of Evaporator**



### 3.3 Methodology

The design of the multiple peptide synthesizer prototype was predicated on the use of Fmoc chemistry, with its relatively moderate conditions for deprotection and cleavage; Fmoc protection strategy permits multiple cleavage to be performed within the open dual-purpose reaction module using TFA (as compared with the specialized apparatus required for HF cleavage in Boc chemistry). Synthesis methodology has been chosen for reliability and simplicity to allow even the most inexperienced user to proceed using a standard protocol consisting of prepared SOPs (standard operating procedures), which can be viewed in the MPS operating manual (**Appendix B**).

NMP was initially selected as the synthesis solvent due to its enhanced ability to solvate the growing peptide chain when compared with the traditional solvent DMF, but difficulties in solubilizing certain Fmoc-amino acid derivatives (especially Asn and Gln) forced the adoption of a mixed solvent, NMP combined with DMF, to provide for elevated concentrations to assist with difficult couplings; further experience with the high cost of NMP and unreliable access to high-quality (distilled) solvent for peptide synthesis led to the final selection of DMF as sole solvent, without any noticeable effect on synthesis performance. The traditional deprotection reagent in Fmoc strategy, piperidine, was chosen for its proven record of reliability, and a double deprotection procedure using two 10-minute treatments of 20% piperidine in DMF was adopted to ensure complete removal of the N $\alpha$ -protecting group. Multiple solvent washes between synthesis steps ensure complete reagent removal from both the dispenser module and the reaction block.

The selection of a fast and reliable activation method was vital for the multiple peptide synthesizer: in a system open to the atmosphere (and so not absolutely dry), rapid coupling is required to prevent hydrolysis of activated species, while high

coupling efficiency is needed to avoid what would amount to very time-consuming monitoring of unreacted amines by a variety of methods, including the well-known quantitative ninhydrin reaction (Sarin *et al.*, 1981) or the non-invasive picrate method (Hodges and Merrifield, 1975), when performed for up to 100 reactors at a time. Although a number of Fmoc-amino acid activation methods have proven suitable for coupling in the multiple peptide synthesizer (including the use of OPf and ODHbt active esters), an *in situ* procedure generating OBt active esters from HBTU (Knorr *et al.*, 1989; Fields *et al.*, 1991) was eventually chosen as the standard activation method. Its advantages include rapid activation and coupling virtually free from racemization, high reaction efficiency by single coupling (which minimizes difficulties with residues such as Arg, Ile, Leu, Val, Asn, and Gln), the generation of harmless by-products HOBt, hexafluorophosphate, and tetramethyl urea (which is important for the open design of the reaction module), and the stability of HBTU in solution (HBTU in DMF can be stored for up to 13 weeks). The use of an *in situ* procedure also avoids the problem of declining derivative stability found with some pre-formed activated species. The method outlined in **Table 4** uses HBTU in combination with HOBt and the catalytic tertiary base DIEA in an optimal stoichiometry of 1:1:2:1 HBTU / HOBt / DIEA / Fmoc-amino acid. The conditions of coupling for the synthesizer were subject to optimization and will be discussed in the next section. Since the time of this choice of activation method, the corresponding 7-aza-based aminium salt HATU has been introduced and has demonstrated superior performance to HBTU, but this coupling reagent is not yet widely available.

Recommendations for Fmoc-compatible sidechain protection are presented in **Table 5**. The standard tBu group is normally sufficient protection for Asp and Glu as well as for Ser, Thr, and Tyr residues, and sidechain protection for Asn and Gln (which may introduce additional problems during synthesis) can usually be avoided.

The conventional Boc group is recommended for Lys, while  $N^T$ -blocking of the His sidechain is achieved most reliably with the Trt group (which avoids the introduction of secondary problems caused with  $N^T$ -blocking by the Bum group); the Trt group is also suitable for protecting Cys residues. Pmc protection of the Arg sidechain is more expensive than the use of Mtr, but is more appropriate for the multiple peptide synthesizer due to its acid-lability: the substantial reduction in required cleavage time permits the use of a standard (and minimal) cleavage period for all reactors. No protection is necessary for the sidechains of Met and Trp in Fmoc strategy.

Although it may be possible in some cases to use aqueous TFA for final deprotection and cleavage, sidechain protection usually forces the incorporation of nucleophilic scavengers in the cleavage mixture to mop up carbonium ions and other reactive species generated during cleavage. Provision has been made in the cleavage procedure for manual addition of customized mixtures tailored to the sidechain protection of individual peptides; however, multiple cleavage using the dispensing station for reagent delivery requires an all-purpose cleavage "cocktail" of scavengers designed to be effective for a wide range of sidechain protection and cleavage problems. A modified Reagent K cleavage cocktail has been selected for use with the synthesizer, in which the scavenger phenol has been eliminated to overcome post-cleavage handling problems introduced by its relatively high viscosity (**Table 6**). EDT has been included in the cleavage cocktail to trap tBu, tBu-TFA, Pmc, and resin linker cations; thioanisole addition prevents t-butylation and oxidation of Met and increases the rate of removal of Pmc, while water is used to quench the reactivity of tBu and Pmc ions and inhibit the formation of the TFA adduct with EDT. A relatively short cleavage period of 2 hours has proven completely effective in the removal of all the recommended sidechain protection, provided that the peptide-resin within each reactor has been thoroughly dried prior to cleavage; this drying is achieved by the combination

of a final DCM wash followed by a minimum 60 minute aspiration of the reaction module.

Post-cleavage peptide recovery was complicated by the sheer quantity of peptides involved. Ether precipitation (as opposed to the alternative ether extraction) was the obvious choice to minimize handling for large numbers of peptides. The conventional procedure for a single synthesis product consists of preliminary filtration of the cleavage mixture (to remove resin) before employing a rotary evaporator equipped with a CO<sub>2</sub>/acetone cold finger to remove TFA prior to precipitation; the actual precipitation step utilizes an 8 to 10-fold volume of cold (i.e. 4° C) ether per volume of cleaved peptide solution (usually diethyl ether, although t-butylmethyl ether is also employed). At a low scale of synthesis on the multiple peptide synthesizer (i.e. no more than 0.5 mL of each cleaved peptide solution collected), ether precipitation can be carried out in the original 13 x 100 mm collection tubes which possess a working volume of approximately 5 mL, but with increasing scale there is insufficient room for ether addition at the required ratio. Considerable effort was directed at reducing solution volumes in the collection tubes using a Savant SPEEDVAC centrifugal vacuum evaporator equipped with a liquid nitrogen trap and designed to exploit centrifugal force to prevent sample loss by bumping. Despite sufficient rotor space on the high-capacity evaporator to handle as many as 100 cleaved peptide solutions simultaneously, extremely long processing times were required for even moderate reductions in solution volume within the collection tubes, which was attributed to the lack of tube rotation (and extensive exposure of liquid surface to the vacuum) found on conventional single vessel rotary evaporators. In addition, practical operation of the SPEEDVAC essentially required an additional dedicated fumehood to ventilate the extremely strong odor of EDT and thioanisole cleavage scavengers escaping during loading and unloading of collection tubes. For these reasons, volume reduction of the cleaved

peptide solutions was abandoned in favor of solution transfer to larger vessels where an improved 20:1 volume ratio of ether to cleaved peptide solution could force precipitation to completion. Direct transfer by pouring (as opposed to pipetting) followed by a single minimal wash of the collection tube with neat TFA proved to be not only the simplest method but also minimized handling losses, and the choice of 50 mL conical centrifugation tubes provided ample space for vortex-washing of the crude precipitates. While these tubes permit the use of centrifugation to assist precipitate collection, gravity settling is a simpler alternative which, while potentially sacrificing some yield, avoids the costly requirement for an ether-compatible refrigerated centrifuge, and can be performed within a reasonable time period in an ice-water bath (or overnight at 4° C). Removal of supernatant and 2 serial ether washes from the precipitates was performed manually by aspiration, and the crude peptides were dried in batches of one dozen on an N-Evap evaporator (equipped with a 30° C waterbath to compensate for heat loss during evaporation) using forced nitrogen gas flow through hollow needles into the tubes to assist evaporation. Lyophilization of the crude peptides is recommended to remove volatile impurities, and pH adjustment may be performed at this time using an appropriate solvent. The conical centrifugation tubes are well suited for lyophilization: the large surface area permits easy and rapid freezing of a thin solution layer generated by manual rotation of the tube in an acetone/dry ice mixture, and the conical base prevents bumping under vacuum. The complete peptide recovery methodology is summarized in **Table 7**.

**Table 4    Selected Activation Method**

---

***In situ*   generation of OBt active amino acid esters**

---

Prepare activated Fmoc-amino acid solutions immediately prior to use in coupling.

Reagent ratio (equivalents):

1:1:2:1   HBTU / HOBt / DIEA / Fmoc-amino acid

Reagent solutions:

0.45 M HBTU / HOBt in DMF                      (stock solution)

Fmoc-amino acids dissolved in DMF   (freshly prepared)

Catalytic base DIEA                                      (distilled)



**Table 5      Selected Fmoc-Amino Acids**

| Amino acid | Derivative                      |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| A          | Fmoc-Ala.H <sub>2</sub> O       |
| C          | Fmoc-Cys(Trt)                   |
| D          | Fmoc-Asp(OtBu)                  |
| E          | Fmoc-Glu(OtBu).H <sub>2</sub> O |
| F          | Fmoc-Phe                        |
| G          | Fmoc-Gly                        |
| H          | Fmoc-His(Trt)                   |
| I          | Fmoc-Ile                        |
| K          | Fmoc-Lys(Boc)                   |
| L          | Fmoc-Leu                        |
| M          | Fmoc-Met                        |
| N          | Fmoc-Asn                        |
| P          | Fmoc-Pro.H <sub>2</sub> O       |
| Q          | Fmoc-Gln                        |
| R          | Fmoc-Arg(Pmc)                   |
| S          | Fmoc-Ser(tBu)                   |
| T          | Fmoc-Thr(tBu)                   |
| V          | Fmoc-Val                        |
| W          | Fmoc-Trp                        |
| Y          | Fmoc-Tyr(tBu)                   |

**Table 6      Selection of a Cleavage Reagent Cocktail**

| <b>Reagent K Cocktail</b> | <b>Modified Reagent K Cocktail</b> |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 82.5 % TFA                | 90 % TFA                           |
| 5.0 % H <sub>2</sub> O    | 5 % H <sub>2</sub> O               |
| 5.0 % phenol              |                                    |
| 5.0 % thioanisole         | 3 % thioanisole                    |
| 2.5 % EDT                 | 2 % EDT                            |

**Table 7    Selected Peptide Recovery Methodology**

---

**Cold Ether Precipitation**

---

Perform at  $\leq 4^{\circ}\text{C}$             (cold room or ice-water bath)

Diethyl ether : cleavage solution volume ratio:

10:1     Small-scale ( $\leq 0.5\text{ mL}$  cleavage solution)  
Perform in 13 x 100 mm collection test tubes.

20:1     Large-scale ( $> 0.5\text{ mL}$  cleavage solution)  
Perform in 50 mL conical centrifuge tubes.

Collection of precipitates:

Gravity settling:    Minimum 30 - 60 minutes (or overnight).

Centrifugation:    Requires ether-compatible, refrigerated  
centrifuge.

Forced nitrogen gas drying of precipitates.

---

**Lyophilization**

---

From  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (may require up to 10% acetic acid to dissolve).

From  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$  (aq) if pH adjustment required for assay purposes.

### 3.4 Synthesizer Validation

Two model syntheses were chosen to validate the design of the multiple peptide synthesizer and its selected methodology: an "easy" synthesis of the octapeptide angiotensin II, and the well-known "difficult" synthesis of the C-terminal region sequence from acyl carrier protein, ACP[65-74] (sequences provided in **Table 8**, with theoretical masses of 1087.2 and 1104.2 amu, respectively). Problem syntheses can be attributed in part to steric hindrance in the coupling of amino acids such as  $\beta$ -branched Ile and Val, or Thr (which can be thought of as a hydroxylated version of Val), but sequence-specific difficulties also arise from poor solvation leading to H-bonding and aggregation. Intrachain H-bonding occurs most frequently at reverse turns, while interchain H-bonding and aggregation occurs with the formation of ordered structures such as  $\alpha$ -helices and especially  $\beta$ -sheets in as few as 6 to 10 residues; aggregation can also occur in regions containing apolar sidechain protecting groups. Increasing solvent polarity and a change in sidechain protection may serve to disrupt aggregation. The synthesis of ACP[65-74], a sequence which contains a number of sterically hindered couplings and also promotes interchain aggregation (reducing amino group accessibility), was regarded as a test of both the efficiency of the *in situ* activation method and the degree of solvation achieved with the synthesis solvent DMF.

Both peptides were synthesized with N-terminal acetylation and C-terminal amidation, common peptide modifications to protect biological activity; since the peptide attachment to the resin was via an amide bond, normal conditions for peptide bond formation existed. In contrast, the generation of a free C-terminal peptide would have required peptide attachment via an ester bond, formerly difficult to achieve by DMAP-catalysed esterification of Fmoc-amino acid symmetric anhydrides without strictly controlled conditions to minimize racemization and dipeptide formation (and

frequently circumvented by the costly purchase of resins pre-loaded with the C-terminal residue); it was not considered necessary to test the generation of peptide acids on the synthesizer since new methodology using 2,6-dichlorobenzoylchloride-catalysed esterification and longer loading times virtually eliminates these problems (Sieber, 1987). Selected methodology for N-terminal acetylation used a 1:1:20 volume ratio of acetic anhydride / DIEA / DMF.

Restricting the model syntheses to the generation of peptide amides, the performances of a selection of common amide resins in the multiple peptide synthesizer were examined. Four resins compatible with single step TFA cleavage were chosen, including two batch-mode and two continuous-flow examples (structures provided in **Figure 20**). AM (aminomethyl) and MBHA (4-methylbenzhydrylamine) batch-mode resins incorporate the Rink linker attached to a polystyrene-based support, whereas NovaSyn KR and PR resins incorporate a modified Rink linker attached to composite matrices. The loading levels of the four resins were comparable (in the range 0.41 - 0.47 mmol/g) except for the substantially lower value of 0.09 mmol/g for NovaSyn KR, and the rigidity of the latter resin provided by its Kieselguhr support also contrasted with the swelling in DMF exhibited by the remaining resins (**Table 9**). The easy angiotensin II test synthesis was carried out on each of the resins at a 50 mg resin scale (corresponding to 0.0235, 0.0215, 0.0045 and 0.0205 mmol scale for AM, MBHA, NovaSyn KR and PR resins, with reactor solution volumes determined by swelling volumes in DMF) using less than ideal conditions of a 30 minute coupling time with 4-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid and no mixing by nitrogen bubbling to test resin performance. Although mass spectroscopy confirmed the presence of angiotensin II in all four crude products, the continuous-flow resins performed considerably better than the batch-mode resins: only minor impurities were found, whereas the AM resin crude product contained such numbers of impurities that the resin could not be

considered useful under these conditions in the multiple peptide synthesizer, and even the MBHA resin produced an inferior product (**Figure 21**). The porous structure of the continuous-flow resins allows rapid diffusion and permeation of solvent and reagents to the polyamide gel where chain elongation takes place, providing for the synthesis of high purity peptides even in the absence of mixing. No sidechain-protected impurities were found by mass spectroscopy, confirming the suitability of the selected cleavage reagent cocktail and the duration of cleavage. The NovaSyn PR continuous-flow resin was chosen for further use in the multiple peptide synthesizer on the basis of purest crude product and a 4.5-fold greater loading than the Kieselguhr equivalent (NovaSyn KR).

Optimum conditions of coupling time and excess Fmoc-amino acid were determined for "easy" and "difficult" syntheses for inclusion in a standard protocol. Coupling times as rapid as 10-30 minutes are claimed for the HBTU activation method; this was investigated in the angiotensin II model synthesis using a coupling period of 10-60 minutes with no reagent limitation, i.e. a 10-fold Fmoc-amino acid excess. As seen in **Figure 22**, a reduction in coupling time from 60 to 30 minutes had little negative impact on the crude product, but further decline to 20 and 10 minutes produced increasing numbers and quantities of impurities. Consequently, only two coupling times, 30 minutes (i.e short coupling) and 60 minutes (long coupling), were retained for further use on the multiple peptide synthesizer when investigating the effect of Fmoc-amino acid excess. In the case of an easy synthesis such as angiotensin II, a short coupling time is sufficient to produce a close to pure product over a range of Fmoc-amino acid from 10-fold excess down to 5-fold excess (**Figure 23**); trace impurities increased substantially in number and quantity as reagent was reduced much beyond this level. Increasing the coupling time to 60 minutes (**Figure 24**) allowed a lower Fmoc-amino acid excess to be used: even a minimal 2-fold excess produced a

quite pure product. Clearly an easy synthesis on the multiple peptide synthesizer provides room for compromise between coupling time and Fmoc-amino acid excess, reducing reagent (and compensating with a prolonged coupling time) if minimal expense is the objective, or minimizing synthesis time (and compensating with a larger excess) if the objective is the most rapid peptide production. Recommended conditions in the standard protocol for an easy synthesis are 30 minute coupling at 5-fold excess. In a difficult synthesis such as ACP[65-74], this option does not exist: mass spectroscopy verified the presence of the product in all cases, but with a short coupling (**Figure 25**), even a 10-fold amino acid excess could not reduce all impurities to trace amounts, and significant numbers and amounts of impurities appeared at even 7.5-fold excess; in a long coupling (**Figure 26**), prolonged coupling could not completely compensate for concentration effects, since impurities became significant below a 5-fold excess. A difficult coupling requires both longer coupling and greater reagent concentration: 60 minute coupling at 10-fold excess is recommended in the standard protocol.

Reactor size in the multiple peptide synthesizer has been increased to permit a range of synthesis scale: an approximate working volume of 4 mL (which provides accommodation for mixing by nitrogen bubbling) permits a practical range of 0.005-0.2 mmol scale using the NovaSyn PR resin (corresponding to 12-490 mg resin per reactor). The possibility of a mass transfer limitation (resistance to solvent and reagent diffusion within the resin) arising with increasing scale was explored in the difficult ACP[65-74] synthesis, comparing performance under the recommended conditions (long coupling at 10-fold Fmoc-amino acid excess) at three synthesis scales: 0.02, 0.1 and 0.2 mmol (**Figure 27**). Results confirmed the suitability of the continuous-flow NovaSyn PR resin, characterized by very high porosity and permeability towards solvent and reagents, for synthesizer use: a 10-fold increase in scale of synthesis (to

0.2 mmol) provided a product purity close to that achieved at the lowest scale (0.02 mmol), despite the absence of mixing.

While continuous-flow resins are well-suited to the column reactor design of the multiple peptide synthesizer, their major disadvantage lies in their cost: the supported matrices required for continuous flow are considerably more expensive than the polystyrene or unsupported polyamide resins used in batch synthesis. However, the provision for mixing by nitrogen bubbling in the reactors of the multiple peptide synthesizer could provide a means for high-purity synthesis on batch-mode resins. The original angiotensin II test synthesis using 30 minute coupling with 4-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid was repeated on AM and MBHA resins with mixing during deprotection and coupling (results in **Figure 28**). A modest improvement in product quality was observed on the AM resin, while the most abundant impurity in the MBHA resin product was substantially reduced by mixing; since this synthesis was conducted at less than optimal reagent concentration, a combination of elevated reagent excess and mixing can be employed to permit the use of an inexpensive batch-mode resin in the multiple peptide synthesizer without excessive sacrifice of product quality.

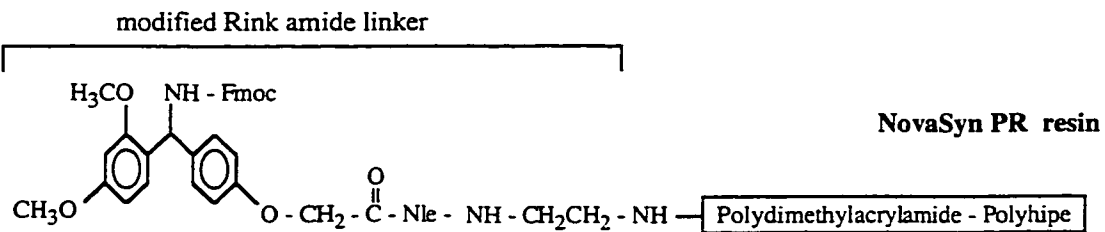
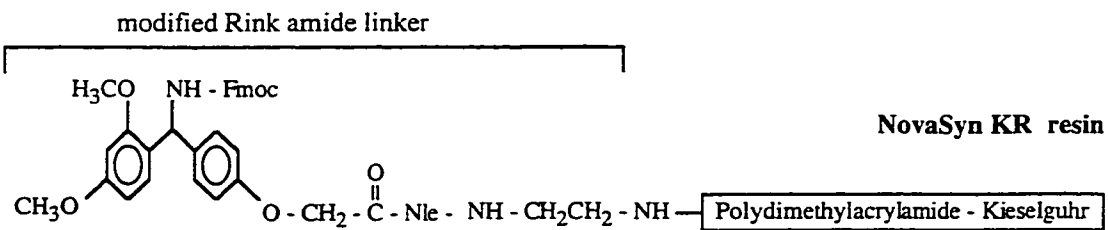
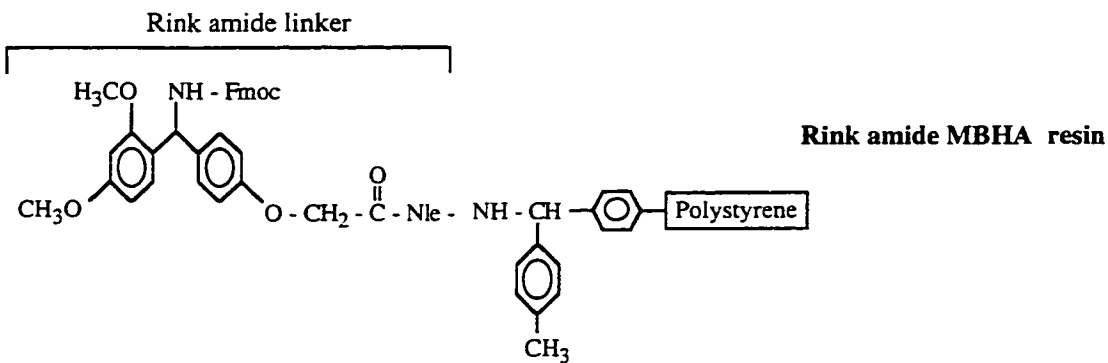
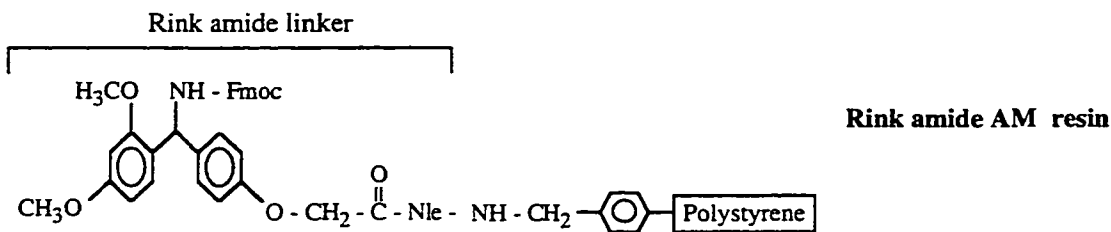


**Table 8     Sequences of Peptides for Model Syntheses**

| Peptide        | Peptide Sequence               | Synthesis Level |
|----------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| Angiotensin II | Ac- D R V Y I H P F     -amide | Easy            |
| ACP[65-74]     | Ac- V Q A A I D Y I N G -amide | Difficult       |

Ac = N<sup>α</sup>-acetyl; amide = C<sup>α</sup>-amide.  
 ACP denotes acyl carrier protein.

### Figure 20 Structures of Selected Resins



**Table 9**                      **Characteristics of Selected Resins**

| <b>Resin</b>    | <b>Loading<br/>(mmol/g)</b> | <b>Swell volume in DMF<br/>(mL/g)</b> |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Rink amide AM   | 0.47                        | 5.0                                   |
| Rink amide MBHA | 0.43                        | 5.2                                   |
| NovaSyn KR 100  | 0.09                        | 3.2                                   |
| NovaSyn PR 500  | 0.41                        | 8.0                                   |

**Figure 21** Angiotensin II test synthesis on selected resins

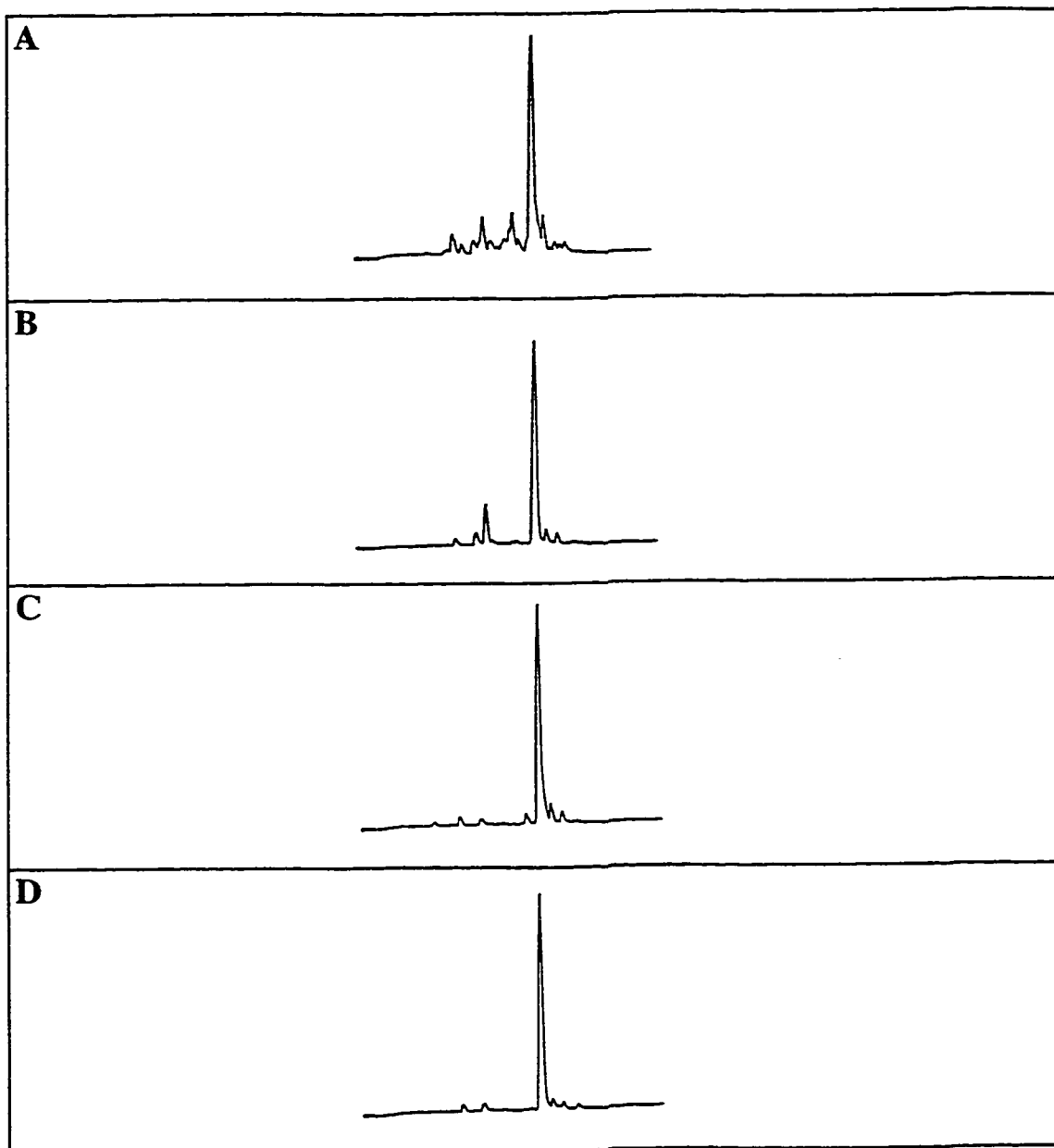
Synthesis: 30 min. coupling, 4-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel A: AM resin.

Panel B: MBHA resin.

Panel C: NovaSyn KR resin.

Panel D: NovaSyn PR resin.



Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 22 Coupling time effect in the Angiotensin II synthesis**

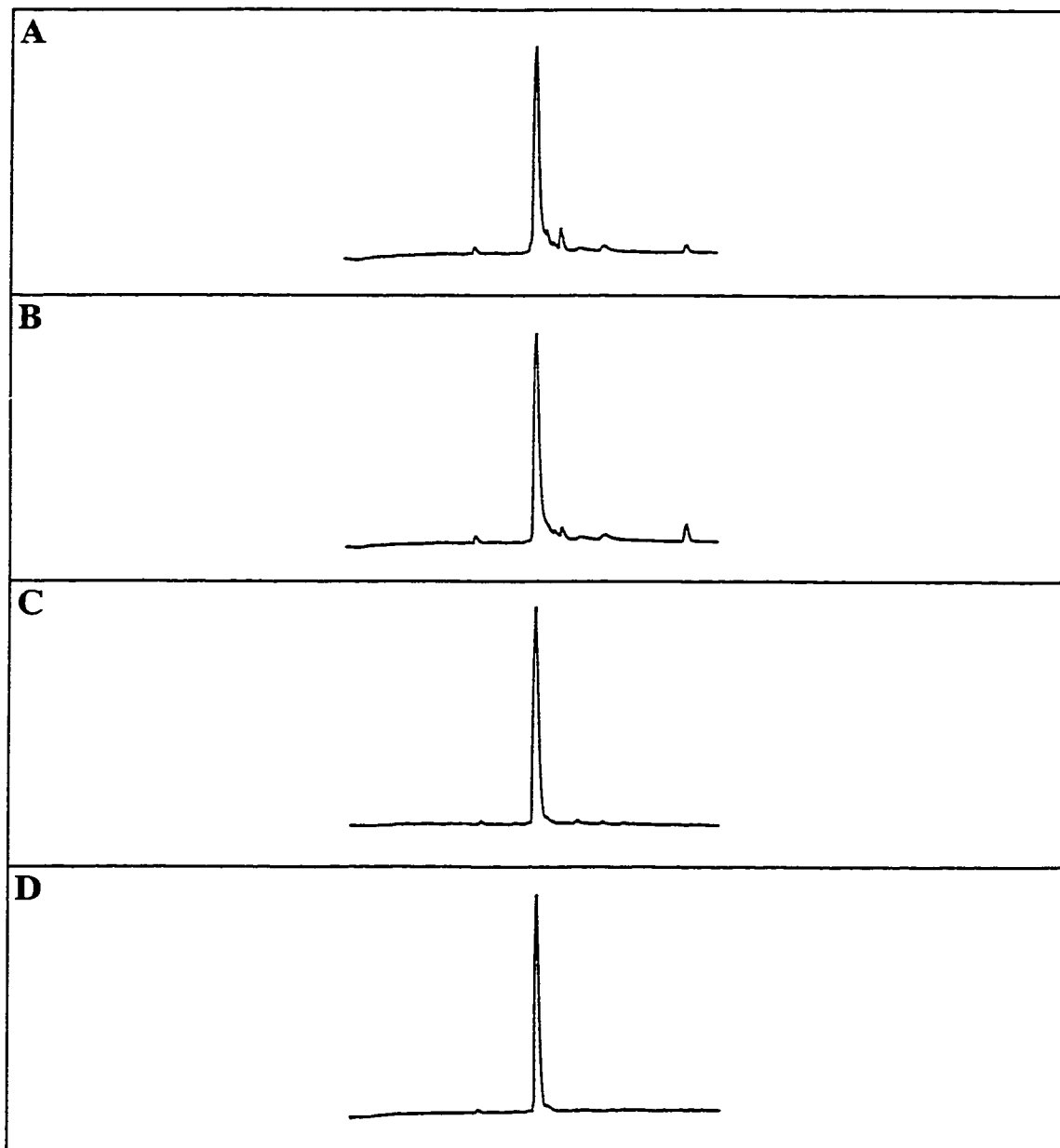
Synthesis: NovaSyn PR resin, 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel A: 10 min. coupling.

Panel B: 20 min. coupling.

Panel C: 30 min. coupling.

Panel D: 60 min. coupling.



Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 23** Short coupling concentration effect in the Angiotensin II synthesis

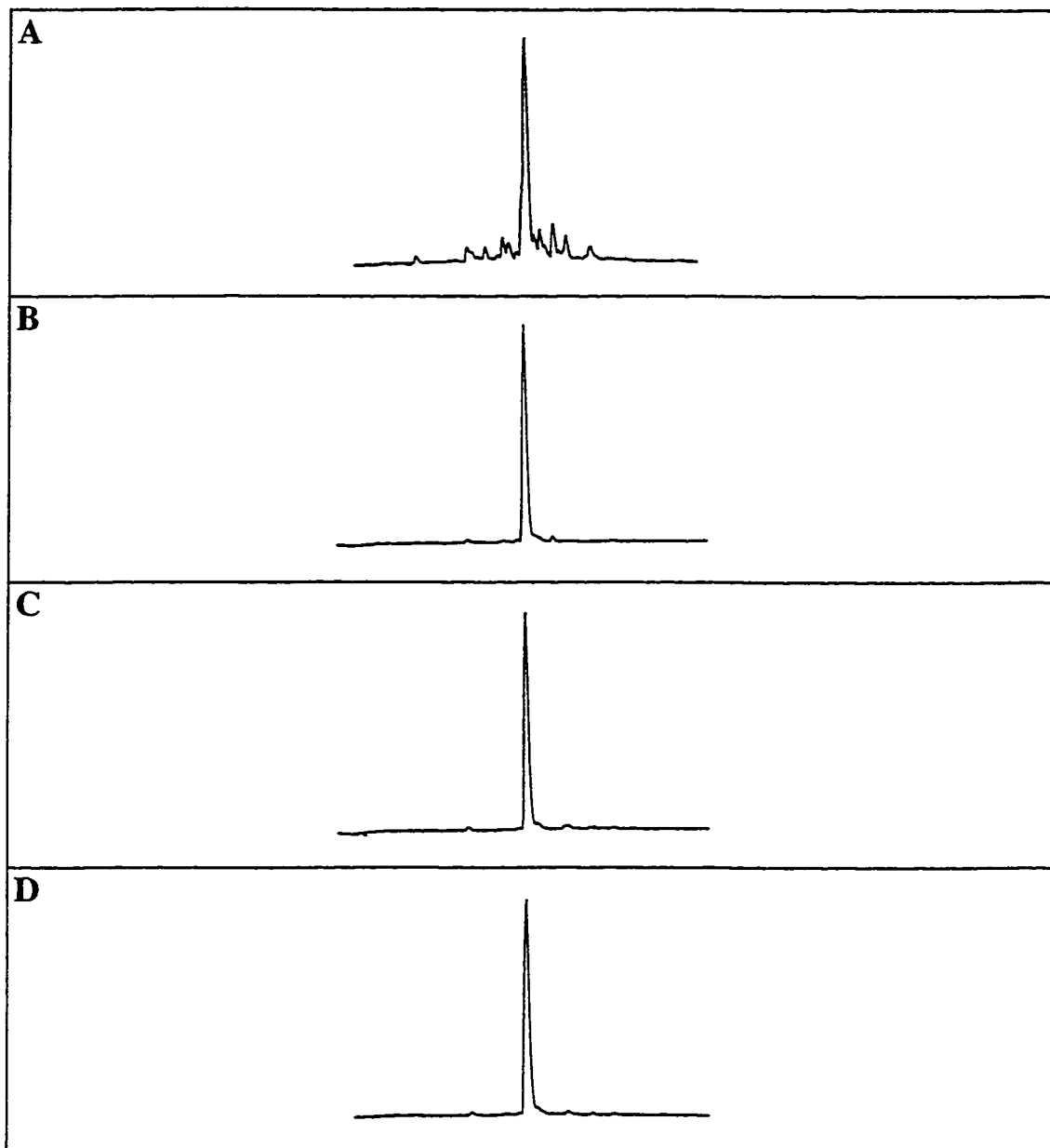
Synthesis: Short coupling refers to 30 min. coupling (on NovaSyn PR resin).

Panel A: 2-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel B: 5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel C: 7.5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel D: 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.



Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 24 Long coupling concentration effect in the Angiotensin II synthesis**

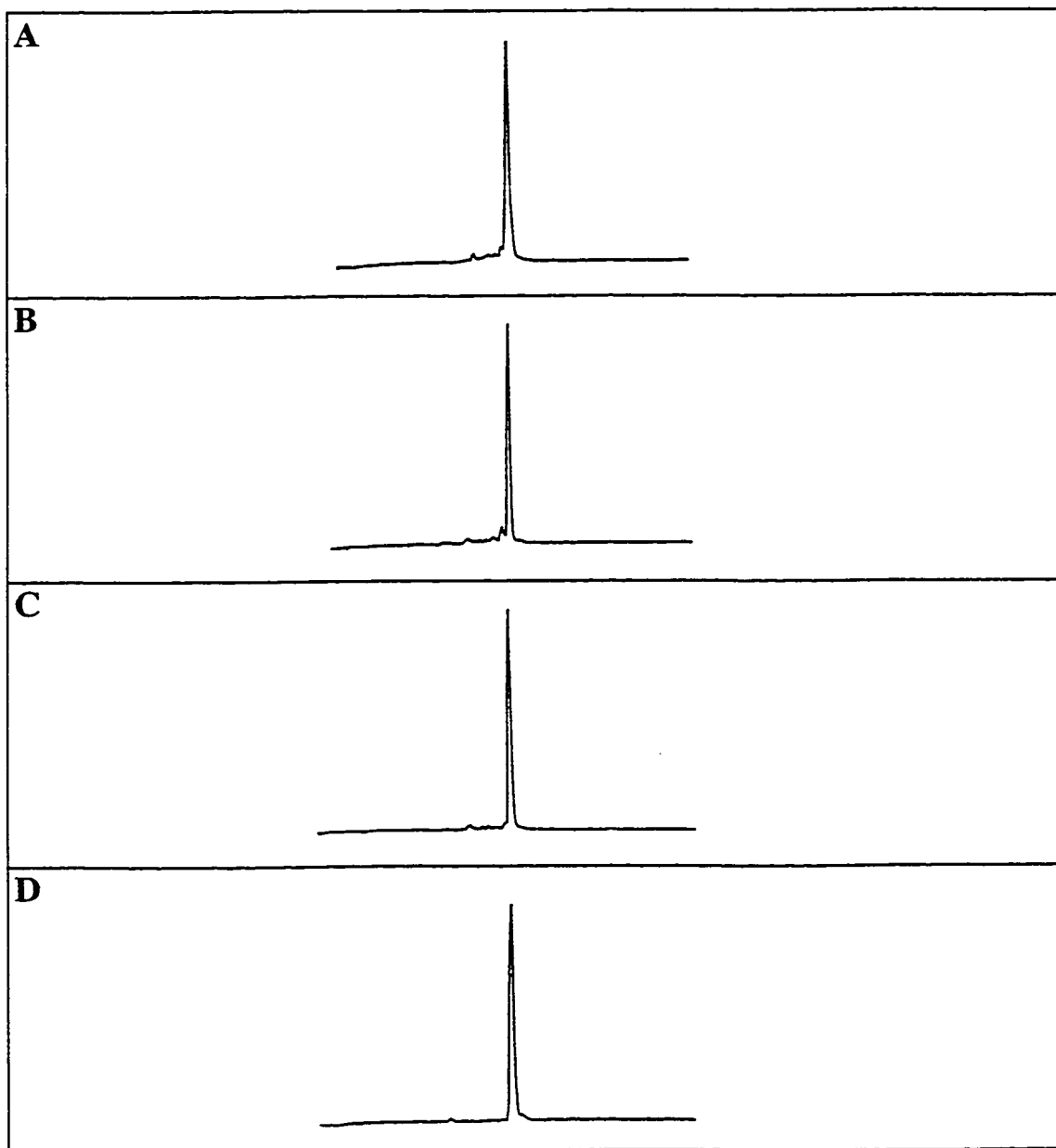
Synthesis: Long coupling refers to 60 min. coupling (on NovaSyn PR resin).

Panel A: 2-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel B: 5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel C: 7.5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel D: 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

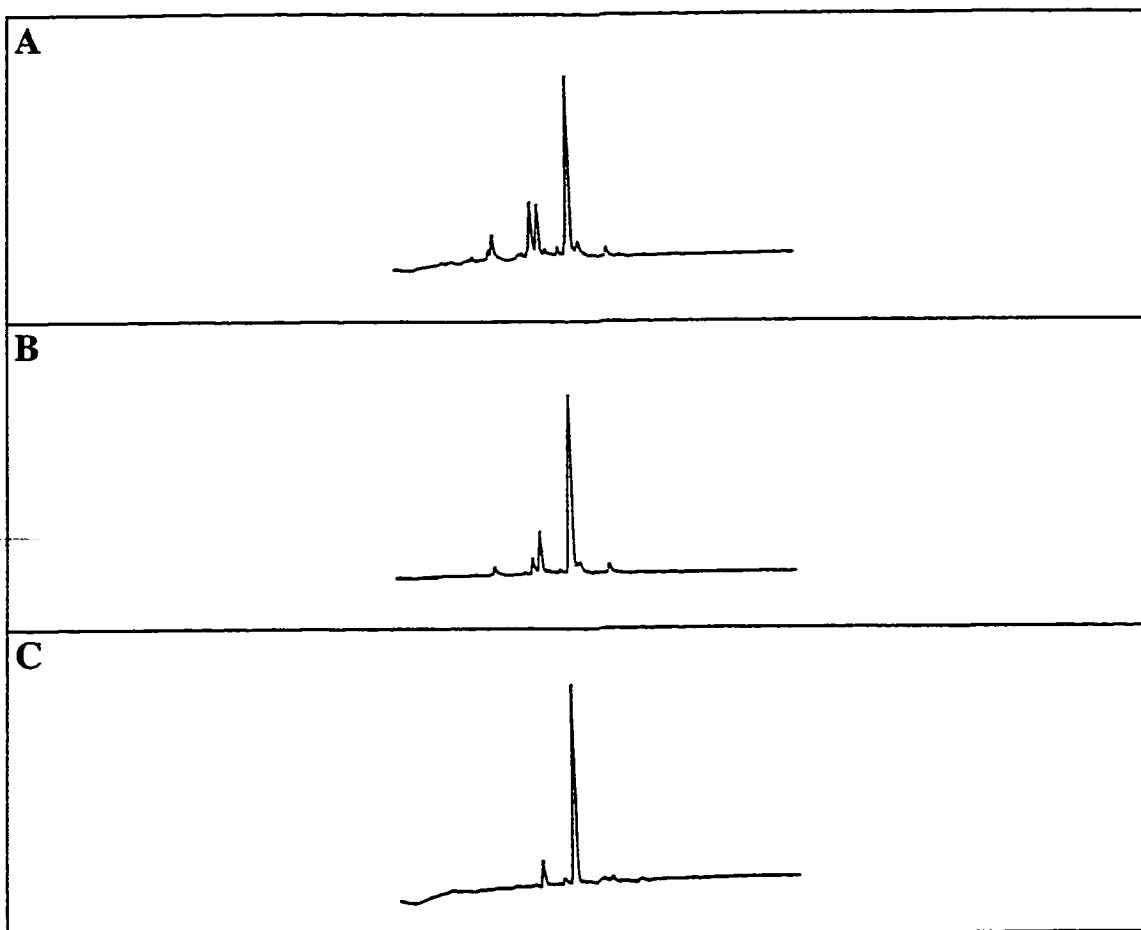


Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 25 Short coupling concentration effect in the ACP[65-74] synthesis**

Synthesis: Short coupling refers to 30 min. coupling (on NovaSyn PR resin).  
Panel A: 5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.  
Panel B: 7.5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.  
Panel C: 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.



Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)  
Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile



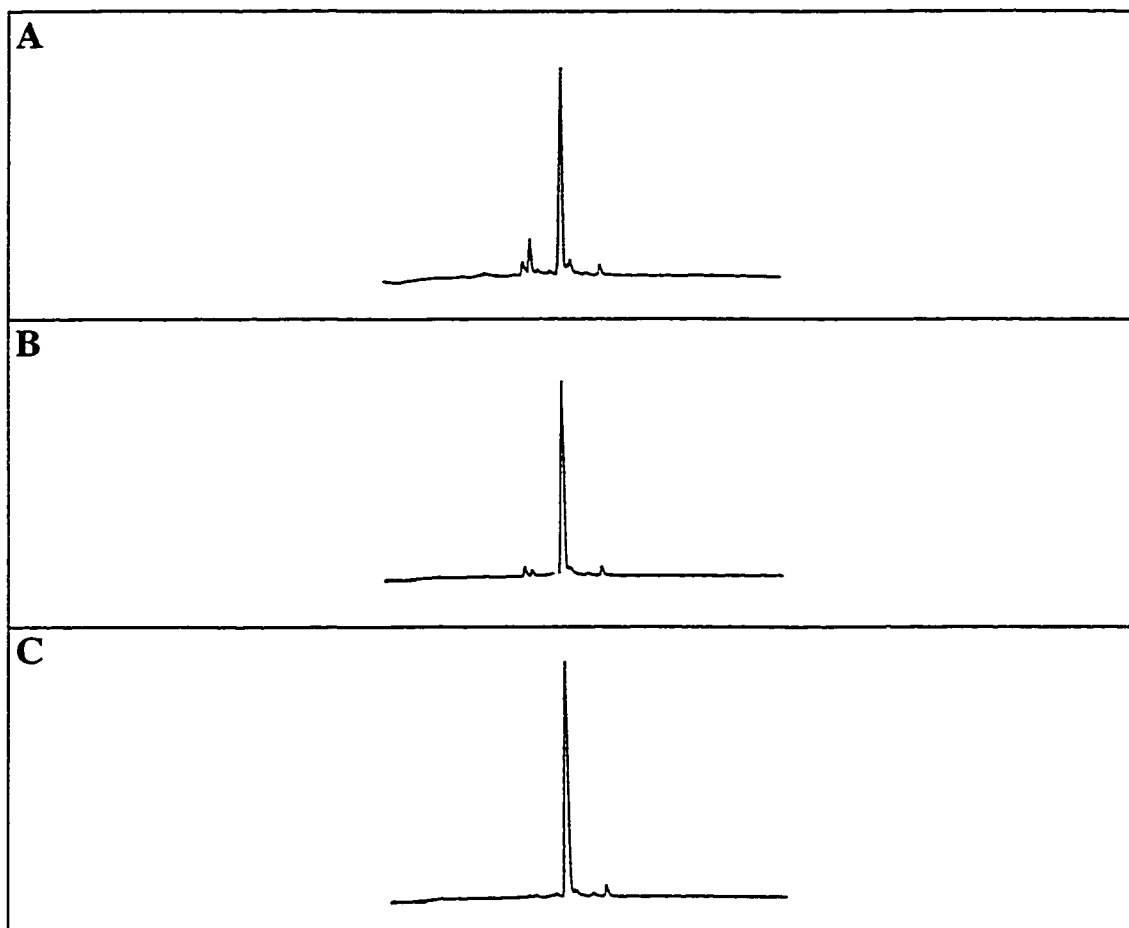
**Figure 26 Long coupling concentration effect in the ACP[65-74] synthesis**

Synthesis: Long coupling refers to 60 min. coupling (on NovaSyn PR resin).

Panel A: 5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel B: 7.5-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

Panel C: 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid.

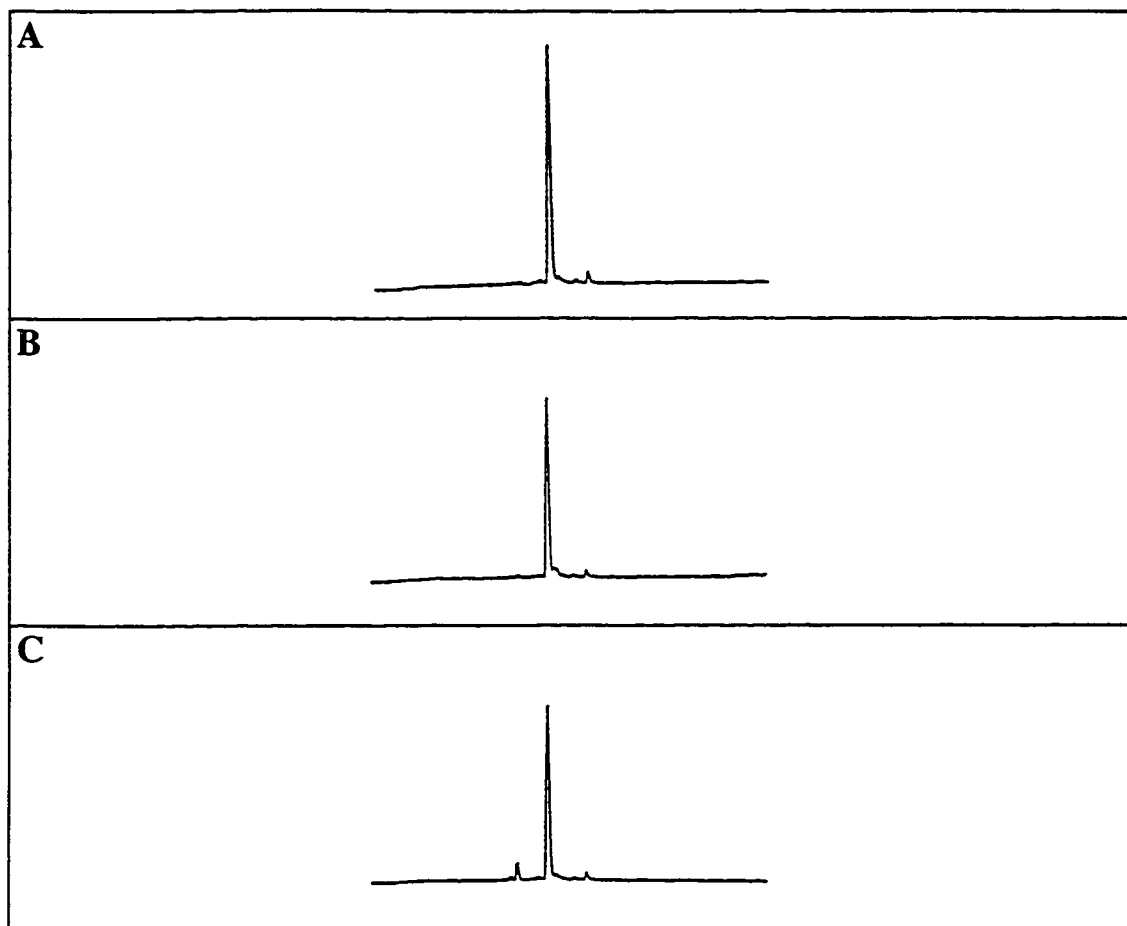


Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 27** Effect of synthesis scale in the ACP[65-74] synthesis

Synthesis: Long coupling (60 min.), 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid (on NovaSyn PR resin).  
Panel A: 0.02 mmol scale  
Panel B: 0.1 mmol scale  
Panel C: 0.2 mmol scale



Column: Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)  
Conditions: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Figure 28**    **Mixing effect in the Angiotensin II synthesis**

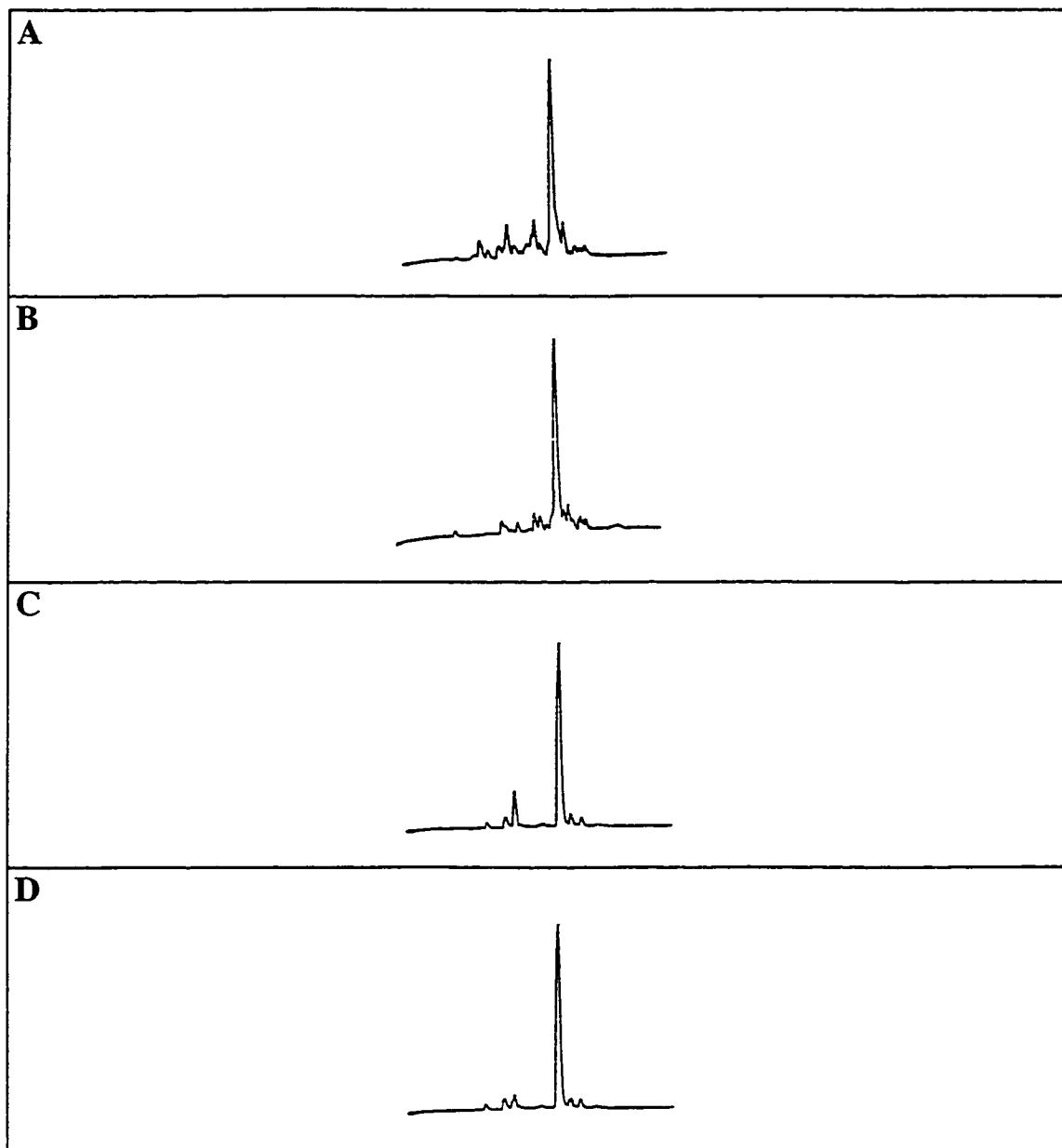
Synthesis:        30 min. coupling, 4-fold excess Fmoc-amino acid, batch resins.

Panel A:        AM resin:        No mixing.

Panel B:        AM resin:        Mixing by nitrogen bubbling.

Panel C:        MBHA resin:    No mixing.

Panel D:        MBHA resin:    Mixing by nitrogen bubbling.



Column:        Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)

Conditions:    Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**4.1 Peptide Analogues and Their Uses**

The generation of synthetic peptide analogues is the most common application envisaged for the multiple peptide synthesizer. Analogues with agonist or antagonist activity are useful tools in the study of the biochemistry, physiology and pharmacology of native peptide neurotransmitters, hormones, growth factors and cytokines. Small peptide mimetics of protein structure or function simplify many areas of protein research, especially molecular recognition processes. Novel analogues with pharmaceutical applications as diagnostics, therapeutics, and vaccines may be created by increasing selectivity, potency, and perhaps most importantly, stability against biodegradation. Chemical synthesis of these analogues has an advantage over biological procedures using recombinant technology - the ability to incorporate residues and structures not found in nature or subject to biological selection. The real potential of synthetic peptides lies in the creation of novel analogues with enhanced, or even entirely new, properties.

Unfortunately, while *de novo* design of peptide ligands with predicted physical, chemical and biological properties is a major goal of protein and peptide research, designing from first principles remains a complex problem. The rational approach to design continues to rely on structure-function studies, in which planned structural changes to a native sequence are introduced with the expectation of generating functional changes in the resulting analogues. These studies begin with single modifications of a native sequence to allow each change in biological activity to be assigned to an individual change in structure. For example, deletion analogues of

varying length can be constructed to determine the minimum sequence for biological activity. The relative importance of individual sidechains can be assessed by residue replacement, by systematically "walking" a single alanine through the sequence to generate a series of alanine-substituted analogues (or in the event of a native alanine residue, a glycine substitution can be used); this method assumes that the sidechain deletion resulting from the substitution can assess the importance of the sidechain while having a minimum effect on peptide conformation (since alanine has the simplest C $\beta$ -containing sidechain of the amino acids). Replacement with other amino acids of differing physico-chemical properties can reveal steric, charge, hydrophobicity, and hydrogen-bonding requirements. Systematic substitution of D- for L-amino acids can demonstrate stereochemical requirements for interaction, and may also provide information on the importance of secondary structures such as  $\alpha$ -helices and  $\beta$ -turns (by disrupting these structures). At a more sophisticated level, conformational constraints can be imposed on the sequence. This may be beneficial when the synthetic peptide is derived from a larger protein sequence, since the peptide may be too small to adopt a stable conformation or may lose conformational properties in solution which would have been imposed in its native protein environment. Favorable conformational constraints may produce a significant effect on even those native peptides which have evolved high biological activity despite conformational mobility. Constraints may be local (restricting the mobility of a single residue), regional (affecting a group of residues forming a secondary structural unit), or even global; examples include the addition of sterically bulky substituents adjacent to rotatable bonds (to restrict mobility), cyclic structures such as "turn mimetics" (to replace turn residues while maintaining turn geometry), and cyclization (through disulfide bond formation or amide cyclization).

The knowledge gained from the range of analogues generated in these structure-function studies can be used to identify important structural elements for biological function and molecular recognition, providing a path for the "redesign" of peptides for customized or novel activities.

#### **4.2 Structure-Function Study of the PP-1c Binding Motif**

An opportunity to demonstrate the potential of the multiple peptide synthesizer was provided by a proposed structure-function study of a novel sequence motif promoting the binding of intracellular regulatory proteins to protein phosphatase-1 in cell signalling pathways. This study seeks to define the key structural elements and determine the optimal binding motif for comparison with motifs in a variety of potential phosphatase regulatory proteins, using a set of synthetic peptide analogues generated by sequence variation of the four positions of the motif version shared by protein inhibitor I-1 and its homologue DARPP-32 (**Figure 29**). Limited to single substitutions, and incorporating all twenty naturally occurring amino acids at each position, this study requires the synthesis of the motif-containing fragment and 76 (i.e. 4 series of 19) analogues; the effect of substitution at each position of the motif will be assessed by a competitive  $^{32}\text{P}$ -phosphorylase  $\alpha$  phosphatase radioassay, in which phosphorylase  $\alpha$  serves as the phosphatase substrate and peptide analogs compete with phosphorylated I-1[9-54] to inhibit the phosphatase (Cohen *et al.*, 1988; Holmes, 1991).

**Figure 29      Generation of PP-1c binding motif analogues  
by sequence variation**

|                                |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|
| Motif position                 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| I-1 and DARPP-32 binding motif | K | I | Q | F |

---

|           |   |   |   |   |                |
|-----------|---|---|---|---|----------------|
| Analogues |   |   |   |   | # of analogues |
| Series 1  | X | I | Q | F | 19             |
| Series 2  | K | X | Q | F | 19             |
| Series 3  | K | I | X | F | 19             |
| Series 4  | K | I | Q | X | 19             |

X represents any one of the 20 naturally occurring amino acids.

### 4.3 Background

Protein phosphatase-1 (PP-1) is one of the major serine/threonine protein phosphatases of eukaryotic cells (Stralfors *et al.*, 1985), and is involved in such diverse cellular functions as glycogen metabolism, muscle contraction, neurotransmission, transcriptional splicing, and cell-cycle progression (Cohen, 1989; Shenolikar, 1994; Wera and Hemmings, 1995). In common with many protein kinases and phosphatases which target serine and threonine residues (and unlike most enzymes), PP-1 displays broad substrate specificity *in vitro*. Since protein kinases and phosphatases are key components of cell signalling pathways, responsible for the reversible phosphorylation of proteins regulating most cellular processes, their broad substrate specificity permits a wide range of responses to physiological stimuli. This trait also enables cross-talk between signalling pathways (i.e. signal integration), as the range of substrates may include the protein kinases and phosphatases themselves (reviewed in Cohen, 1992).

On the other hand, broad substrate specificity necessitates strict regulation *in vivo*, and it is becoming clear that an important regulatory mechanism for a number of protein kinases and phosphatases involves compartmentalization (reviewed in Hubbard and Cohen, 1993; Faux and Scott, 1996). In this form of regulation, an enzyme does not rely on diffusion to contact its physiological substrate, but is directed through interaction with a targeting moiety or subunit to a particular subcellular environment such as an organelle, membrane, or complex. Targeting restricts enzyme location in order to confine access to a particular substrate pool, and may even modify the catalytic and regulatory properties of protein kinases and phosphatases in order to selectively enhance specificity toward a certain substrate.

PP-1 has served as the model for developing the targeting concept. Distinct PP-1 holoenzymes appear to be associated with different cellular functions, and are



composed of a 37 kDa catalytic subunit (PP-1c) complexed with one of an array of different regulatory or targeting subunits. Examples of mammalian PP-1c targeting subunits include glycogen binding protein  $G_M$  (Tang *et al.*, 1991), liver glycogen binding protein  $G_L$  (Doherty *et al.*, 1995; Moorhead *et al.*, 1995), cytosolic inhibitor proteins I-1, DARPP-32 (dopamine- and cAMP-regulated phosphoprotein,  $M_r = 32,000$ ) and I-2 (reviewed in Cohen, 1992; Hubbard and Cohen, 1993), myofibrillar binding protein  $M_{110}$  (Alessi *et al.*, 1992; Chen *et al.*, 1994; Moorhead *et al.*, 1994), retinoblastoma protein p110Rb (Durfee *et al.*, 1993), p53 binding protein p53BP2 (Helps *et al.*, 1995), and nuclear protein NIPP-1 (Jagiello *et al.*, 1995; Van Eynde *et al.*, 1995). PP-1 regulatory subunits have also been identified in yeast (reviewed in Stark, 1996).

In all, it is likely that over 100 intracellular proteins regulate PP-1c. This large number suggests the likelihood of overlapping or identical binding sites, and supporting evidence was first provided by the mutually exclusive binding of the tumour-inducing natural toxins okadaic acid and the microcystins, and the cytosolic protein inhibitors I-1 and I-2 (MacKintosh *et al.*, 1990). To date, at least a dozen PP-1c binding subunits have been shown to bind in a mutually exclusive manner. Yet initial comparison of subunit amino acid sequences showed little overall similarity. The N-terminal sequence **KIQF**, conserved in protein inhibitor I-1 and its homologue DARPP-32, was proven necessary along with a phosphorylated threonine residue for inhibition of PP-1. Disruption of the sequence, especially by loss of the Ile residue, disrupts PP-1c binding by both dephosphorylated and phosphorylated forms of the inhibitors and PP-1c inhibition by the phosphorylated forms (Desdouits *et al.*, 1995; Endo *et al.*, 1996). Since the conserved sequence is located at a distance from the phosphorylated threonine presumed to interact with the PP-1c catalytic site, it has been proposed that I-1 and DARPP-32 bind to PP-1 through two low affinity binding sites:

a putative "docking" site containing the KIQF sequence, and another site containing the phosphorylated threonine residue. A comparison of glycogen binding  $G_M$  and  $G_L$  amino acid sequences identified three short highly conserved regions, including  $G_M$ [63-86] (Doherty *et al.*, 1995). Peptides incorporating the latter sequence were shown to bind to PP-1c, disrupt its interaction with myofibrillar binding subunit  $M_{110}$ , and prevent  $M_{110}$  enhancement of PP-1c activity against the 20kDa myosin light chain subunit of smooth muscle myosin (Johnson *et al.*, 1996). Deletion analysis localized the PP-1c binding site of  $M_{110}$  to the N-terminal region (residues 1-38). These results imply mutually exclusive binding of  $G_M$  and  $M_{110}$  to PP-1c and recognition of the same binding site.

Recent co-crystallization of PP-1c with  $G_M$ [63-75] has identified structural details of  $G_M$  subunit binding (Egloff *et al.*, 1997). The  $G_M$  binding site is located opposite a shallow catalytic site channel formed at the interface of 3  $\beta$ -sheets at the top of a  $\beta$ -sandwich. Residues [64-69] of the  $G_M$  peptide, RRVSF<sub>A</sub>, bind in an extended conformation to a hydrophobic channel formed at the bottom of the  $\beta$ -sandwich in the C-terminal region of PP-1c. Interactions with the peptide consist of predominantly hydrophobic contacts with Val66 and Phe68, and Ala substitutions in the peptide disrupt binding; additional interactions may occur between basic residues at the N-terminal of the peptide and a negatively-charged region of seven acidic residues surrounding the hydrophobic channel, since the acidic residues are highly conserved amongst all isoforms of PP-1 in a diverse range of species including yeast, *Drosophila*, higher plants, and mammals (Barton *et al.*, 1994). Identification of the RRVSF<sub>A</sub> binding sequence in  $G_M$  prompted re-examination of the amino acid sequences of other PP-1 regulatory subunits, despite the small degree of overall sequence similarity. Alignment of the two ankyrin repeats in p53BP2 with the second and third ankyrin repeats of  $M_{110}$  revealed the conserved sequence (R/K)VKF (similar to the RRVSF<sub>A</sub>

binding sequence found in  $G_M$ ) preceding the ankyrin repeats, and p53BP2[780-810] containing this sequence was shown to disrupt the interaction of both  $M_{110}$  and  $G_L$  with PP-1c. The N-terminal sequence KIQF of I-1 and DARPP-32 required for inhibition of PP-1 is also similar to the  $G_M$  binding sequence. In fact, the (R/K)(V/I)XF motif has been found in almost all known mammalian PP-1 binding proteins; in addition, a number of PP-1 binding proteins in *S. cerevisiae* contain a similar (V/I)XF sequence in which X represents a basic amino acid as found in  $M_{110}$  and p53BP2 (**Figure 30**). This suggests that yeast proteins interacting with PP-1 probably bind to a similar hydrophobic channel .

The identification of a PP-1 binding motif reflects a growing recognition of the importance of short (4 to 6 residue) peptide sequences in governing protein-protein interactions and targeting proteins to particular subcellular environments. Examples of these sequences include the E(S/T)XV motif mediating interactions with the PDZ domain (Doyle *et al.*, 1996), the pYXXM motifs mediating interactions with SH2 domains (Zhou *et al.*, 1995), nuclear import and export sequences (Dingwall and Laskey, 1991), and the KDEL motif for targeting proteins to the lumen of the endoplasmic reticulum (Pelham, 1992). Protein sequence database searching reveals that the (R/K)(V/I)XF motif is found in 10% of proteins (Egloff *et al.*, 1997), but only 1% of these may be PP-1 binding proteins since it is estimated that around 100 PP-1 binding proteins exist in mammalian cells. While some of the motifs may be located in extracellular proteins or buried in hydrophobic cores and inaccessible for interaction on the surface, there may also be significant restrictions on the motif such as which residues can be tolerated at position X; in addition, the presence of the motif may not be sufficient in itself for binding, as demonstrated by the use of two low affinity binding sites on I-1 and DARPP-32 and evidence for the existence of a second PP-1 binding site on  $G_M$  and  $M_{110}$  (Johnson *et al.*, 1996). Structure-function studies can

determine these restrictions and the optimal binding motif for comparison with motifs from suspected PP-1c regulatory proteins; the results may also prove useful in designing antagonists which, by displacing the normal targeting subunit complexed with PP-1c from a given target, may aid in the identification of intracellular targets and physiological substrates of PP-1.

**Figure 30** Sequence alignment of PP-1 binding proteins in the vicinity of the (R/K)(V/I)XF motif

(Egloff *et al.*, 1997)

| Mammalian                       | (R/K)(V/I)XF motif |         |       |  | Residues  |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|---------|-------|--|-----------|
| G <sub>M</sub> subunit          | S G G R            | R V S F | A D N |  | 61 - 71   |
| G <sub>L</sub> subunit          | K V K K            | R V S F | A D N |  | 57 - 67   |
| G <sub>L</sub> -related protein | Q A K K            | R V V F | A D S |  | 80 - 90   |
| M <sub>110</sub> subunit        | R Q K T            | K V K F | D D G |  | 31 - 41   |
| p53BP2                          | A H G M            | R V K F | D D G |  | 794 - 804 |
| I-1                             | N S P R            | K I Q F | T V P |  | 5 - 15    |
| DARPP-32                        | K D R K            | K I Q F | S V P |  | 4 - 14    |
| NIPP-1                          | R K N S            | R V T F | S E D |  | 196 - 206 |
| Splicing factor PSF             | G R Q L            | R V R F | A T H |  | 12 - 22   |

| <i>S. cerevisiae</i> | Putative PP-1 binding motif |             |     |  | Residues  |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|-----|--|-----------|
| GAC1                 | S P E                       | K N V R F A | I E |  | 66 - 76   |
| PIG2                 | S S G                       | K S V R F A | A H |  | 50 - 60   |
| GIP2                 | I R S                       | K S V H F D | Q A |  | 217 - 227 |
| YIL045W              | Q R S                       | K S V H F D | R V |  | 193 - 203 |
|                      | V F V                       | K N I Y F S | N A |  | 412 - 422 |
| REG1                 | T K N                       | R H I H F N | D R |  | 461 - 471 |
| REG2                 | P R E                       | R H I K F N | D N |  | 164 - 174 |
| SCD5                 | F K S                       | K K V R F S | E H |  | 270 - 280 |
| GIP1                 | W N L                       | K F I P F N | N L |  | 180 - 190 |
|                      | K K K                       | R C V N F R | N K |  | 441 - 451 |

#### 4.4 Analogue Design and Synthesis

Preliminary work by Dr. Charles Holmes (University of Alberta), instigator of the PP-1c binding motif structure-function study, has focussed on protein inhibitor I-1 and deletion analogues of the fully active I-1[9-54] fragment (**Figure 31**). The importance of the second position in the motif is reflected in the reduced inhibitory activity against PP-1c of N-terminal deletion analogues: while loss of the first residue (Lys) brought about a relatively modest 5-fold decrease in activity, the combined loss of the first and second residues (Lys and Ile) caused a 1000-fold decline. Comparison of the activities of a limited number of second position substitution analogues suggests poor tolerance for residue variation at this position: although substitution for Ile of a similar hydrophobe, Leu, resulted in only a 2.5-fold decrease in activity, substitution of a larger hydrophobe such as Phe brought about a 100-fold drop, and the presence of non-hydrophobic residues (such as Gly, Lys, or Glu) in this position produced even more drastic reductions in activity. The I-1 and DARPP-32 version of the binding motif is of special interest since it is considered to act as a low affinity "docking" site for PP-1 binding, lacking any regulatory function which would impose restrictions on the motif beyond binding requirements. Instead, a second low-affinity site containing a phosphorylated Thr residue is presumed to interact with the catalytic site of PP-1c and to serve a regulatory role (since the inhibitor must be phosphorylated by PKA at the Thr35 residue in order to inhibit PP-1c); binding at both sites is required for high affinity interaction and inhibition of the phosphatase by the inhibitor. This is in contrast to the version of the binding motif found in  $G_M$  (RVSF), which appears to combine both binding and regulatory functions at the same site (since PKA phosphorylation of Ser67 in the third position of the motif prevents the interaction of  $G_M$  and PP-1c, presumably by direct competition for the binding motif). The same mechanism may also be employed by NIPP-1, which ceases to inhibit PP-1c once phosphorylated by

PKA and/or casein kinase 2; NIPP-1 has one consensus PKA phosphorylation site immediately N-terminal to the motif and two casein kinase 2 consensus phosphorylation sites, one within the motif and the other immediately C-terminal to the fourth position Phe residue (Van Eynde *et al.*, 1995).

Initially, an 8-residue peptide length was chosen for the analogue series, incorporating residues on either side of the binding sequence. Since I-1 and DARPP-32 differ by three residues within the chosen 8-residue sequence, both I-1[7-14] and DARPP-32[6-13] alternatives were synthesized as N-acetylated peptide amides for consideration as the analogue template (sequences and RP-HPLC chromatograms provided in **Figure 32**); mass spectroscopy provided excellent agreement between calculated and experimental masses (1029.3 vs 1029.9 amu for I-1[7-14], and 1046.3 vs 1047.0 amu for DARPP-32[6-13]). Little difference between the two peptides was observed in terms of synthesis performance (yield and purity), solubility (a major limitation in the competitive assay), or PP-1c inhibitory activity, despite the presence of a second Lys residue expected to improve DARPP-32[6-13] solubility; consequently, selection of the I-1 template was based on maintaining consistency with the previous work. In an attempt to increase poor solubility, template length was increased to incorporate polar and ionizable residues Ser6 and Glu18 in a 13-residue peptide and His20 in a 15-residue peptide (sequences and RP-HPLC chromatograms provided in **Figure 33**); mass spectroscopy provided excellent agreement between calculated and experimental masses (1029.3 vs 1029.9 amu for I-1[7-14], 1568.9 vs 1569.0 amu for I-1[6-18], and 1803.1 vs 1803.4 amu for DARPP-32[6-13]). Although the 13-residue peptide exhibited only a limited improvement in solubility (along with a small increase in synthesis purity), the longer template was chosen to allow comparison with the 13-residue G<sub>M</sub> peptide co-crystallized with PP-1c by Egloff *et al.*, 1997 .

I-1[6-18] analogues of the binding motif were generated by single substitutions of all 20 naturally-occurring amino acids in positions 1 through 4 of the motif, denoted by position and substitution (i.e. 1A refers to the Ala-substituted position 1 analogue, AIQF). The N $\alpha$ -acetylated peptide amides were synthesized simultaneously on the 100-reactor model of the multiple peptide synthesizer at 0.02 mmol scale, following the standard protocol for the synthesizer: synthesis on continuous flow NovaSyn PR resin; deprotection by 20% piperidine in DMF; Fmoc-amino acid sidechain protecting groups of OtBu (Asp, Glu), tBu (Ser, Thr, Tyr), Boc (Lys), Trt (Cys, His), and Pmc (Arg); *in situ* activation of Fmoc-amino acids to generate OBt esters from HBTU; N-terminal acetylation using excess acetic anhydride; cleavage by modified Reagent K; and cold ether precipitation of peptides. A 10-fold excess reagent concentration was used with a 60 minute coupling time for incorporating the most difficult residues and ensuring a sufficient level of purity to allow preliminary screening in the competition assay without peptide purification. The crude analogues were analyzed by RP-HPLC, mass spectroscopy, and amino acid analysis, and the results are summarized in **Table 10**. Both purity and yield were lower than expected (averaging 70% and 60%, respectively) given the excellent test synthesis of the template, although analogue chromatograms presented in **Figure 34** reveal a single major peak in virtually every case, corresponding to the expected peptide mass. The Cys and Asn analogues at each of the four positions of the motif proved difficult to synthesize, the former containing both oxidized and reduced forms (as expected) and the latter contaminated by the Asn-deletion peptide in all but the 1-position. The Gln-deletion peptide constituted the major (and consistent) impurity in this set of syntheses, especially in the case of the Cys analogues as well as the Leu and Asn analogues in the 1 position. Other contaminants included the occasional incomplete sidechain deprotection peptide (Pmc and tBu groups remaining) and a very minor but consistent non-acetylated product and a number of



Lys-deletion peptides in the three-position analogues. The degree of purity achieved in the synthesis appeared to be affected by the position of substitution, as shown in **Figure 35**: the majority of position 2 and position 3 analogues were synthesized in the 70-89% range, position 1 analogues were obtained mainly in the 70-79% purity range, and position 4 analogues were the most difficult to synthesize, reflecting purities mainly in the 60-69% range. The crude peptides were deemed sufficiently pure for preliminary screening by competition assay, reducing the future task of purification to the most promising candidates identified by this on-going screening.

**Figure 31 Inhibitory activity of I-1 peptide sequences against PP-1**

(Personal communication, Dr. Charles Holmes, University of Alberta)

| I-1 peptide sequence |                           |                     |    |  | Relative activity (%) |
|----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|----|--|-----------------------|
| 9                    | 35                        | 41                  | 54 |  |                       |
| KIQF                 | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 100                   |
| KIQF                 | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 24                    |
| IQF                  | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 5                     |
| QF                   | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.006                 |
| F                    | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.004                 |
|                      | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.003                 |
|                      | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 9.0                   |
| KLQF                 | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 3.0                   |
| KCQF                 | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 1.4                   |
| KACQF                | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.400                 |
| KTCQF                | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.250                 |
| KFCQF                | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.050                 |
| KGCQF                | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.030                 |
| KKCQF                | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  | 0.015                 |
| KEQF                 | TVP LLEPHLDPEAAEQIRRRRPT* | PATLVLTSDQSSPEVDEDR |    |  |                       |

\* refers to phosphorylated residue. Variation in PP-1c binding sequence shown in box.  
 Activity determined for N-acetylated, C-amidated peptides using <sup>32</sup>P-phosphorylase  $\alpha$  phosphatase radioassay  
 (Cohen *et al.* , 1988; Holmes, 1991).

**Figure 32 I-1 and DARPP-32 potential analogue templates**

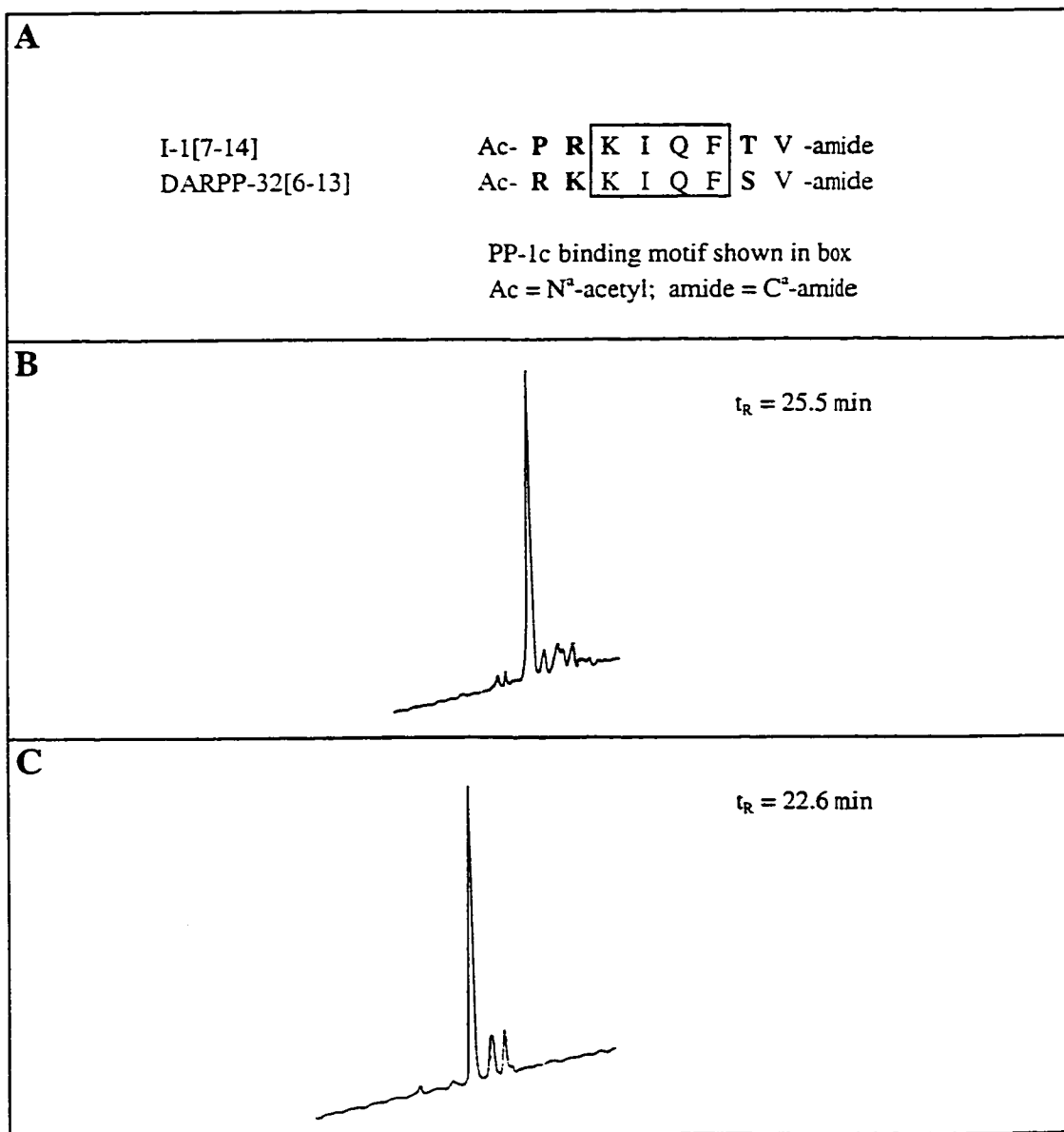
Panel A: Sequences of motif-containing synthetic octapeptides I-1[7-14] and DARPP-32[6-13]

Panel B: Analytical RP-HPLC of I-1[7-14]

Panel C: Analytical RP-HPLC of DARPP-32[6-13]

Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min,  
Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile



# Figure 33 I-1 analogue template length

Panel A: Sequences of 8-, 13-, and 15-residue I-1 potential analogue templates

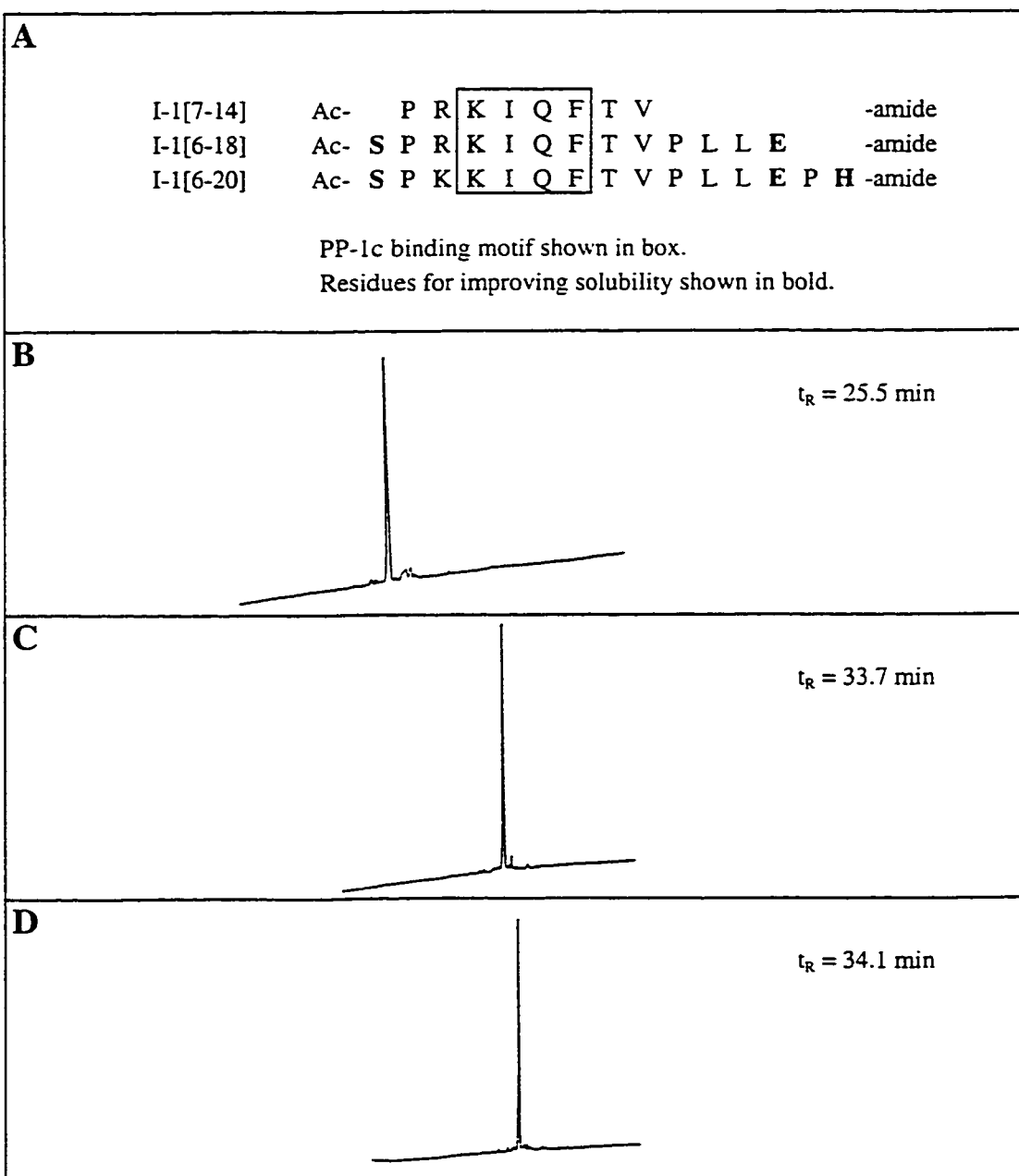
Panel B: Analytical RP-HPLC of I-1[7-14]

Panel C: Analytical RP-HPLC of I-1[6-18]

Panel D: Analytical RP-HPLC of I-1[6-20]

Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min,  
Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile



**Table 10 KIQF Analogue Analytical Data**

| Analogue  | Sequence    | HPLC                 |            | Mass (amu) |              | Contaminants   | Yield<br>(% theoretical) |
|-----------|-------------|----------------------|------------|------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------------|
|           |             | t <sub>R</sub> (min) | Purity (%) | Calculated | Experimental |                |                          |
| 1A        | AIQF        | 35.6                 | 72         | 1511.8     | 1512.0       | Q, F deletions | 67                       |
| 1C        | CIQF        | 36.3                 | 45         | 1543.9     | 1543.7       | Q deletion     | 35                       |
| 1D        | DIQF        | 35.1                 | 73         | 1555.8     | 1555.6       | Q deletion     | 67                       |
| 1E        | EIQF        | 35.4                 | 71         | 1569.8     | 1569.8       | Q deletion     | 65                       |
| 1F        | FIQF        | 39.0                 | 66         | 1587.9     | 1587.6       | Q deletion     | 50                       |
| 1G        | GIQF        | 35.2                 | 73         | 1497.8     | 1497.8       | F deletion     | 66                       |
| 1H        | HIQF        | 33.8                 | 83         | 1577.8     | 1578.0       | Q deletion     | 74                       |
| 1I        | IIQF        | 38.3                 | 73         | 1553.9     | 1554.2       | Q deletion     | 71                       |
| <b>1K</b> | <b>KIQF</b> | 33.7                 | 82         | 1568.9     | 1568.8       | Q deletion     | 79                       |
| 1L        | LIQF        | 38.9                 | 38         | 1553.9     | 1554.2       | Q deletion     | 37                       |
| 1M        | MIQF        | 37.7                 | 68         | 1571.9     | 1572.0       | Q deletion     | 55                       |
| 1N        | NIQF        | 34.5                 | 25         | 1554.8     | 1554.4       | Q deletion     | 17                       |
| 1P        | PIQF        | 35.4                 | 71         | 1537.8     | 1538.0       | Q deletion     | 61                       |
| 1Q        | QIQF        | 34.7                 | 70         | 1568.8     | 1568.4       | Q deletion     | 58                       |
| 1R        | RIQF        | 34.0                 | 78         | 1596.9     | 1596.4       | Q deletion     | 68                       |
| 1S        | SIQF        | 34.9                 | 74         | 1527.8     | 1527.6       | Q deletion     | 65                       |
| 1T        | TIQF        | 35.3                 | 65         | 1541.8     | 1541.6       | Q deletion     | 62                       |
| 1V        | VIQF        | 37.0                 | 51         | 1539.8     | 1540.0       | Q deletion     | 43                       |
| 1W        | WIQF        | 40.0                 | 69         | 1626.9     | 1627.0       | Q deletion     | 56                       |
| 1Y        | YIQF        | 36.8                 | 55         | 1603.9     | 1603.6       | Q deletion     | 37                       |

**Table 10 KIQF Analogue Analytical Data (cont'd)**

| Analogue | Sequence | HPLC                 |            | Mass (amu) |              | Contaminants                     | Yield<br>(% theoretical) |
|----------|----------|----------------------|------------|------------|--------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
|          |          | t <sub>R</sub> (min) | Purity (%) | Calculated | Experimental |                                  |                          |
| 2A       | KAQF     | 31.3                 | 89         | 1526.8     | 1527.0       |                                  | 76                       |
| 2C       | KCQF     | 31.8                 | 30         | 1558.9     | 1559.0       | Q deletion                       | 19                       |
| 2D       | KDQF     | 31.3                 | 79         | 1570.8     | 1570.5       | Q deletion                       | 69                       |
| 2E       | KEQF     | 31.2                 | 89         | 1584.8     | 1585.0       | Q deletion                       | 85                       |
| 2F       | KFQF     | 35.0                 | 84         | 1602.9     | 1602.8       | Q deletion                       | 73                       |
| 2G       | KGQF     | 31.0                 | 79         | 1512.8     | 1512.8       | Q deletion                       | 65                       |
| 2H       | KHQF     | 30.4                 | 93         | 1592.9     | 1592.7       | Q, H deletions                   | 81                       |
| 2K       | KKQF     | 29.8                 | 90         | 1583.9     | 1583.2       | Q deletion                       | 88                       |
| 2L       | KLQF     | 34.2                 | 74         | 1568.9     | 1568.8       | Q deletion                       | 72                       |
| 2M       | KMQF     | 33.4                 | 73         | 1586.9     | 1586.9       | Q deletion                       | 60                       |
| 2N       | KNQF     | 32.4                 | 21         | 1569.8     | 1569.8       | Q, N deletions                   | 20                       |
| 2P       | KPQF     | 31.8                 | 87         | 1552.8     | 1553.0       | Q deletion                       | 77                       |
| 2Q       | KQQF     | 30.7                 | 84         | 1583.9     | 1583.9       | Q deletion                       | 76                       |
| 2R       | KRQF     | 30.0                 | 92         | 1611.9     | 1612.2       | Q deletion                       | 87                       |
| 2S       | KSQF     | 30.9                 | 76         | 1542.8     | 1543.0       | Q deletion                       | 71                       |
| 2T       | KTQF     | 31.2                 | 76         | 1556.8     | 1557.1       | Q deletion                       | 74                       |
| 2V       | KVQF     | 32.7                 | 75         | 1554.9     | 1555.2       | Q deletion                       | 61                       |
| 2W       | KWQF     | 35.6                 | 58         | 1641.9     | 1642.0       | Q deletion                       | 53                       |
| 2Y       | KYQF     | 33.0                 | 72         | 1618.9     | 1618.8       | Retained Pmc group<br>Q deletion | 61                       |

**Table 10 KIQF Analogue Analytical Data (cont'd)**

| Analogue | Sequence | HPLC                 |            | Mass (amu) |              | Contaminants         | Yield<br>(% theoretical) |
|----------|----------|----------------------|------------|------------|--------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
|          |          | t <sub>R</sub> (min) | Purity (%) | Calculated | Experimental |                      |                          |
| 3A       | KIAF     | 34.4                 | 80         | 1511.8     | 1511.5       | No N-acetyl          | 65                       |
| 3C       | KICF     | 35.1                 | 40         | 1543.9     | 1543.7       | No N-acetyl          | 32                       |
| 3D       | KIDF     | 34.0                 | 78         | 1555.8     | 1556.1       | No N-acetyl          | 68                       |
| 3E       | KIEF     | 34.4                 | 82         | 1569.9     | 1569.8       | No N-acetyl          | 68                       |
| 3F       | KIFF     | 37.4                 | 87         | 1587.9     | 1587.8       | No N-acetyl          | 60                       |
| 3G       | KIGF     | 33.8                 | 86         | 1497.8     | 1498.0       | No N-acetyl          | 69                       |
| 3H       | KIHF     | 33.1                 | 74         | 1577.9     | 1578.1       | No N-acetyl          | 60                       |
|          |          |                      |            |            |              | H+K deletion         |                          |
| 3I       | KIIF     | 36.3                 | 87         | 1553.9     | 1554.2       | No N-acetyl          | 76                       |
| 3K       | KIKF     | 32.7                 | 84         | 1568.9     | 1569.1       | N-acetyl, K deletion | 75                       |
| 3L       | KILF     | 36.9                 | 77         | 1553.9     | 1554.2       | No N-acetyl          | 71                       |
| 3M       | KIMF     | 36.0                 | 87         | 1571.9     | 1572.0       | No N-acetyl          | 62                       |
| 3N       | KINF     | 33.7                 | 21         | 1554.9     | 1555.2       | N-acetyl, N deletion | 18                       |
| 3P       | KIPF     | 34.7                 | 82         | 1537.9     | 1538.1       | K deletion           | 72                       |
| 3R       | KIRF     | 33.2                 | 84         | 1596.9     | 1596.9       | N-acetyl, K deletion | 69                       |
| 3S       | KISF     | 34.0                 | 78         | 1527.8     | 1527.6       | No N-acetyl          | 70                       |
| 3T       | KITF     | 34.2                 | 83         | 1541.9     | 1542.0       | No N-acetyl          | 70                       |
| 3V       | KIVF     | 35.3                 | 81         | 1539.9     | 1539.8       | N-acetyl, K deletion | 74                       |
| 3W       | KIWF     | 38.1                 | 73         | 1627.0     | 1627.1       | N-acetyl, K deletion | 55                       |
| 3Y       | KIYF     | 35.4                 | 89         | 1603.9     | 1603.4       | No N-acetyl          | 67                       |

**Table 10 KIQF Analogue Analytical Data (cont'd)**

| Analogue | Sequence | HPLC                 |            | Mass (amu) |              | Contaminants                     | Yield<br>(% theoretical) |
|----------|----------|----------------------|------------|------------|--------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
|          |          | t <sub>R</sub> (min) | Purity (%) | Calculated | Experimental |                                  |                          |
| 4A       | KIQA     | 28.8                 | 70         | 1492.8     | 1492.7       | Q deletion                       | 62                       |
| 4C       | KIQC     | 29.0                 | 27         | 1524.8     | 1524.9       | Q deletion                       | 21                       |
| 4D       | KIQD     | 28.8                 | 68         | 1536.8     | 1537.1       | Q deletion                       | 66                       |
| 4E       | KIQE     | 28.8                 | 80         | 1550.8     | 1550.8       | Q deletion                       | 71                       |
| 4G       | KIQG     | 27.7                 | 61         | 1478.8     | 1479.1       | Q deletion                       | 54                       |
| 4H       | KIQH     | 26.4                 | 84         | 1558.8     | 1558.8       | Q deletion                       | 56                       |
| 4I       | KIQI     | 32.6                 | 75         | 1534.9     | 1535.2       | Retained tBu group<br>Q deletion | 66                       |
| 4K       | KIQK     | 26.1                 | 64         | 1549.9     | 1550.0       | Q deletion                       | 57                       |
| 4L       | KIQL     | 32.6                 | 68         | 1534.9     | 1535.2       | Retained tBu group<br>Q deletion | 55                       |
| 4M       | KIQM     | 31.5                 | 64         | 1552.9     | 1552.7       | Q deletion                       | 59                       |
| 4N       | KIQN     | 29.7                 | 20         | 1535.8     | 1535.7       | N, Q+E deletions                 | 17                       |
| 4P       | KIQP     | 28.5                 | 64         | 1518.8     | 1519.1       | Q deletion                       | 63                       |
| 4Q       | KIQQ     | 28.0                 | 67         | 1549.8     | 1550.0       | Q deletion                       | 52                       |
| 4R       | KIQR     | 26.3                 | 68         | 1577.9     | 1577.8       | Q deletion                       | 63                       |
| 4S       | KIQS     | 27.8                 | 71         | 1508.8     | 1508.6       | Retained tBu group<br>Q deletion | 61                       |
| 4T       | KIQT     | 28.2                 | 62         | 1522.8     | 1523.0       | Q deletion                       | 52                       |
| 4V       | KIQV     | 31.0                 | 66         | 1520.8     | 1521.3       | Q deletion                       | 52                       |
| 4W       | KIQW     | 34.3                 | 69         | 1607.9     | 1608.1       | Q deletion                       | 51                       |
| 4Y       | KIQY     | 30.5                 | 75         | 1584.9     | 1585.2       | Q deletion                       | 61                       |

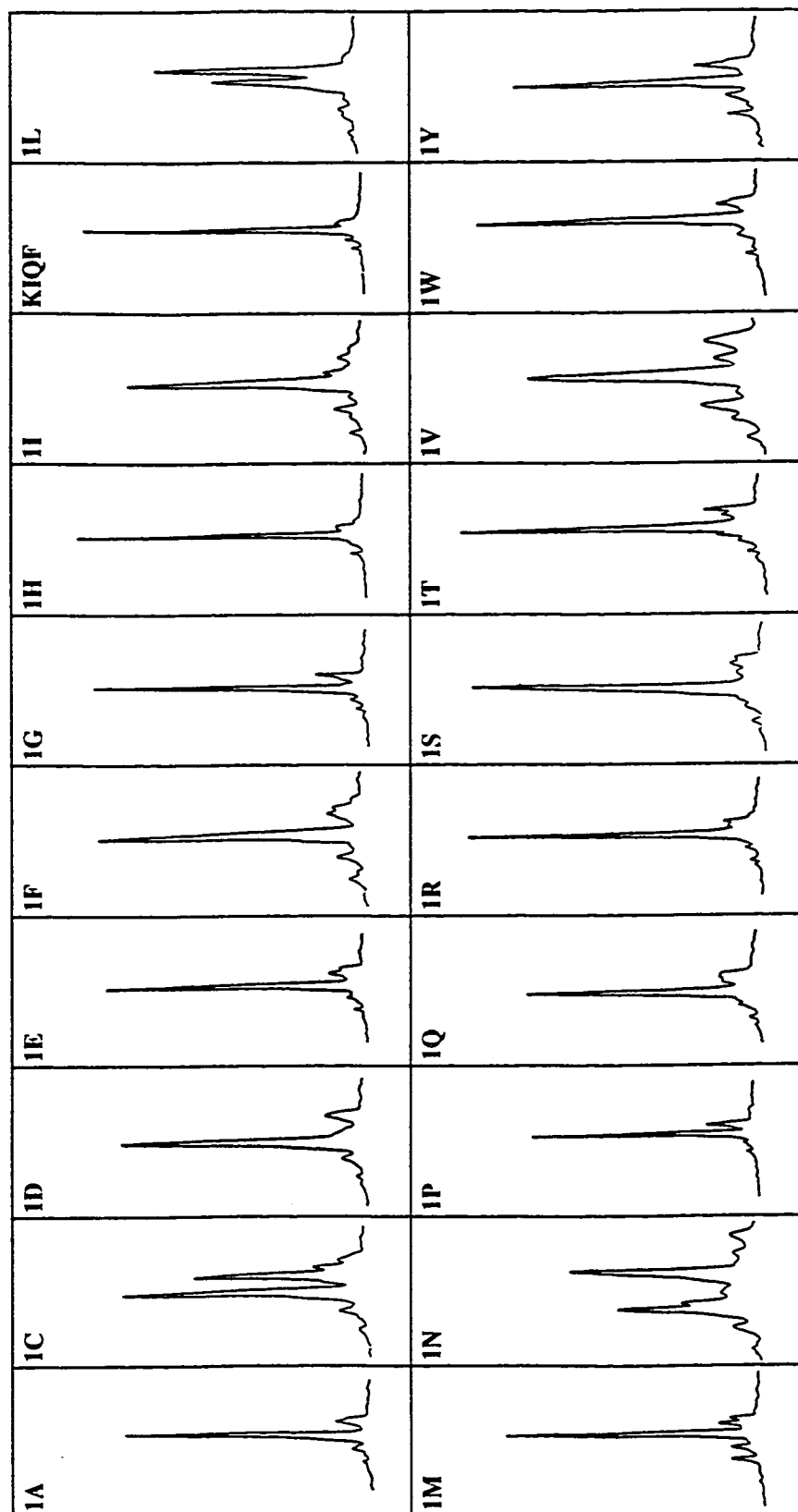


**Figure 34 RP-HPLC chromatograms of I-1[6-18] synthetic peptide analogues**

Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min,

Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

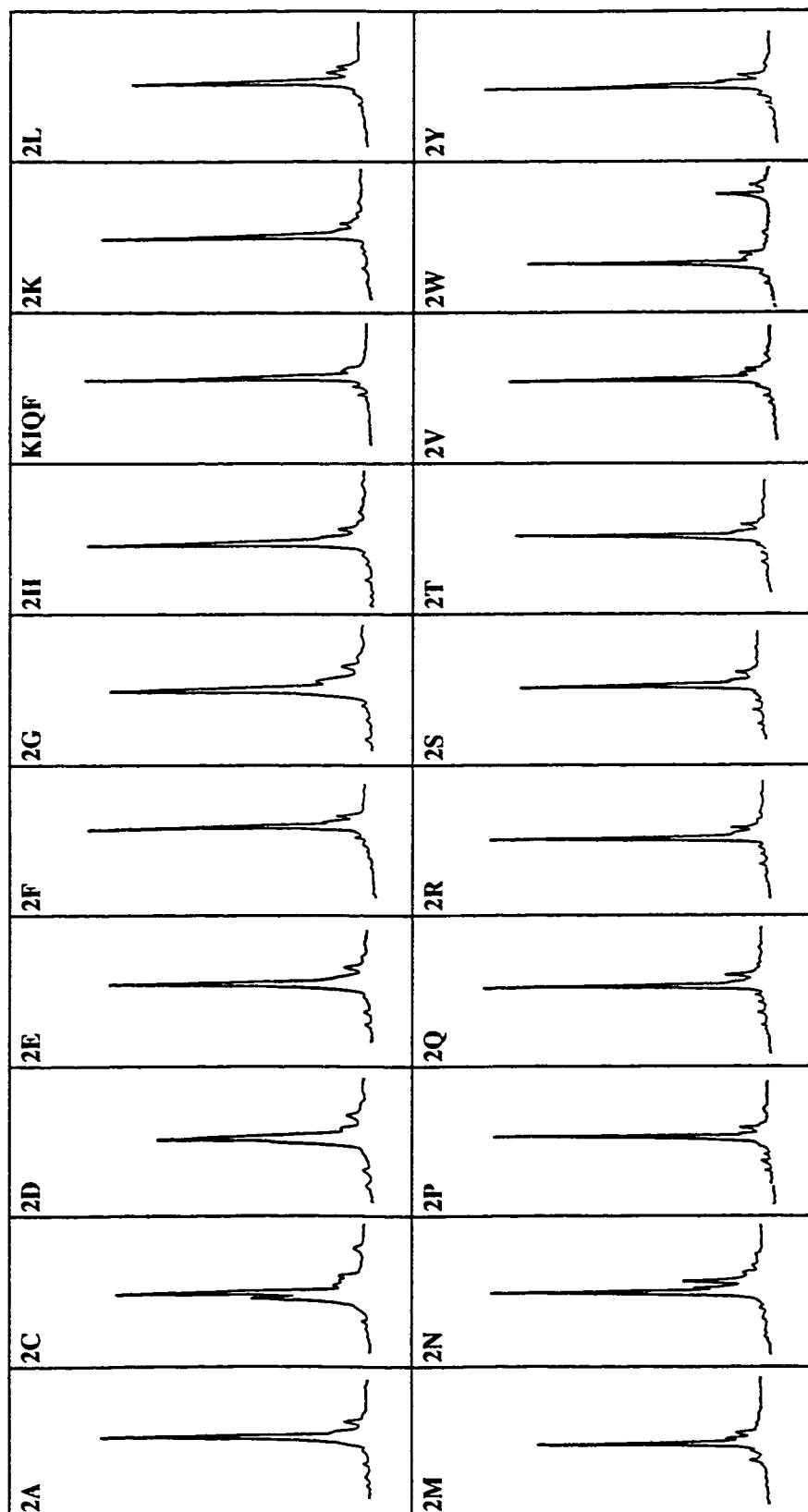


**Figure 34 RP-HPLC chromatograms of I-1[6-18] synthetic peptide analogues (cont'd)**

Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min,

Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

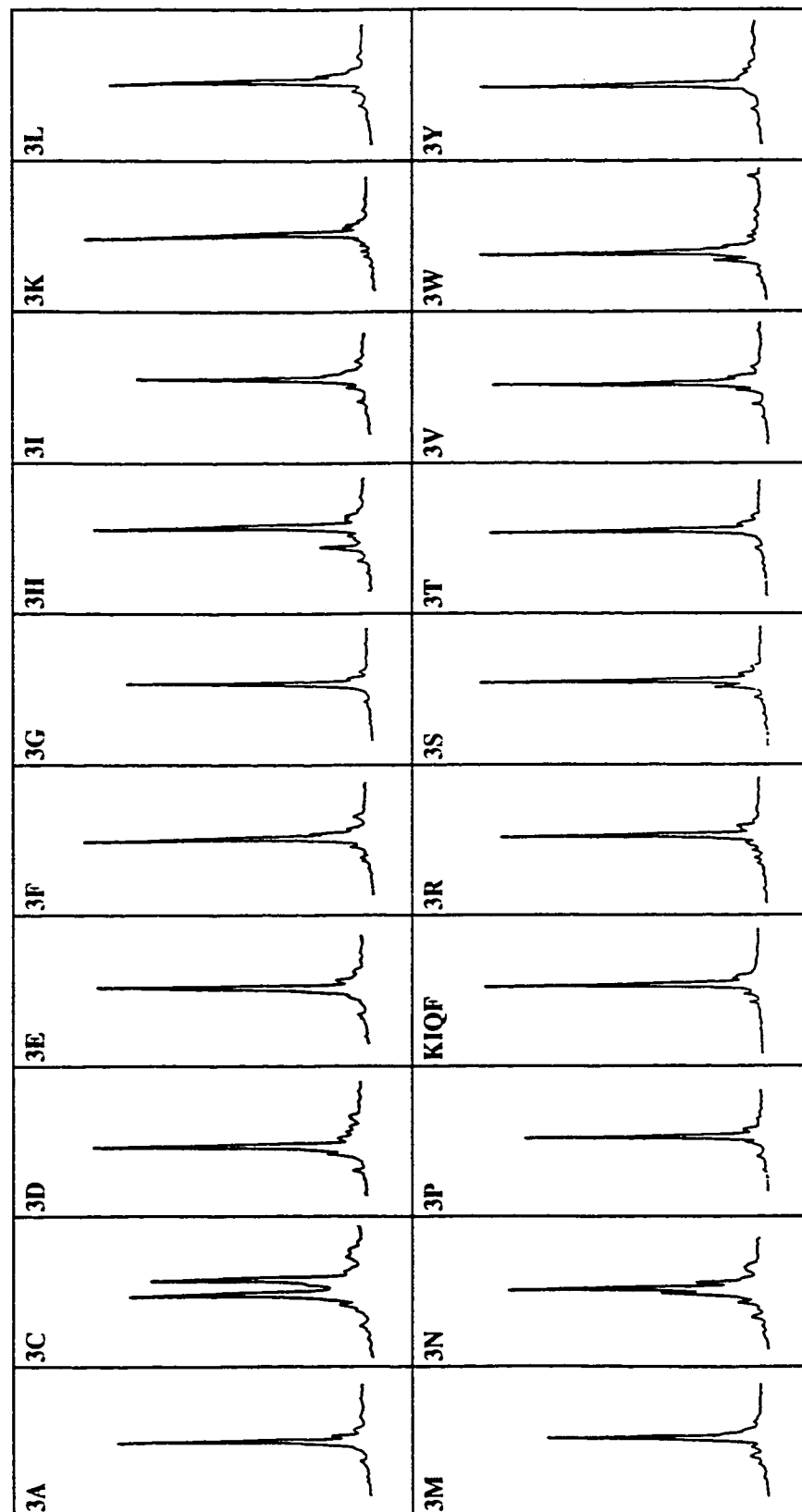


**Figure 34 - RP-HPLC chromatograms of I-1[6-18] synthetic peptide analogues (cont'd)**

Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min,

Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

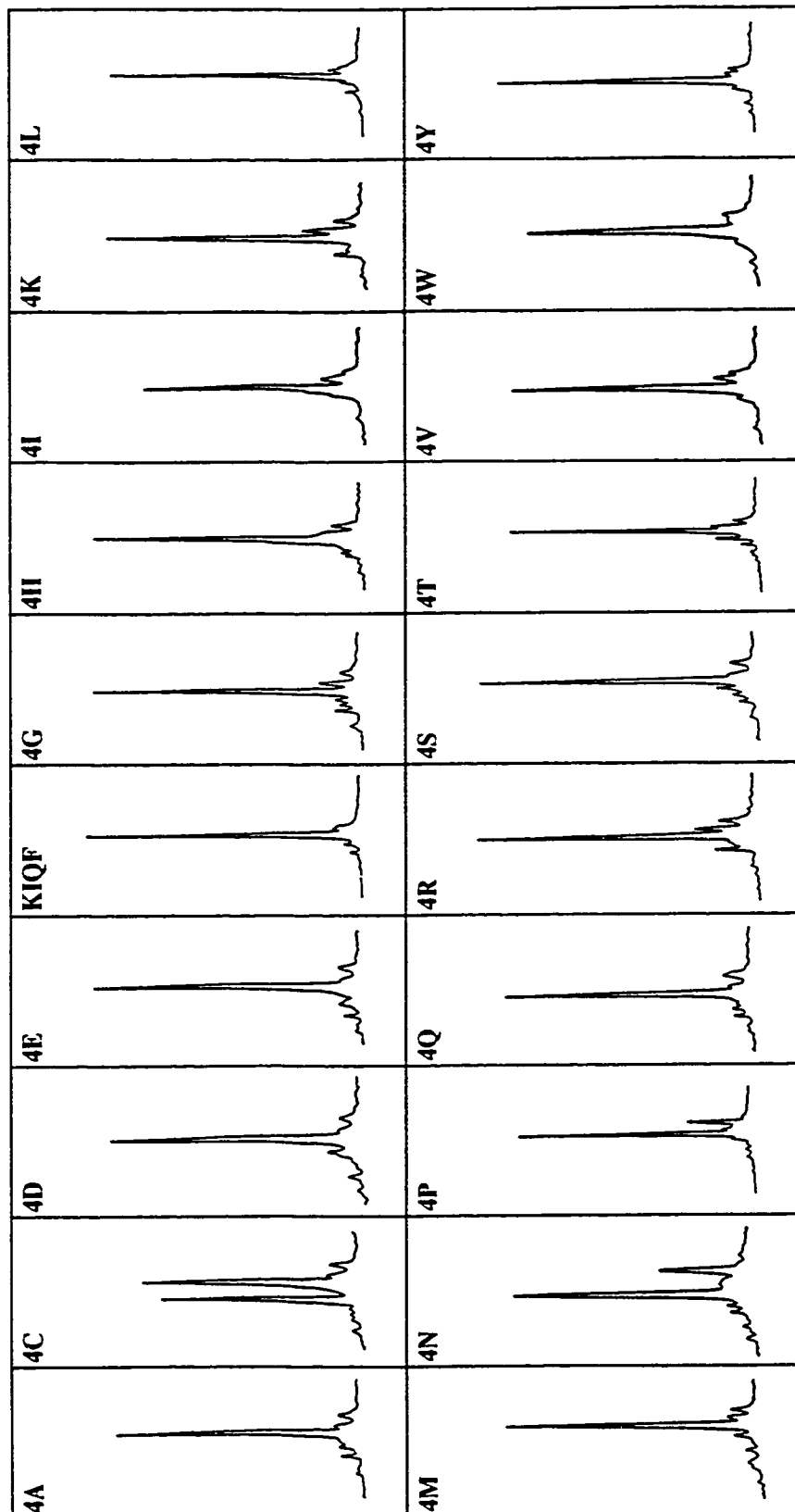


**Figure 34 - RP-HPLC chromatograms of I-1[6-18] synthetic peptide analogues (cont'd)**

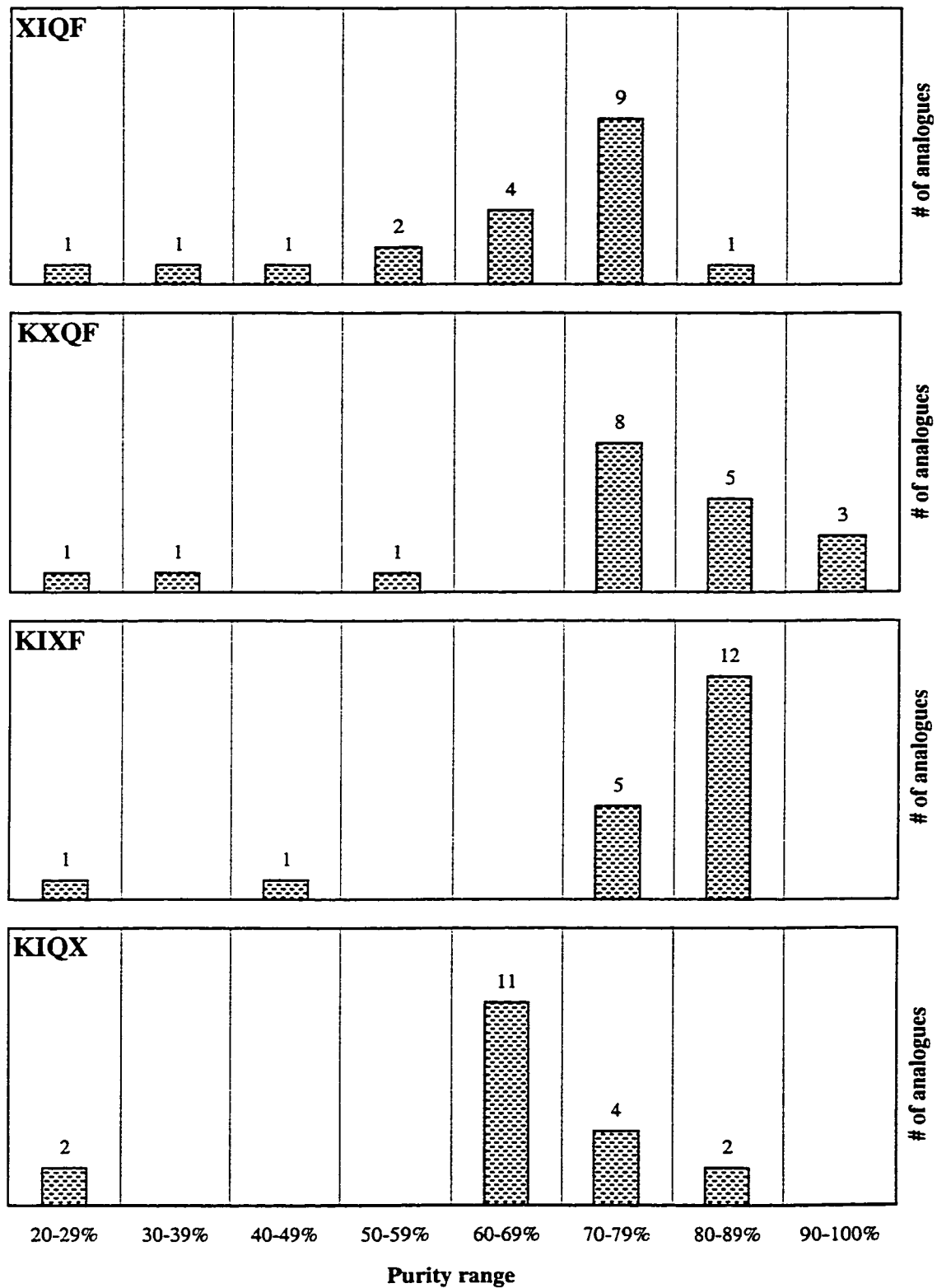
Column: Zorbax 300SB C8 (250 x 4.6 mm)

Conditions: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min),

Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile



**Figure 35      Quality of I-1[6-18] analogue synthesis**



### 5.1 Peptide Libraries and Their Uses

There is an ever increasing demand for novel compounds able to modulate a wide range of biological processes for applications in medicine and agriculture. Traditionally, these agents have been obtained by screening large collections of samples including natural products (isolated from microbiological fermentations, plant extracts, animal sources, or broths grown from soil samples) and synthetic intermediates. Peptides are attractive targets in this discovery process, despite poor transfer rates across the intestinal mucosa and cell membrane and rapid degradation and clearance, since they are key mediators of biochemical information and selectively bind and either activate or inhibit a large number of biological receptors. Screening for a desired bioactivity normally generates "leads" which are subjected to structure- or mechanism-based optimization. The "hand-crafted" development of new diagnostic or therapeutic peptides may require the synthesis and screening of hundreds or even thousands of analogues of an original active sequence; despite the development of high throughput, automated techniques to provide the necessary screening capability, the process of synthesis and testing is time-consuming (due to its essentially serial nature), costly, and has a poor success rate in commercial application: on average, only 1 in 10,000 candidates provides a marketable product.

An alternative to "rational design" has emerged with the application of combinatorial chemistry to generate an unprecedented degree of molecular diversity for selection of "ideal" entities, dramatically shortening the traditional process of discovery. **Combinatorial strategy** employs a set of chemical "building blocks" which are

systematically assembled in many combinations using biological or synthetic procedures to create a large population of different molecular entities known as a **library**. The building block approach has parallels in nature, with the creation of oligonucleotides, carbohydrates, and proteins through the combination of nucleosides, sugars, and amino acids. The potential range of structural diversity accessible through assembly of even a small set of building blocks is vast: if an equal number of building blocks  $b$  are used in each of  $x$  synthetic steps in the reaction scheme, then the number of different compounds  $N$  generated by an ideal combinatorial synthesis is given by  $N = b^x$ . The basic set of 20 naturally occurring amino acids allows the construction of, for example, a tetrameric library consisting of a theoretical  $20^4$  (i.e. 160,000) peptides, a pentameric library with  $20^5$  (i.e. 3.2 million) peptides, a hexameric library containing  $20^6$  (i.e. 64 million) peptides, and so on. Novel assay formats relying on the inherent selectivity of biological receptor systems to retrieve the most potent ligands towards a biomolecular target are required to evaluate these libraries rapidly and identify active peptides emerging from the selection process.

Peptide libraries can be generated by biological means using recombinant technology or by chemical synthesis. In recombinant libraries, combinatorial strategy is employed to generate random synthetic oligonucleotides which are inserted into biological systems for expression; the replicative ability of the biological system is employed to amplify the DNA of active peptides and permit identification by DNA sequencing. Biological methods differ in the format of peptide presentation and the nature of the peptide-DNA linkage. Peptides may be presented as fusion products with native proteins on the surface of bacteria, as in the case of maltose receptor LamB on the outer membrane of *E. coli* (Charbit *et al.*, 1986; Brown, 1992); on the surface of bacteriophage, as in the case of minor coat protein pIII and major coat protein pVIII on filamentous phages of *E. coli* (Smith, 1985); or on plasmids, as with DNA-binding

protein LacI which binds to the Lac operator on the encoding plasmid (Cull *et al.*, 1992); alternately, nascent peptides may be retrieved still linked to their encoding mRNA in polysomes using the cell-free coupled transcription/translation system of *E. coli*, and the RNA can be converted to cDNA for amplification by PCR (Mattheakis *et al.*, 1994). However, there are fundamental limitations to the biological approach: recombinant libraries are subject to inherent bias in the peptide distribution caused by the degenerate genetic code (amino acids are designated by as few as one to as many as six codons) and biological selection against certain sequences (due to structural constraints or processing inefficiency), while molecular diversity is limited to the incorporation of L-amino acids and recombinant library size is limited by the practical ability to transform DNA into the host cells or phages (unless a cell-free polysome system is employed). The format of peptide presentation may also pose problems: a peptide may be displayed in an incorrect conformation or offer reduced accessibility for screening when presented as a fusion product, the peptide may be altered significantly by exposure to different environments (cytosolic versus periplasmic compartment) with their characteristic proteolytic activities during transport to the surface, or may resist processing for transport to the surface.

Although the synthetic chemical approach to library synthesis lacks the replicative power of a biological system, it avoids inherent biological biases and dramatically expands molecular diversity by permitting the inclusion of D- and unnatural amino acids in the building block set. Combinatorial strategy is employed directly to generate random synthetic peptides by multiple peptide synthesis (MPS); multiple entities are generated simultaneously in each coupling step, resulting in an exponential increase in library size with each synthesis cycle. While mixtures of activated amino acids can be used during each coupling step to generate diversity, the resulting product distribution will be determined by the relative kinetics of the



competing reactions, and since activated derivatives of sterically hindered amino acids such as Val and Ile couple at significantly slower rates, appropriate relative amino acid concentrations in the coupling mixture are employed to achieve an approximately equimolar representation in normal coupling times. The preferred mechanism for generating diversity circumvents this problem by performing separate coupling reactions with single amino acids. Syntheses can be performed in parallel by segregating the solid support into discrete fractions, each dedicated to the synthesis of a single peptide; examples include immobilized peptide arrays generated by the multipin and light-directed spatially addressable MPS methods, and free peptides generated with individual resin packets by the tea-bag MPS method. There are practical limits to the size of library which can be achieved by this procedure and the amount of record-keeping required to track individual peptides, but there is no need for sequence determination of active peptides. The alternative **split synthesis** or **divide, couple and recombine** procedure (first described by Furka *et al.*, 1991) repetitively divides the solid support into a limited number of aliquots, each dedicated to the coupling of a single amino acid, then recombines and randomizes the support by mixing before advancing to the next round of coupling (as illustrated in **Figure 36** using three amino acids and three coupling steps); this procedure allows the construction of much larger libraries, but the randomization process generates mixtures of peptides and necessitates the sequence determination of active peptides.

Library synthesis methods differ in the format of peptide presentation: a library may consist of segregated pure components or mixed pools of peptides; peptides may be immobilized (i.e. tethered) to a solid support such as plastic pins (Geysen, 1986), resin beads (Lam *et al.*, 1991), or the surface of a glass slide (Fodor *et al.*, 1991), or may be released into solution and assayed as free peptides, i.e. a **soluble peptide combinatorial library** or **SPCL** (Houghten, 1991). The format of peptide

presentation ultimately determines the type of biological assay used for screening, the library size which can be practically screened, and the method for active peptide identification. Immobilized libraries were developed for immunological screening, taking advantage of the synthesis solid support to provide a ready-made immobilized component in the assay; this support can be further organized for ease of screening, as with the microtitre plate format used in the multipin method. However, immobilization requires a support suitable for both peptide synthesis and aqueous assays (i.e. characterized by low non-specific binding) and the support may interfere with screening by restricting peptide conformation (although new linkers have been designed to reduce this problem); furthermore, this presentation method has limited application outside immunology since many molecular interactions involve membrane-bound (i.e. immobilized) receptors which are unable to interact with a bound ligand. Cleavable linkers have been incorporated to allow the release of free peptides for use in solution-phase assays, but there are practical limits on the amounts of individual peptides which can be produced, especially in the case of spatially addressable libraries using the resolution provided by photolithography to permit miniaturization. Peptides synthesized on a beaded resin support using the split synthesis procedure to generate ideally **one-bead-one-sequence libraries** (reviewed in Lebl *et al.*, 1995) sacrifice the immediate identification provided by position in an array format, but individual beads carrying active peptides can be retrieved by a micromanipulator after incubation with dye- or fluorescently-labelled receptor and subjected to peptide sequencing for identification. Unfortunately, bead libraries require a positive response during screening to allow selection. **SPCLs** (reviewed in Pinilla *et al.*, 1995) provide two important advantages over immobilized libraries: versatility (since peptides can be assayed in solution, virtually any type of assay can be used) and scale (no intrinsic limitation is imposed by the format); however, the split synthesis procedure used to

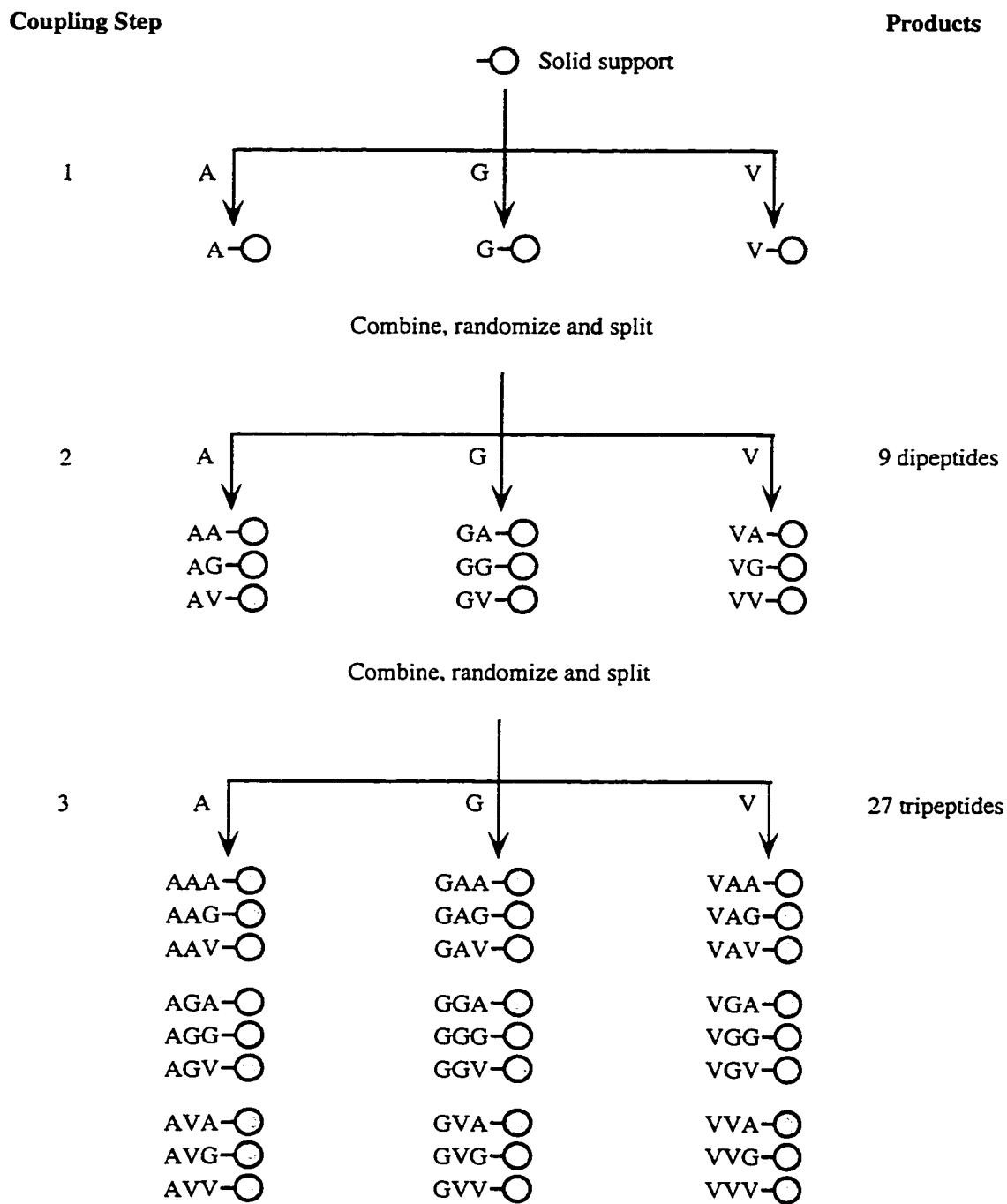
generate peptide diversity produces mixed pools of related structures, and a more complex iterative process (i.e. **recursive deconvolution**) is required to identify active peptides. A variety of SPCL formats have been developed by Houghten and coworkers, consisting of sets of sublibraries synthesized by the Tea bag method (**Figure 37**). In the **positional scanning** format, single positions (represented by the notation **O**) are defined throughout a sequence of fixed length and all remaining positions are composed of mixtures of amino acids (represented by **X**), so that the number of sublibraries is equal to the number of residues in the sequence; this type of SPCL provides information on the most active amino acid in each position, the replaceability of each position and its relative importance. In the **dual position** format, the first two positions are defined and the remaining positions are composed of mixtures of amino acids; once the library of mixtures is screened in an assay, an iterative process is used to define the remaining mixture positions sequentially, each stage of screening involving resynthesis and evaluation of 20 sublibraries containing a reduced number of peptide sequences. One advantage of the iterative process is the enrichment resulting from the declining peptide diversity at each stage.

Different library formats lend themselves to different applications. Array formats generated by parallel synthesis are particularly suited for analogue libraries designed on the basis of some structural knowledge of peptide ligands or their target receptors. Multipin synthesis is commonly employed for the preparation of analogue libraries for **epitope analysis**: continuous epitopes can be identified using the complete set of overlapping peptides derived from an antigen's sequence to determine epitope location and its boundaries, while a comprehensive set of epitope analogues can be used to identify residues critical for binding and intolerant of substitution (i.e. **replacement set analysis**), and retrieve sequences with higher affinities than the starting sequence. Analogue libraries are used in a similar fashion for structure-

function studies. In contrast, "random" libraries are designed for novel ligand discovery programs and employ screening strategies requiring no previous knowledge of active peptide structural requirements (for example, the search for **mimotopes** which are mimetics of discontinuous, conformation-dependent epitopes). The goal is to create the greatest molecular diversity in the library, but there are practical limits to the vast number of combinatorial possibilities which can be synthesized and so care must be exercised in the choice of template for randomizing; design parameters include the choice of peptide length (since diversity increases with length) and possible incorporation of fixed "scaffolds" of constraining residues to increase affinity (although this reduces conformational diversity). SPCL versatility may prove most useful, as soluble peptides produced in sufficient quantity may be screened in a wide variety of binding or functional assays.

**Figure 36 Schematic diagram of split synthesis procedure**

(adapted from Lam *et al.*, 1991)



**Figure 37 Common SPCL Formats**

| Library             | No. of peptide mixtures | Theoretical no. of individual peptides per mixture | Theoretical total no. of peptides |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Positional scanning |                         |  |                                   |
| $O_1$ X X X X X     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| X $O_2$ X X X X     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| X X $O_3$ X X X     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| X X X $O_4$ X X     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| X X X X $O_5$ X     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| X X X X X $O_6$     | 20                      | $3.2 \times 10^6$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^7$                 |
| Dual defined        |                         |  |                                   |
| $O_1$ $O_2$ X X X X | 400                     | $1.6 \times 10^5$                                  | $6.4 \times 10^6$                 |

**O** = position defined with a single amino acid; **X** = position composed of a mixture of amino acids.  
Amino acid set consists of all 20 natural amino acids.

## 5.2 Construction of a Representative Peptide Library

A novel approach to reducing library size while maintaining diversity involves replacing the 20 naturally occurring amino acids with 10 representative amino acids displaying the basic physico-chemical properties associated with the larger set of sidechains (**Table 11**). For example, Glu and Lys can be chosen to represent acidic and basic sidechains, respectively, Gln to represent uncharged amide derivatives, Phe to represent aromatic sidechains and Ser to represent hydroxyl aliphatic sidechains, while conformational aspects can be represented by Gly (whose sidechain has no steric hindrance), Pro (having restricted conformation as an imino acid), and Ile (possessing a  $\beta$ -branched sidechain). Potential synthesis problems such as difficult couplings or sidechain modifications of certain amino acids (such as Cys and Trp), which may affect adversely the composition of the library, can also be avoided by eliminating these residues. The reduction in library size is significant: as demonstrated in **Table 12**, the representative approach provides a 64-fold reduction in peptide numbers in a hexapeptide library, and an even greater advantage in relative population size is realized as peptide length increases. A **representative library** also confers a concentration advantage since the library contains fewer members for a given peptide length, permitting the use of lower affinity antibodies or receptors in the screening process.

To investigate the feasibility of this approach, a soluble peptide combinatorial library (SPCL) format was chosen to permit use of a wide range of screening assays and allow concentration adjustments to optimize assay performance. Peptide length was based on the 6 to 10 residue length common for epitope identification (although there is a growing recognition of the importance of shorter 4 to 6 residue sequences in protein-protein interactions and protein targeting, as seen with the PP-1 binding motif); selection of a hexameric peptide represents a compromise between maximizing diversity

(increasing with each additional residue) and minimizing synthesis and screening requirements (since each additional residue represents a 10-fold increase in library population). Two types of **representative combinatorial peptide libraries (RPCLs)** with differing techniques for identifying active peptides were constructed: a set of **dual-defined RPCLs**, which predict active hexapeptides from combinations of active dipeptide sequences, and a **triple-defined RCPL**, which relies on an iterative strategy for peptide identification.

Initially, a set of 3 complementary dual-defined RPCLs denoted by  $\text{Ac-O}_1\text{O}_2\text{X}_3\text{X}_4\text{X}_5\text{X}_6\text{-NH}_2$ ,  $\text{Ac-X}_1\text{X}_2\text{O}_3\text{O}_4\text{X}_5\text{X}_6\text{-NH}_2$ , and  $\text{Ac-X}_1\text{X}_2\text{X}_3\text{X}_4\text{O}_5\text{O}_6\text{-NH}_2$  were synthesized at 6  $\mu\text{mol}$  scale on the original Holm and Meldal synthesis unit (a reaction block containing a 96-well array in microtitre plate format) using representative Fmoc-amino acid Opfp esters at 10-fold excess for defined  $\text{O}_n\text{O}_{n+1}$  positions and double couplings of mixtures of 0.1 equivalents of each ester for  $\text{X}_n$  positions (Wong *et al.*, 1994). Initial synthesis requirements were substantial, as each library consisted of 100 ( $10^2$ ) peptide mixtures containing 10,000 ( $10^4$ ) different peptides with acetylated N-termini and amidated C-termini; however, this type of library avoids the effort involved in an iterative strategy for peptide identification by combining the active dipeptide results from each library in the set to predict active hexapeptides for re-synthesis and screening. Wong's experience with the dual-defined representative library prompted the construction of a novel triple-defined representative library denoted by  $\text{Ac-O}_1\text{O}_2\text{O}_3\text{X}_4\text{X}_5\text{X}_6\text{-NH}_2$ , consisting of 1000 ( $10^3$ ) peptide mixtures composed of 1000 ( $10^3$ ) hexapeptides with acetylated N-termini and amidated C-termini per mixture. The introduction of a third defined position was designed to provide potentially greater specificity and selectivity, while the substitution of an iterative procedure of active peptide identification for the predictive approach of the dual-defined libraries was intended to ensure identification of all (complete) active



sequences; the third defined position also eliminated one round of the iterative procedure. The triple-defined library was generated by the split-synthesis approach (Figure 38), using tedious manual synthesis to achieve a 50 mmol scale of synthesis (considerably greater than possible on the Holm and Meldal instrument) for the addition of the first 5 residues; the library was rapidly completed on the 100-reactor module of the newly developed multiple peptide synthesizer prototype in 10 rounds of synthesis, each round corresponding to the splitting and coupling of 10 of the 100  $O_2O_3XXX$  resin-bound mixtures (and each reactor representing one  $O_1O_2O_3XXX$  mixture at 50  $\mu$ mol scale). In order to reduce costs at so large a scale of synthesis, batch-mode MBHA resin was selected in place of continuous flow NovaSyn PR resin, and a pre-formed activated Rink amide handle was attached. The standard protocol for MPS synthesis was followed throughout: deprotection by 20% piperidine in DMF; Fmoc-amino acid sidechain protecting groups of OtBu (Asp, Glu), tBu (Ser, Thr, Tyr), Boc (Lys), Trt (Cys and His), and Pmc (Arg); *in situ* activation of Fmoc-amino acids to generate OBt esters from HBTU; N-terminal acetylation using excess acetic anhydride; cleavage by modified Reagent K; and cold ether precipitation of peptides. However, 10-fold excess Fmoc-amino acids and extended 90-120 minute coupling times (rather than nitrogen gas sparging) were employed to ensure high quality synthesis on the batch resin, and the resulting crude peptide mixtures were neutralized by lyophilization from 10 mM  $NH_4HCO_3$  before use in pH-sensitive ELISA assays. Each  $O_1O_2O_3XXX$  mixture was redissolved in 2.5 mL of water to give a theoretical total peptide concentration of 20 mM and an individual peptide concentration of 20  $\mu$ M before storage at  $-80^\circ C$ .

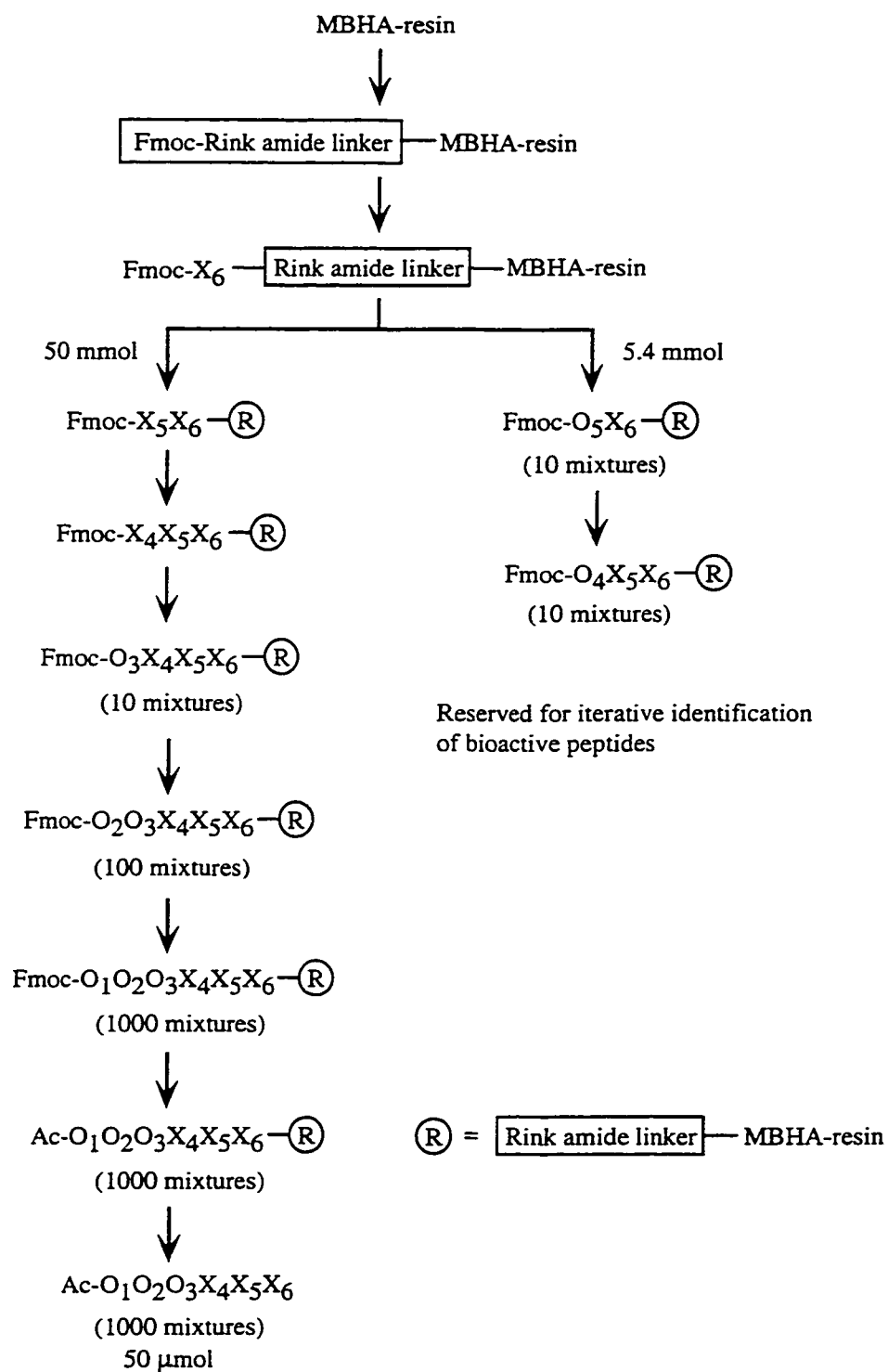
**Table 11    Selected Representative Amino Acids**

| <b>Representative amino acid</b> | <b>Physico-chemical properties of sidechains</b> | <b>Amino acids represented</b> |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| Ala                              | small hydrophobic                                |                                |
| Glu                              | acidic   | Asp                            |
| Phe                              | aromatic   | Trp, Tyr                       |
| Gly                              | no steric hindrance                              |                                |
| Ile                              | $\beta$ -branched<br>larger hydrophobic          | Val<br>Met                     |
| Lys                              | basic  | His, Arg                       |
| Leu                              | larger hydrophobic                               | Met                            |
| Pro                              | restricted conformation                          |                                |
| Gln                              | amide  | Asn                            |
| Ser                              | hydroxyl   | Thr                            |

**Table 12    Reduction in Library Size by the Representative Approach**

| Peptide length | Number of peptides in library |                              |
|----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                | Complete library              | Representative library       |
| 2              | $20^2 = 400$                  | $10^2 = 100$                 |
| 3              | $20^3 = 8,000$                | $10^3 = 1,000$               |
| 4              | $20^4 = 160,000$              | $10^4 = 10,000$              |
| 5              | $20^5 = 3.2 \text{ million}$  | $10^5 = 100,000$             |
| 6              | $20^6 = 64 \text{ million}$   | $10^6 = 1 \text{ million}$   |
| 7              | $20^7 = 1.28 \text{ billion}$ | $10^7 = 10 \text{ million}$  |
| 8              | $20^8 = 25.6 \text{ billion}$ | $10^8 = 100 \text{ million}$ |

**Figure 38 Overview of Triple-Defined Representative Library Synthesis**



### 5.3 Representational Library Screening and Assessment

The feasibility of the representative approach was tested with the set of dual-defined RPCLs in an epitope mapping of murine monoclonal antibody PK99H, an IgG which recognizes a 7-residue epitope DEQFIPK located in sequence 134-140 of the C-terminal region of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strain K (PAK) pilin (Wong *et al.*, 1992). *P. aeruginosa* is a significant opportunistic pathogen in individuals with a disrupted natural host-defence mechanism, such as burn victims and cancer patients (Bodley *et al.*, 1983), and pilus-mediated bacterial adherence to epithelial cell surfaces is one of three known adherence mechanisms leading to pathogenesis (Doig *et al.*, 1988). The dual-defined libraries were screened by competitive ELISA to determine their ability to inhibit the interaction of PK99H with a 17-residue intrachain disulfide-bridged (oxidized) PAK pilin peptide containing the 7-residue epitope; this N<sup>α</sup>-acetylated peptide has the sequence of Ac-KCTSDQDEQFIPKGCSK-OH corresponding to the C-terminal region of PAK pilin functioning as the adherence binding domain (residues 128-144). 96-well microtitre plates were coated with the 17-residue PAK pilin peptide (200 μM, 80 μL per well) in 10 mM sodium carbonate buffer (pH 9.5), incubated 6 hours at room temperature, and blocked against non-specific adsorption of antibody with 3% bovine serum albumin (BSA) in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) overnight at 4°C. Library solutions (diluted to a final concentration of 8 mM) were pre-incubated with PK99H (5 ng/mL final concentration) in 50 mM PBS containing 0.05% BSA (pH 7.4) at room temperature for 1 hour; solution mixtures (80 μL) were transferred to the corresponding wells and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. Bound antibody was detected by goat anti-mouse IgG conjugated to horseradish peroxidase (Jackson Laboratories, California) using 2,2'-azino-di-(3-ethylbenzthiazoline sulfonic acid) as a substrate. The secondary antibody-enzyme conjugate (100 μL at 5000-fold dilution) was added to the

wells and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours, after which freshly prepared substrate solution (100  $\mu$ L) consisting of 10 mM sodium citrate (pH 4.2) with 0.03% v/v hydrogen peroxide and 1 mM of the substrate was added and incubated at room temperature for 30 minutes. The absorbance of each well was measured at 405 nm by a Titertek Multiskan Plus MKII microplate reader (FlowLab Inc., McLean, Virginia) and compared with a “blank” well (i.e. lacking competitor peptide) to determine the % inhibition provided by the library solution.

Using a cut-off at 50% inhibition to select significant responses and locate 2-residue sequences important for antibody binding (since a 100% cut-off is wasteful of the library), 9 "hits" (EQ, QQ, QA, AF, GQ, SL, EF, GL and QL) were obtained in the O<sub>1</sub>O<sub>2</sub>XXXX library, 1 hit (FI) in the XXO<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>XX library, and 5 hits (PK, IG, PL, LG and IL) in the XXXXO<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub> library (**Figure 39**). The best hits in these libraries were EQ, FI, and PK respectively, which, when combined in order, constitute the native PAK epitope sequence EQFIPK. In addition to their success in identifying the known epitope sequence, the RPCLs were also able to represent a range of other sequences: substitution of represented amino acids for representative residues in EQFIPK produced 4 peptides (DQFIPK, EQWIPK, EQFMPK and EQFVPK) having I<sub>50</sub> values within an order of magnitude of the native sequence, including 2 peptides (EQWIPK and EQFMPK) with a slightly higher affinity for PK99H than the native sequence (**Table 13**). The results with EQFIPK and two additional combinations QQFIPK and QAFIPK not found in the native PAK sequence demonstrate that positions 1,3, and 4 permit the use of the representative approach without substantially altering binding affinity to PK99H: Glu and Gln were able to represent Asp and Asn, F was able to represent Trp, and I could represent Met and Val. Limitations to the representative approach do exist: Arg and His could not be substituted by their representative amino acid Lys at the critical position 6 (since Lys is charged at the assay

pH of 7.4 while His is not, and Arg has a more bulky sidechain than Lys), and problems arise where residue sidechain contributions to antibody-antigen interactions do not depend only on their physico-chemical properties, as demonstrated in the second position of the epitope where substitution of Gln (considered nonessential for binding by alanine replacement analysis) with amino acids other than Ala or Cys strongly affected peptide binding to PK99H. Another limitation is caused by the combination of active dipeptides to predict complete active sequences; the large difference in  $I_{50}$  value of the peptide AFFIPK (1100  $\mu$ M) compared with the native sequence (1.3  $\mu$ M) suggests that the first two residues mapped (AF) were not in combination with the last four residues (FIPK) to give the initial positive hit, and combinations with the next best hits for positions 5 and 6 (AFFIIG and AFFIPL) were not sufficiently soluble to test in the assay.

The success of the representative approach and the limitations of dual-defined library prediction of active sequences led to the comparative screening of the novel triple-defined RPCL by the same competitive ELISA with monoclonal antibody PK99H and oxidized PAK pilin (128-144), using a library dilution an order of magnitude smaller to account for the differing individual peptide concentration (as each mixture in the triple-defined RPCL contains only 1000 different peptides, compared to the 10,000 peptides per mixture in the dual-defined RPCLs). With this type of library, identification of active peptides proceeds through an iterative strategy: at each iterative step, peptide mixtures having one more position defined are synthesized and screened. The first iterative step with the triple-defined library detects active peptides with the first 3 positions defined. Using a cut-off at 50% inhibition to select significant responses, the library mixture EQFXXX containing the native PAK epitope sequence EQFIPK was correctly identified (**Figure 40**). Indeed, this was the sole hit, although 4 other library mixtures (SLGXXX, QQFXXX, QFQXXX and EIKXXX, in order of

inhibitory effect) provided only slightly less competition, and one of these (QQFXXX) can be considered the equivalent of the QQ and FI combination obtained in the dual-defined RPCLs O<sub>1</sub>O<sub>2</sub>XXX and XXO<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>XXX. The selective advantage of the triple-defined RPCL can be seen in the low “background” of the other responses, allowing hits to be distinguished easily; the only exception appears to be the series in which O<sub>3</sub> was defined as Ser, and potential hits in this series were later identified as false positives when screened on a common microtitre plate with EQFXXX. Due to very limited supplies of monoclonal antibody PK99H, screening could not be continued beyond this point.

Monoclonal antibody PK99H is a strain-specific antibody, recognizing only strain K (PAK) pilin. The existence of several strains of *P. aeruginosa* complicates the development of an effective vaccine, necessitating the preparation of a "cocktail" vaccine or the development of a consensus sequence for complete protection. Sequences of the C-terminal regions (i.e. adherence domains) from residues 128 to 144 of several *P. aeruginosa* strains are presented in **Figure 41**, along with the corresponding sequence from exoenzyme S (EXOS), showing the degree of shared homology; the latter is of interest since *P. aeruginosa* adherence to epithelial cells can also proceed by the mechanism of exoenzyme S - mediated binding. For this reason, the triple defined RPCL was screened by competitive ELISA using cross reactive monoclonal antibody EXOS#50 (another IgG) in place of the strain-specific PK99H. This posed a considerable challenge to the representative library, requiring the successful representation of 9 amino acids (D,H,M,N,R,T,V,W, and Y, omitting C which has no representative) for the detection of lower affinity cross reactive binding sequences, in addition to C, T, and N within the homologous region of the EXOS sequence. The previously described competitive ELISA protocol was employed, substituting PAK pili (0.5 µg per well) for the 17-residue PAK pilin and using a final



antibody concentration of 3.5  $\mu\text{g/mL}$  (reflecting its lower affinity for the pili) and initial library mixture dilutions of only 5-fold. As anticipated, multiple hits were obtained in the first round of screening, and the selective advantage was less apparent (**Figure 42**); once again, the series with  $\text{O}_3$  defined as Ser generated a disproportionately high background. The sheer number of hits emphasized the importance of limiting selection carried into the next round of an iterative strategy of peptide identification. As an alternative to retesting positive hits (and expending library supplies in a repetitive manner), a simple “filter” was devised based on the positional frequency at which representative amino acids occurred in each of the 3 defined positions of hits (**Table 14**). Each hit was assigned a **multiple positional frequency**, a quasi “probability factor” calculated as the product of its  $\text{O}_1$ ,  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{O}_3$  residue frequencies; for example, the product frequency of hit  $\Pi\text{AXXX}$  is  $0.29 \times 0.33 \times 0.42 = 0.0402$ , i.e. the largest frequency (but not the corresponding highest % inhibition). Although this filter is a very rough statistical tool, it was able to differentiate 15 hits (**Figure 43**) from which were selected the top ten  $\text{O}_1\text{O}_2\text{O}_3$  sequences in terms of inhibitory effect: LEA, QIA, LGA, LQA, SIA, LAA, QSQ, QQA, QIQ and IQS; none of these selections correspond to real or represented sequences found in the corresponding region of EXOS. Indeed, only one tripeptide sequence found in the homologous region (SSA) qualified as a hit, rating poorly in comparison with the best hits. The filter-based selection could be distinguished from a selection based solely on % inhibition, since 3 additional sequences with higher inhibitory effects but proportionally lower multiple positional frequencies were rejected by the filter for further deconvolution.

The effectiveness of this selective technique was examined in the next round of the iterative strategy. Quadruple-defined “sublibraries” (denoted by  $\text{O}_1\text{O}_2\text{O}_3\text{O}_4\text{XX}$ ) were synthesized from  $\text{O}_4\text{X}_5\text{X}_6$ -resin stock reserved during synthesis of the triple-defined RPCL, and were screened at a 10-fold higher dilution to take into account the

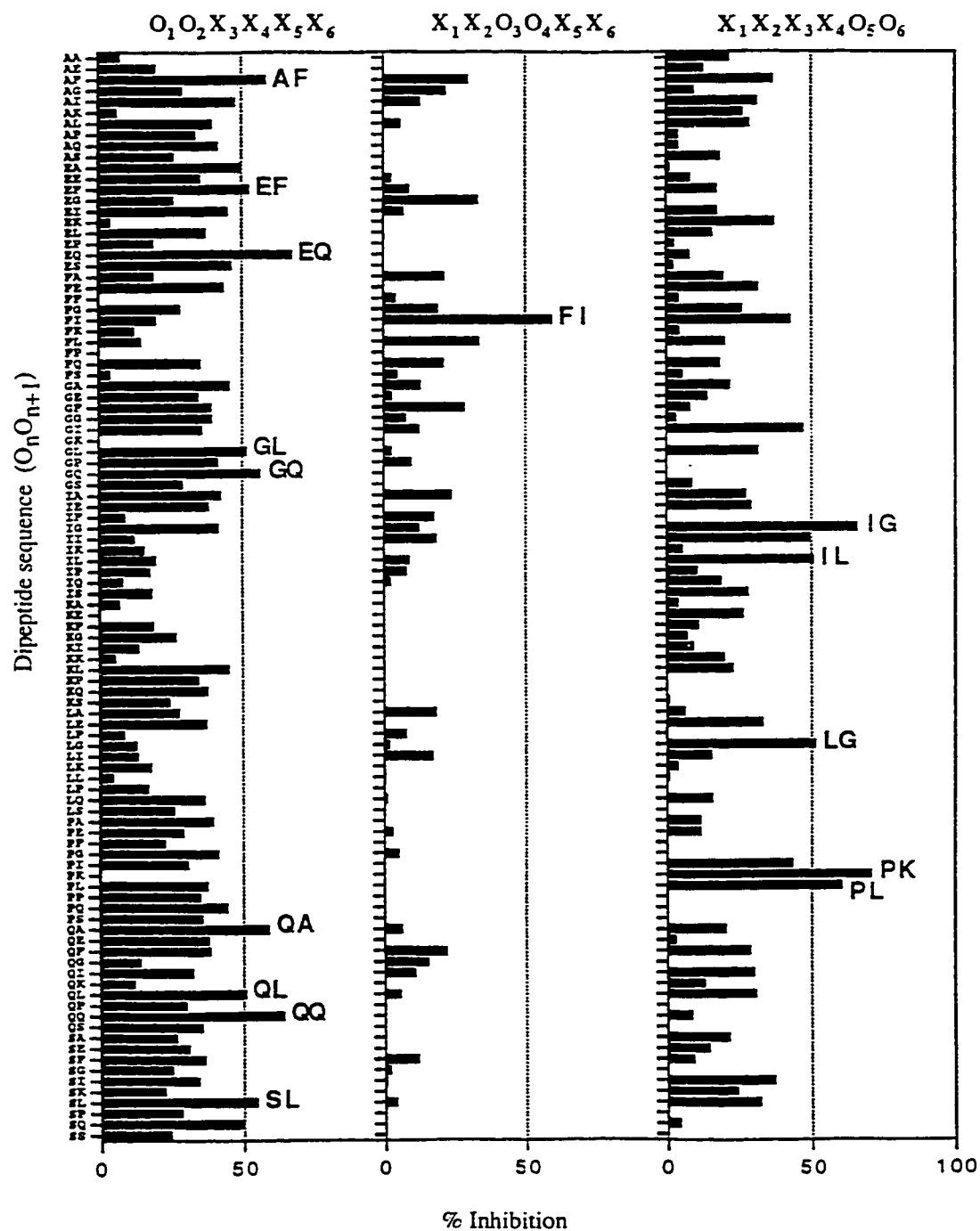
concentration advantage occurring as mixture diversity declined from 1000 ( $10^3$ ) to 100 ( $10^2$ ) different peptides per mixture (results presented in **Figure 44**). Only seven of the original ten  $O_1O_2O_3XXX$  hits generated successive  $O_1O_2O_3O_4XX$  hits (the remainder were classified as false positives); in addition, one of the original hits (QIQXXX) generated multiple hits upon addition of a fourth defined residue, suggesting that this position may not be critical to binding and may tolerate a wide range of substitution (including Ala, Ile, Leu, Gln and Ser). Carrying on to the next round, quintuple-defined sublibraries ( $O_1O_2O_3O_4O_5X$ ) were synthesized from  $O_5X_6$ -resin stock reserved during the original library synthesis and screened at a 100-fold higher dilution than in the original round of screening. As demonstrated in **Figure 45**, only one of the previous  $O_1O_2O_3O_4XX$  hits (QIQSXX) generated a successive  $O_1O_2O_3O_4O_5X$  hit (QIQSIX), although 3 mixtures derived from the QIAQXX hit approached the cut-off and 1 mixture derived from the SIAAXX hit provided a disproportionate inhibitory response relative to the 9 other residues at the  $O_5$  position. The apparent loss of so many potential hits suggests the representative nature of the library may pose a serious problem in the latter stages of an iterative strategy for active peptide identification - the increasing restriction in library diversity brought about by the use of representative amino acids may prevent successful deconvolution.

This hypothesis was tested by resynthesizing the QIQO<sub>4</sub>XX set of sublibraries using an expanded set of 19 amino acids for residue addition at positions 4, 5 and 6 (excluding only Cys for ease of synthesis); double couplings of mixtures of 0.1 equivalents of each amino acid were employed at undefined (X) positions 5 and 6 to achieve an approximately equimolar distribution. The screening results presented in **Figure 46** show unexpectedly high responses, suggesting the screening was performed with insufficiently diluted library solutions, but the overall profile allows a preliminary assessment of the representative approach: screening of the "complete"

library selected QIQTXX as the highest ranking hit, in agreement with the selection of the representative equivalent QIQSXX, confirming the ability of Ser to represent Thr at this position. Declining inhibition was observed with the addition of Tyr, Trp, Leu, Ser, Gln, Asn, Val, Phe and Met in that order. Gln appears to have functioned as a satisfactory representative of Asn, according to the similar inhibitory effects, but Phe under-represented the inhibitory effects of Tyr and Trp at this position and Ile could not act as a suitable representative of Met and Val. Selecting the single best hit for investigation, the QIQTO<sub>5</sub>X set of sublibraries was prepared using all 19 amino acids, and the screening results defining the fifth position clearly demonstrate the problem of restricted diversity (**Figure 47**). The 5 top-ranking hits (QIQTDX, QIQTGX, QIQTEX, QIQTQX and QIQTYX) do not include the sole apparent hit (QIQSIX) detected by the representative library.

The screening results obtained with the cross-reactive monoclonal antibody EXOS#50 illustrate the proper role for the representative library: an initial rapid screening tool, designed to compress a very large range of potential active sequences in a single screening step while effectively maintaining diversity through the use of suitable representative amino acids. This initial screening must then be followed by a conventional iterative strategy for active peptide identification, in which deconvolution is performed one position at a time using the full range of amino acids to avoid restricting diversity as binding affinity increases with each successive addition and it becomes increasingly difficult to represent a particular residue. Fortunately, the disadvantage posed by the increased synthesis requirements can be offset in part by the use of the multiple peptide synthesizer for rapid resynthesis of sublibraries.

**Figure 39 Screening of Dual-Defined RPCLs :**  
**Competitive inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144]**



**Table 13      Substitution of Corresponding Represented  
Amino Acids in Active Sequences**

| Sequence  | I <sub>50</sub> (mM) |
|---|----------------------|
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">E Q F I P K</span>   | 1.3                  |
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">D</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">Q</span> F I P K | 2.3                  |
| E <span style="border: 1px solid black;">N</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">F</span> I P K | 190                  |
| E Q <span style="border: 1px solid black;">Y</span> I P K   | 190                  |
| E Q <span style="border: 1px solid black;">W</span> I P K   | 0.9                  |
| E Q F <span style="border: 1px solid black;">M</span> P K   | 1.1                  |
| E Q F <span style="border: 1px solid black;">V</span> P K   | 3.4                  |
| E Q F I P <span style="border: 1px solid black;">H</span>   | 620                  |
| E Q F I P <span style="border: 1px solid black;">R</span>   | >730                 |
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">Q Q F I P K</span>   | 1.3                  |
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">N</span> Q F I P K   | 12.0                 |
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">Q A F I P K</span>   | 2.0                  |
| <span style="border: 1px solid black;">N</span> Q F I P K   | 14.0                 |

Sequences of original active peptides are boxed, as are substitutions of represented amino acids.

Peptides are N<sup>α</sup>-acetylated and C-amidated.

I<sub>50</sub> values are peptide concentrations required for 50% inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144].

Figure 40

Screening of  $O_1O_2O_3X_4X_5X_6$  RPCL :

Competitive inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144]

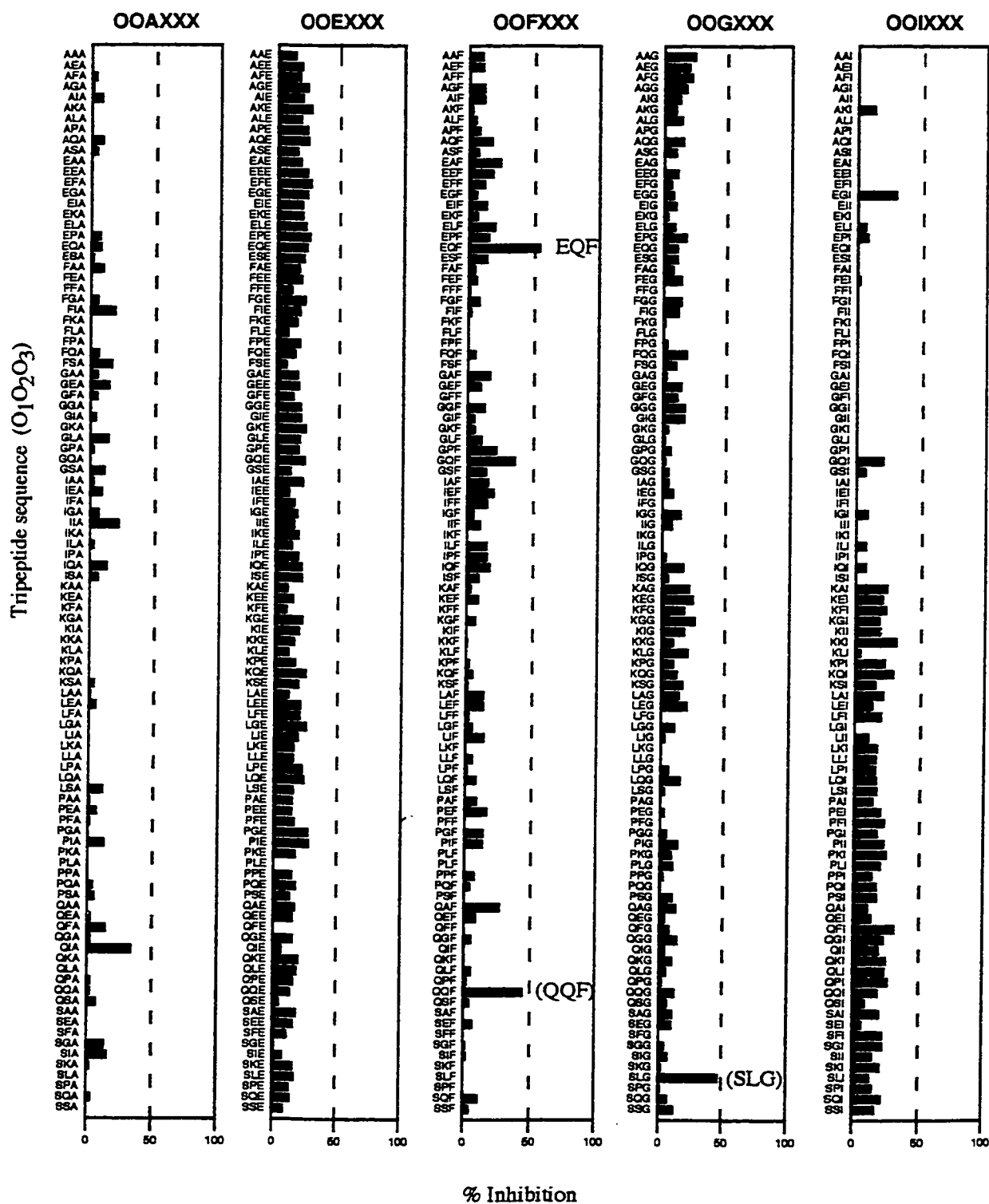
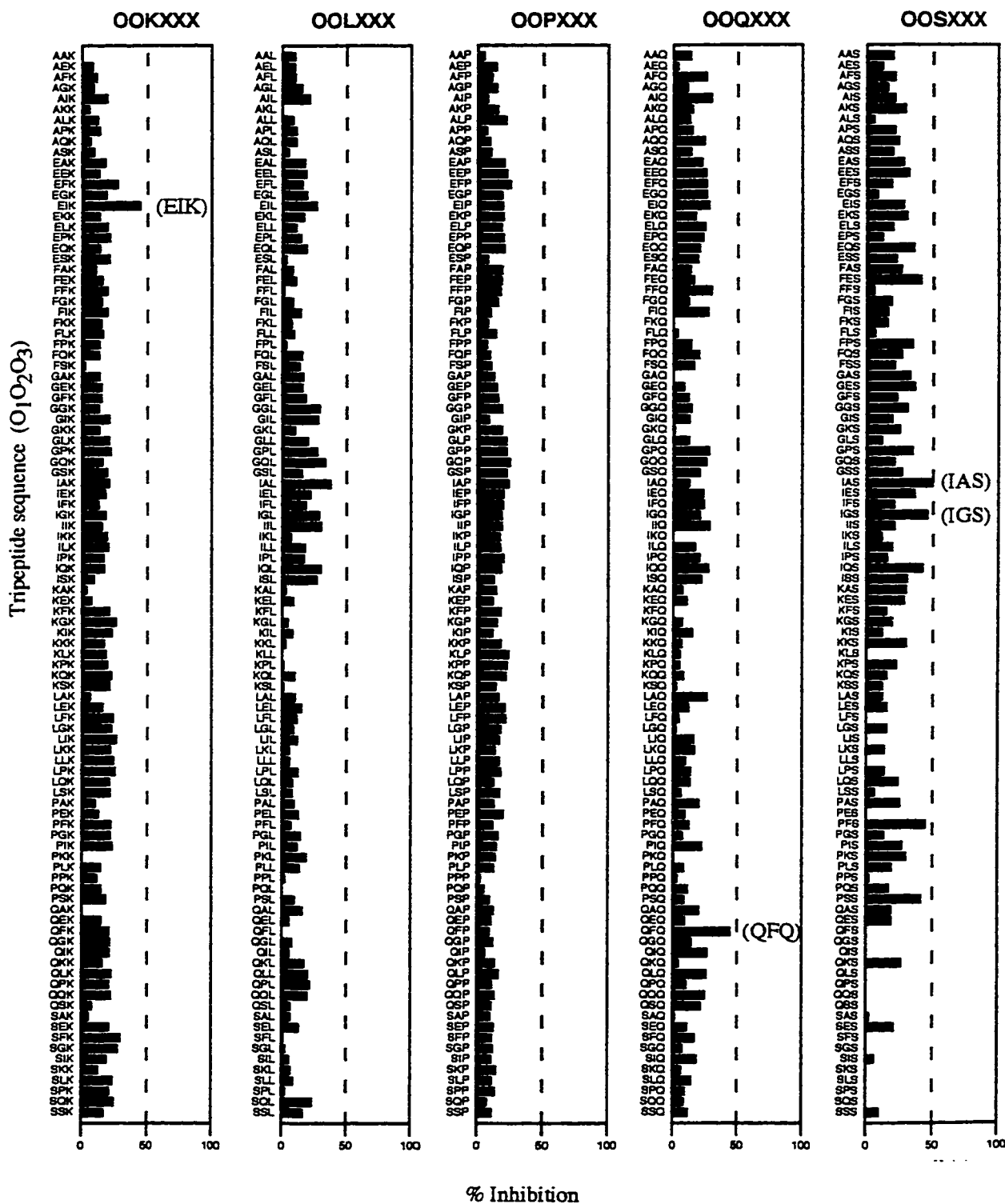


Figure 40

Screening of  $O_1O_2O_3X_4X_5X_6$  RPCL (continued) :  
Competitive inhibition of PK99H binding to PAK[128-144]



**Figure 41**      Comparison of Exoenzyme S and the C-Terminal Region Sequences of Eight *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* Pilin Strains

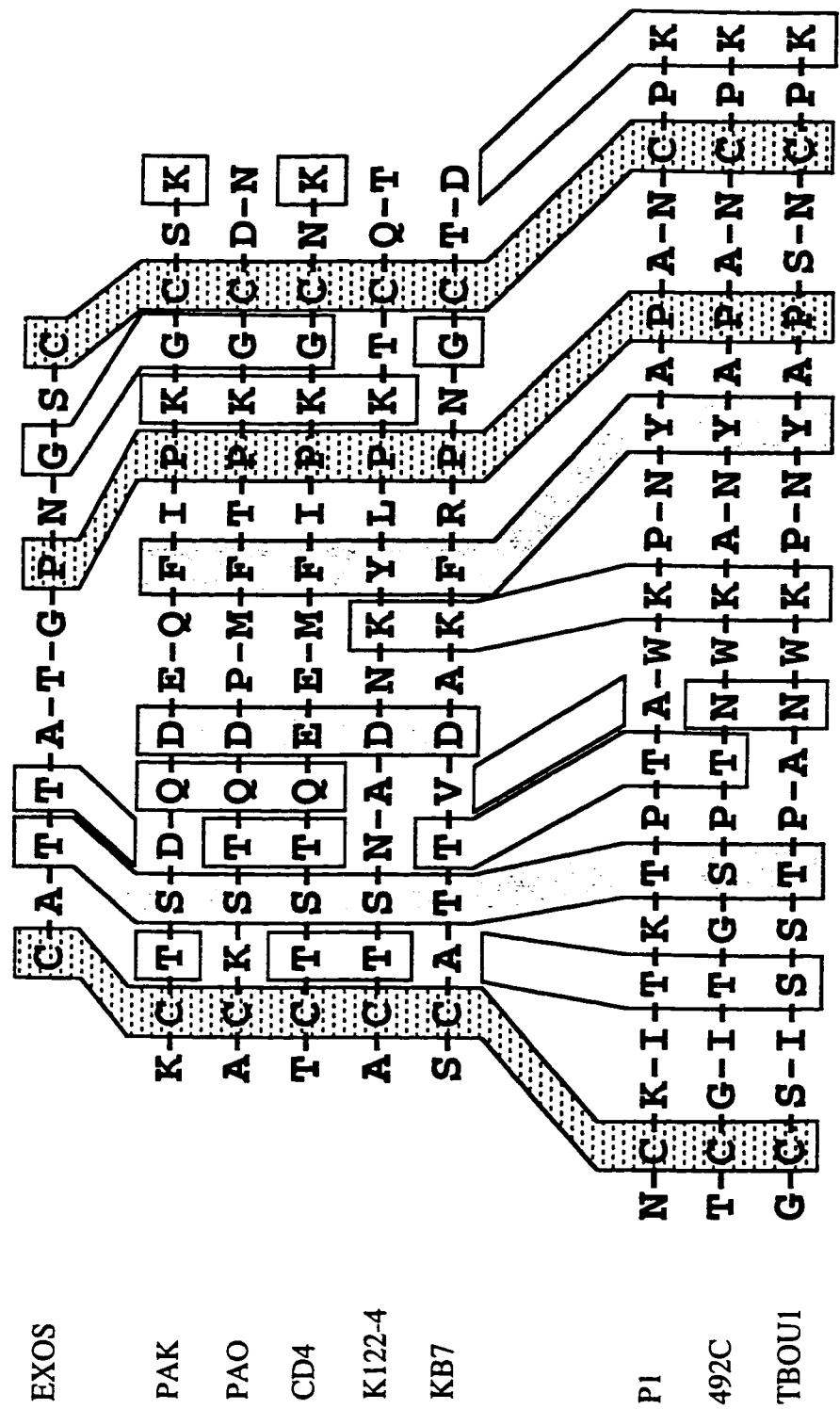
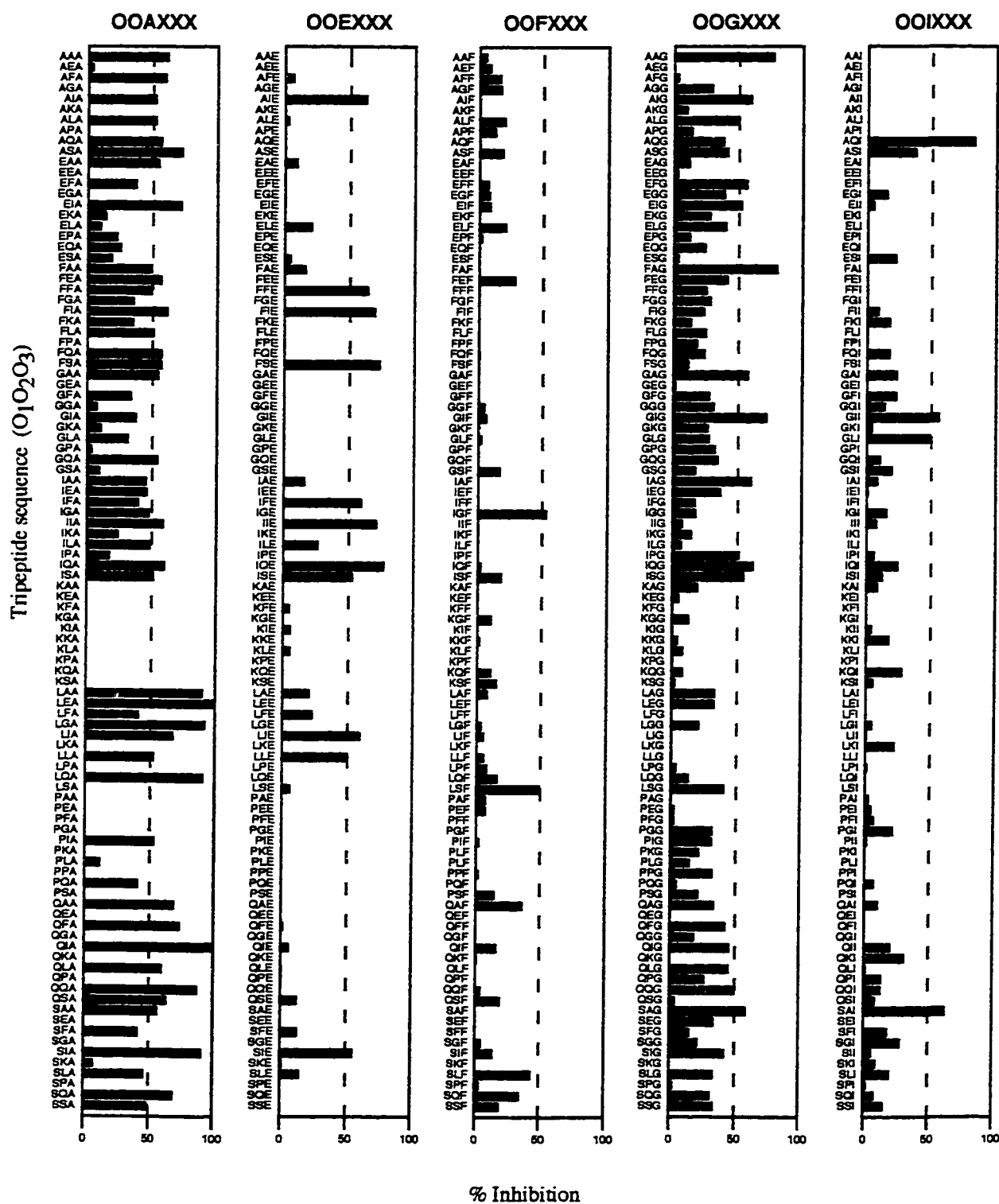




Figure 42

Screening of  $O_1O_2O_3X_4X_5X_6$  RPCL :

Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili



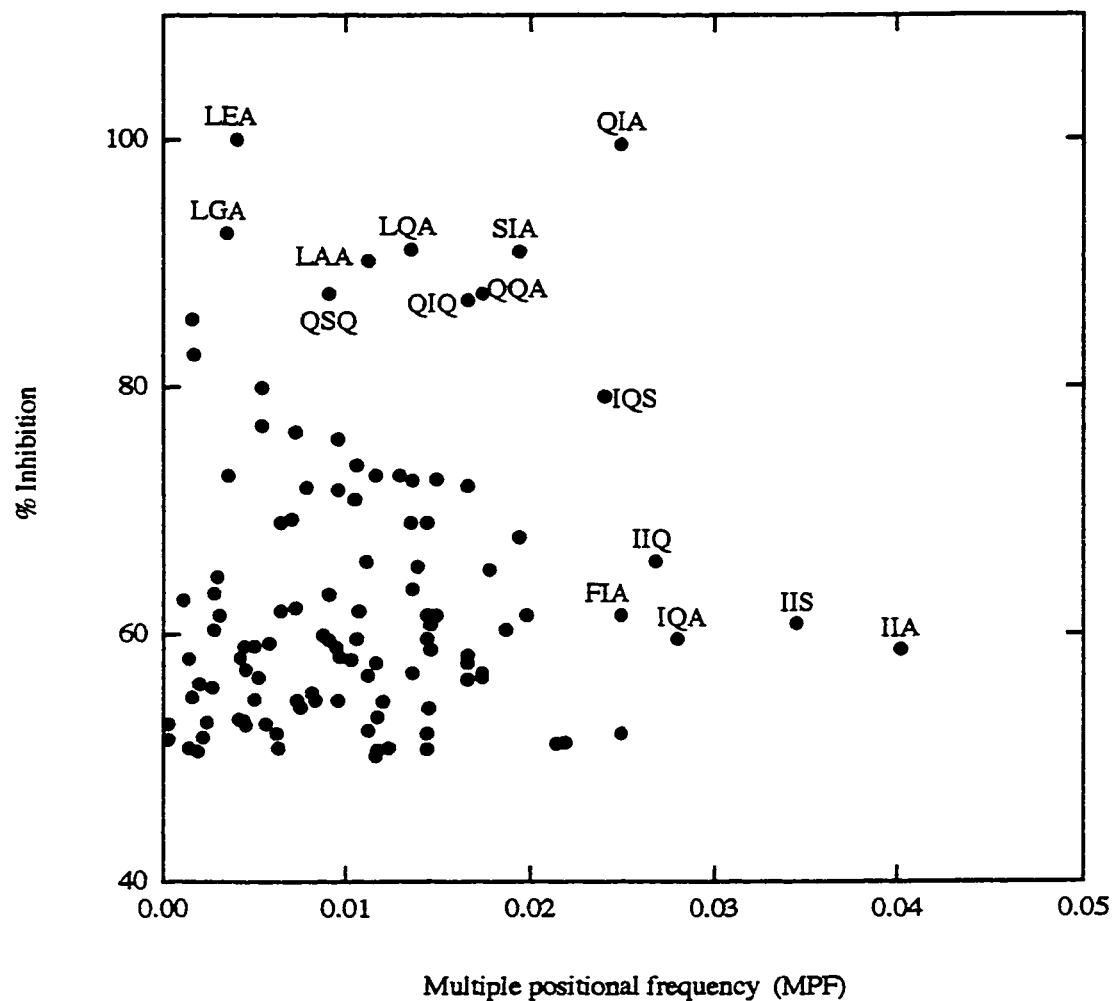
**Screening of O<sub>1</sub>O<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>X<sub>6</sub> RPCL (continued) :  
Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili**



**Table 14    Positional Frequency of Representative Amino Acids in Hits From EXOS#50 Initial Screening**

| Representative amino acid | O <sub>1</sub> frequency | O <sub>2</sub> frequency | O <sub>3</sub> frequency |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| A                         | 0.18                     | 0.19                     | 0.42                     |
| E                         | 0.12                     | 0.07                     | 0.11                     |
| F                         | 0.18                     | 0.14                     | 0.02                     |
| G                         | 0.15                     | 0.06                     | 0.16                     |
| I                         | 0.29                     | 0.33                     | 0.04                     |
| K                         | 0.05                     | 0.04                     | 0.01                     |
| L                         | 0.14                     | 0.19                     | 0.06                     |
| P                         | 0.03                     | 0.03                     | 0                        |
| Q                         | 0.18                     | 0.23                     | 0.28                     |
| S                         | 0.14                     | 0.18                     | 0.36                     |

**Figure 43**      **Selection of Triple-Defined RPCL Best Hits for Deconvolution**



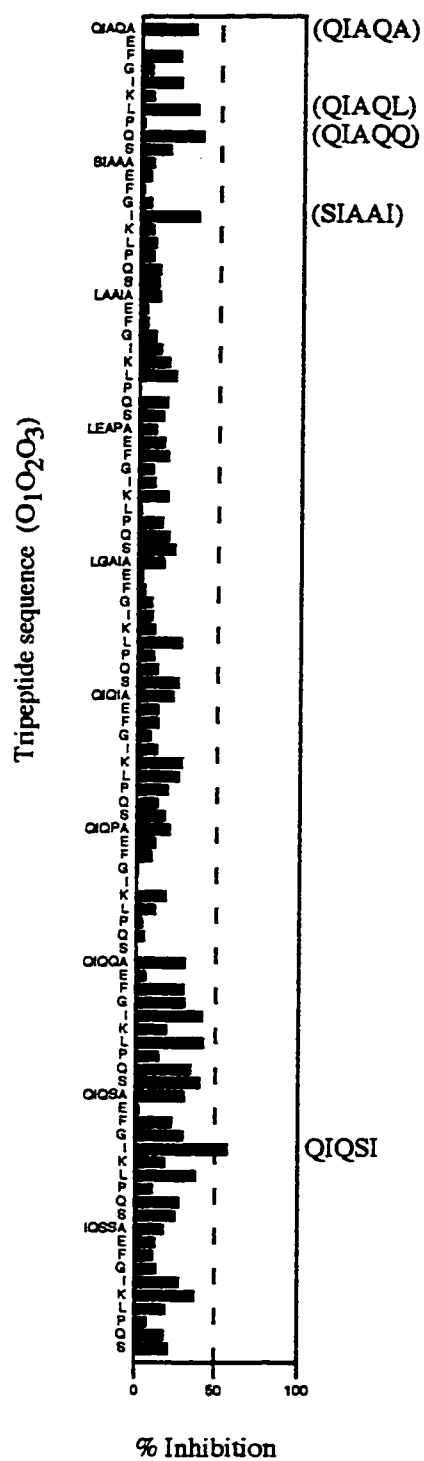
Multiple hits obtained in first-round screening of triple-defined RPCL (competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pilin) are differentiated on the basis of their multiple positional frequency.

**Screening of O<sub>1</sub>O<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>X<sub>6</sub> RPCL :**  
**Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili**



**Figure 45**

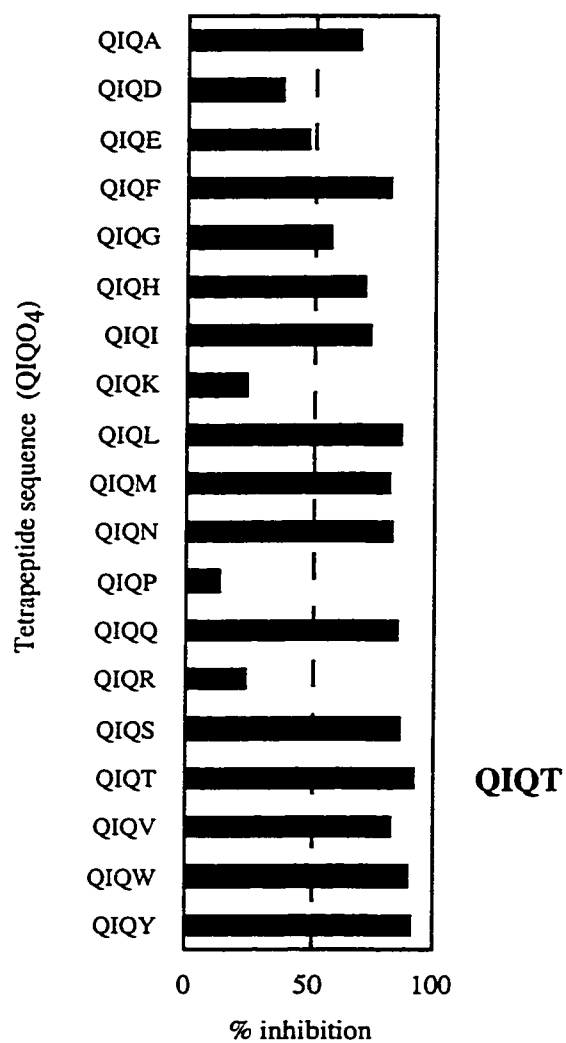
**Screening of  $O_1O_2O_3O_4O_5X_6$  RPCL :  
Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili**



**Figure 46**

**Screening of QIQO<sub>4</sub>XX SPCL :**

**Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili**

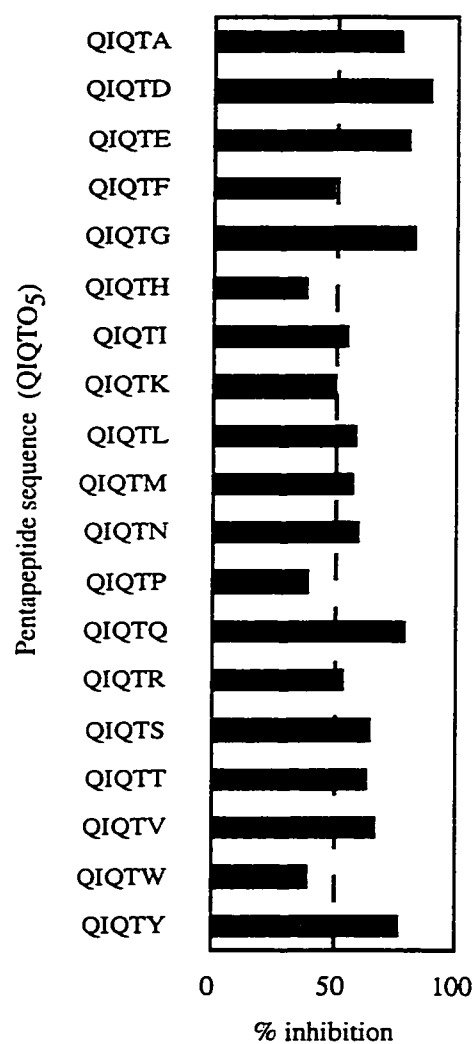


Complete set of amino acids (omitting Cys) used in the generation of the sublibrary.

**Figure 47**

**Screening of QIQTO<sub>5</sub>X SPCL :**

**Competitive inhibition of EXOS#50 binding to PAK pili**



Complete set of amino acids (omitting Cys) used in the generation of the sublibrary.



### 6.1 Conventional Peptide Purification

While an efficient peptide synthesis generates only a small number of peptide impurities, the resulting deletion, termination, and/or chemically modified peptides usually possess structures closely related to the peptide of interest and so pose difficult problems in purification. The favoured method of purification for peptides is unquestionably RP-HPLC (reversed-phase high performance liquid chromatography) due to its excellent resolving power, rapid separation times, and the availability of volatile mobile phases; RP-HPLC offers the greatest scope amongst HPLC techniques for manipulation of stationary and mobile phases to improve peptide separation, including choice of packing material and stationary phase functional groups (Esser and Unger, 1991), mobile phase pH and ion-pairing reagent (Bennett, 1991), organic modifier, flowrate and gradient rate (Burke *et al.*, 1991a), and even temperature (Guo *et al.*, 1986). Peptide separation is based on relative overall hydrophobicity, which governs peptide interactions with a strongly hydrophobic stationary phase and determines peptide rate of travel through the column. The stationary phase most frequently consists of straight-chain alkyl C<sub>8</sub> or C<sub>18</sub> ligands bound to a silica support with a 300 Å pore size matrix and a 5-10 µ particle size range, and is normally maintained at pH 2 to suppress ionic interactions due to silanol ionization (Bij *et al.*, 1981). Unlike smaller organic molecules, peptides partition to only a limited extent, and their interactions with the stationary phase approach an adsorption/desorption mechanism due to multi-site binding (Hodges and Mant, 1991). The aqueous mobile phase employed to carry the sample through the column contains an ion-pairing reagent (e.g. 0.05 - 0.1% TFA for peptide basic groups at pH 2) to enhance sorption and maximize differences in peptide polarities; an organic modifier, normally acetonitrile

although isopropanol and methanol are also frequently used (Hermodson and Mahoney, 1983), is added to elute peptides from the column. It is important to note that sample components bind more strongly to the stationary phase than does the eluent, with the possible exception of certain additives in the eluent such as ion-pairing reagents; this is overcome by conditioning the column before sample injection to allow any such additive to reach its equilibrium distribution between the stationary and mobile phases. Flowrates of 1 mL/min, 0.2 mL/min, and 0.1 mL/min are typically employed for analytical (4.0-4.6 mm ID), narrowbore (2-3 mm ID), and microbore ( $\leq 1$  mm ID) columns respectively, to accommodate the diminishing column internal diameter and produce similar resolution and run times; the advantages of employing smaller diameter HPLC columns include increased sensitivity and reduced solvent consumption (Burke *et al.*, 1991b). Two elution modes are used: isocratic elution, in which the mobile phase composition is kept constant, and gradient elution, which employs a programmed gradual increase in organic modifier concentration. The advantage of increasing elution strength with time lies in reducing the retention times of strongly-sorbed peptides with only a negligible trade-off in resolution (due to the very high resolving power of RP-HPLC). Typically, a linear gradient of 0.5 - 2.0% acetonitrile per minute is employed.

Despite its widespread use, there are disadvantages to the elution mode of RP-HPLC which become increasingly important with scale-up of sample load. Elution mode partially reduces the full extent of the potential separation in the reversed-phase column, as the organic modifier introduced into the mobile phase increases the adsorption/desorption rate. Analytical applications are performed under conditions ensuring linear elution, which requires sufficiently small sample size with respect to the amount of stationary phase in the column to ensure that sample component equilibrium distribution between stationary and mobile phases follows a linear law over the concentration range. There are numerous benefits to adhering to linear elution: this

mode of HPLC is well understood theoretically and provides retention times independent of concentration, prevents components from interfering with each other's adsorption (i.e. non-competitive adsorption), and allows components to be separated as distinct symmetrical peaks of approximately Gaussian shape. Unfortunately, the requirements for linear elution result in relatively poor utilization of both stationary and mobile phases. Furthermore, larger-scale linear elution separations require increasingly larger column volumes with correspondingly expensive quantities of packing in order to maintain satisfactory sample loads and product yield, and large columns have very high operating costs per unit of purified product due to high solvent consumption (namely, organic modifier). Even if purification is limited to columns of analytical scale (50-250 mm x 4.0-4.6 mm ID) or semi-preparative scale (250 mm x 7.5-10 mm ID) under conditions of linear gradient elution, a number of runs with relatively low sample loads are required to obtain the desired product yield due to inefficient utilization of column capacity. A large number of fraction analyses may be necessary to locate the peptide product(s) of interest, increasing time and solvent requirements, and product work-up is complicated by the dilution effect of large fraction volumes.

An alternative is the nonlinear displacement mode of RP-HPLC (reviewed in Frenz and Horváth, 1988), which makes significantly more efficient use of the resolving capabilities of reversed-phase packings and thereby allows larger sample loads to be handled by analytical scale columns. In displacement mode, the peptide sample is applied to the column in a carrier solvent with low affinity for the stationary phase. After sorption of the sample near the column inlet, a displacer with greater affinity for the stationary phase than any sample component is slowly pumped onto the column. Sample components displaced from the stationary phase move down the column preceding the displacer front, forming adjacent zones or bands of purified peptides traveling at the same velocity in a "displacement train"; the components may

be concentrated over their sample level during displacement. However, the advantage of higher sample load is offset by difficulties in optimizing the choice of displacer, displacer concentration and flowrate, and often very long run times are observed as the result of the low flowrates required (i.e. 0.1-0.2 mL/min). Moreover, this mode requires column regeneration, an operational procedure which makes no contribution to the separation.

In both elution and displacement modes of RP-HPLC some separation of sample components occurs during loading, i.e. the least retained component moves ahead of the other components, and under overload conditions is concentrated to a level greater than in the sample due to the presence of more strongly bound components. Frontal chromatography (Tiselius, 1943) takes advantage of this "displacement effect" by employing continuous sample feed to recover a pure fraction of the least retained component before breakthrough of the other sample components. Such nonlinear nonelution modes of chromatography have desirable features suitable for exploitation in large-scale separations.

## 6.2 Peptide Purification by Sample Displacement Mode of HPLC

The need for simpler, more efficient and reliable methods of semi-preparative to preparative scale purification has led to the development of a novel method of RP-HPLC suitable for analytical-scale columns, in which the main separation process takes place in the absence of organic modifier or displacer (Burke *et al.*, 1988; Hodges *et al.*, 1991). In the sample displacement mode (SDM) of RP-HPLC, high sample loading in a 100% aqueous mobile phase results in competition by sample components for adsorption sites on the stationary phase and subsequent solute-solute displacement; the sample components act as their own displacers, where the more hydrophobic components compete more successfully and displace the less hydrophobic components from the column. Consequently, this method makes use of the general principles of displacement chromatography without requiring the addition of displacer. Subsequent treatment of the column with an aqueous organic eluent is required only to wash retained components off the column, and makes no contribution to the major separation process. This mode of operation, a hybrid scheme of frontal chromatography followed by elution, is characterized by a marked reduction in solvent consumption, minimal elution volumes, and the collection of far fewer fractions for product isolation than in RP-HPLC (with consequent reductions in time and handling). Potential disadvantages include the requirement for peptide solubility in water (which restricts the range of peptide hydrophobicity which can be accommodated) and the need to determine elution solvent composition before purification (necessitating trials before each new purification).

Most research has been carried out with a model synthetic system composed of five closely related decapeptide analogues S<sub>1</sub> - S<sub>5</sub>, designed to simulate a crude peptide mixture typically produced by solid-phase peptide synthesis (which may contain

hydrophilic and/or hydrophobic peptide impurities) and to test the efficacy of SDM RP-HPLC in purification. The sequences of these analogues are presented in **Table 15**, where variations in sequence are highlighted within the box. There is only a slight increase in peptide hydrophobicity between S<sub>2</sub> and S<sub>5</sub>, reflecting the change from an  $\alpha$ -H to a  $\beta$ -CH<sub>3</sub> group between S<sub>2</sub> and S<sub>3</sub> (an increase of only one carbon atom), the change from a  $\beta$ -CH<sub>3</sub> group to two methyl groups attached to the  $\beta$ -CH group between S<sub>3</sub> and S<sub>4</sub> (an increase of two carbon atoms), and the change from an  $\alpha$ -H to an  $\alpha$ -isopropyl group between S<sub>4</sub> and S<sub>5</sub> (an increase of three carbon atoms). The potential of sample displacement chromatography (SDC) can be seen in simple peptide separations where the desired product is the most hydrophilic or the most hydrophobic component of the mixture (Burke *et al.*, 1988): the former is illustrated in **Figure 48** by separation of a four-peptide mixture (S<sub>2</sub> - S<sub>5</sub>) while the latter is illustrated in **Figure 49** by the separation of a five-peptide mixture (S<sub>1</sub> - S<sub>5</sub>), where in each case product P and impurity I are identified by subscript. Panel A shows the analytical separation profile of the sample mixture while Panel B shows the SDC elution profile; Peaks I and II were subjected to gradient elution analysis and the results are shown in Panels C and D, respectively. The importance of optimizing sample load to obtain these results must be emphasized. In the case where hydrophobic impurities displace a desired hydrophilic peptide (i.e. classical frontal chromatography), too high a sample load results in contamination with hydrophobic impurities of the product appearing in the breakthrough fraction, whereas too low a sample load results in product remaining on the column (where it is contaminated with hydrophobic impurities). In the case where hydrophilic impurities are displaced off the column by a desired hydrophobic peptide (which in turn remains bound to the column), too high a sample load results in product appearing in the breakthrough fraction (where it is contaminated with the displaced hydrophilic impurities); too low a sample load results in hydrophilic

impurities remaining with the product on the column. Separation of a more complex peptide sample containing both hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities is more problematic: both hydrophilic impurities and product are displaced from the column while hydrophobic impurities are retained (to be removed later by gradient elution), and overlap between the hydrophilic impurity and product zones adversely affects product recovery.

The necessity for optimizing sample load (or alternatively, column length), and poor product recovery from a more complex peptide sample containing both hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities, led to a multi-column approach in which up to 10 short (3 cm) column segments are joined in series (Hodges *et al.*, 1991). Following SDC, each column segment is isocratically eluted (eliminating the previous gradient wash to recover components retained on the column) and the distribution of sample peptides over the entire column is assessed. This approach clearly demonstrates the full potential of sample displacement chromatography: the system mimics the separation results of a standard analytical column where each column segment represents a collected fraction (although fraction analysis is greatly simplified by the low number of column segments). Components are distributed on the column according to their relative hydrophobicities, such that the most hydrophilic component is found near the column outlet (segment 1) or in the breakthrough fraction (0) while the most hydrophobic component is found near the column inlet (segment 10). **Figure 50** illustrates the separation of a synthetic decapeptide crude mixture where P is the desired product, I<sub>1</sub> is a hydrophilic impurity, and I<sub>2</sub> - I<sub>5</sub> are hydrophobic impurities; the breakthrough fraction and column segment 1 contain only hydrophilic impurity, column segment 10 contains only the three hydrophobic impurities, and column segments 2 - 7 contain essentially pure product, the great majority of which is found in column segments 3 - 7. This approach improves product recovery and purity,

but the column arrangement imposes an undesirable degree of manual manipulation for each sample run and wastes the resolving power of the column. The multi-column approach can be effectively reduced to a "hydrophobic trap" represented by column segments 8-10, a "product isolation column" represented by column segments 2-7, and a hydrophilic fraction represented by the breakthrough fraction and column segment 1.

Refinement of the multi-column approach to the minimal case generated a two-column approach to handle typical crude peptide mixtures containing both hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities (Mant and Hodges, 1991). As illustrated in **Figure 51**, sample is applied at high load to the two-column system composed of a short pre-column C1 and a main product isolation column C2 in series (Step1); hydrophobic contaminants are retained by the pre-column (the hydrophobic trap), while the desired peptide product moves through the main column displacing hydrophilic impurities. Isolation of the pre-column from the main column removes hydrophobic contaminants while the desired peptide product saturates the main column and displaces hydrophilic impurities off the column (Step 2). Product is recovered from the main column by isocratic and/or gradient elution (Step 3), and the pre-column is reconnected in series to allow hydrophobic impurities to be removed by gradient elution to regenerate the system (Step 4). The size of the pre-column is regulated by the amount of hydrophobic impurities in the sample, while the size of the main column is regulated by the amount of peptide product to be recovered. The use of a pre-column (enabling the operational division of hydrophobic impurity removal and product isolation) ensures that exact knowledge of the sample load is much less critical for successful separation than in the case of a single column. **Figure 52** illustrates the successful separation of the synthetic five-peptide mixture ( $S_1 - S_5$ ), where product P and impurity I are identified by subscript. Panel A shows the analytical gradient elution profile of the sample mixture while Panel B shows the SDC elution profile; Pools I and II and the pre-



column wash were subjected to gradient elution and the results are shown in Panels C, D, and E, respectively. All hydrophobic impurities are retained on the pre-column (along with a small amount of product); all hydrophilic impurities are displaced from the main column in Pool 1 (along with a very small amount of product), and pure product is recovered by displacement and by gradient elution of the main column in Pool II.

**Table 15      Sequences of Model System Synthetic Peptides**

| Standard       | Sequence |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |            |
|----------------|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------------|
| S <sub>1</sub> | R        | G | A | G | G | L | G | L | G | K -amide   |
| S <sub>2</sub> | Ac-      | R | G | G | G | L | G | L | G | K -amide   |
| S <sub>3</sub> | Ac-      | R | G | A | G | G | L | G | L | G K -amide |
| S <sub>4</sub> | Ac-      | R | G | V | G | G | L | G | L | G K -amide |
| S <sub>5</sub> | Ac-      | R | G | V | V | G | L | G | L | G K -amide |

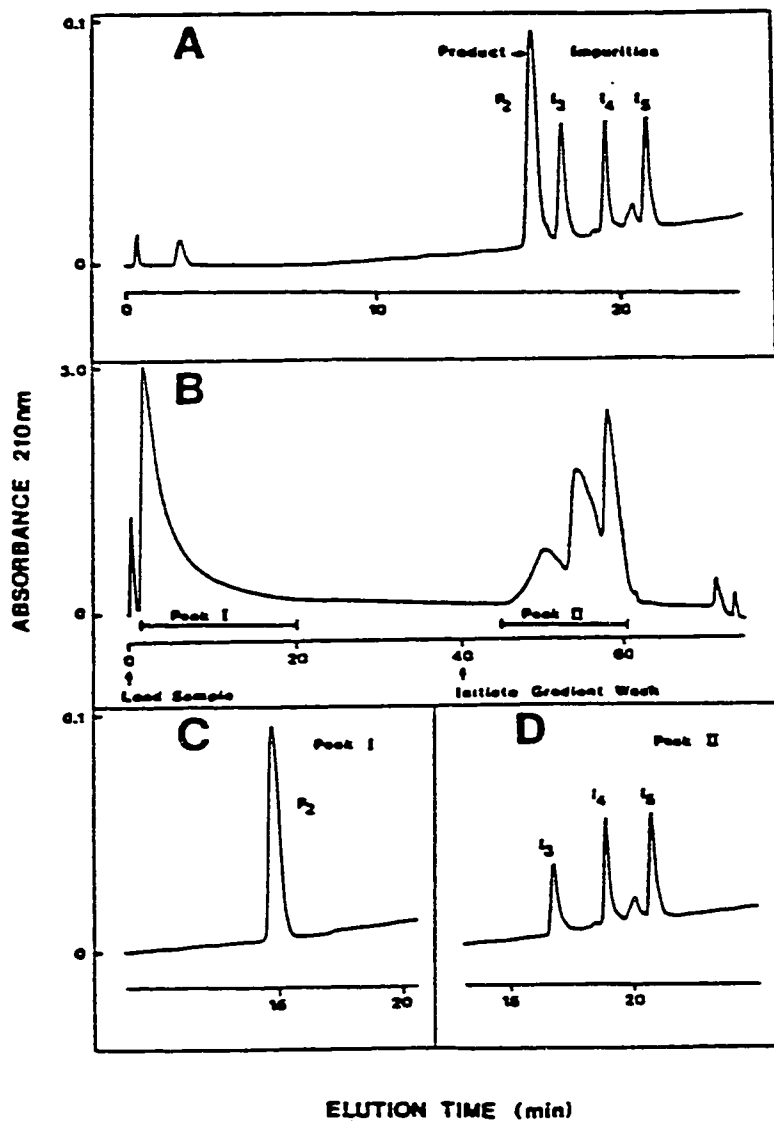
Ac = N<sup>α</sup>-acetyl; amide = C<sup>α</sup>-amide.

Variations in sequence are shown within the box.

**Figure 48 Separation by SDC of peptide product ( $P_2$ ) from hydrophobic peptide impurities ( $I_3$ ,  $I_4$ ,  $I_5$ )**

Panel A: Analytical gradient elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel B: SDC elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel C: Analytical gradient elution profile of Peak 1  
 Panel D: Analytical gradient elution profile of Peak 2

(Burke *et al.*, 1988)

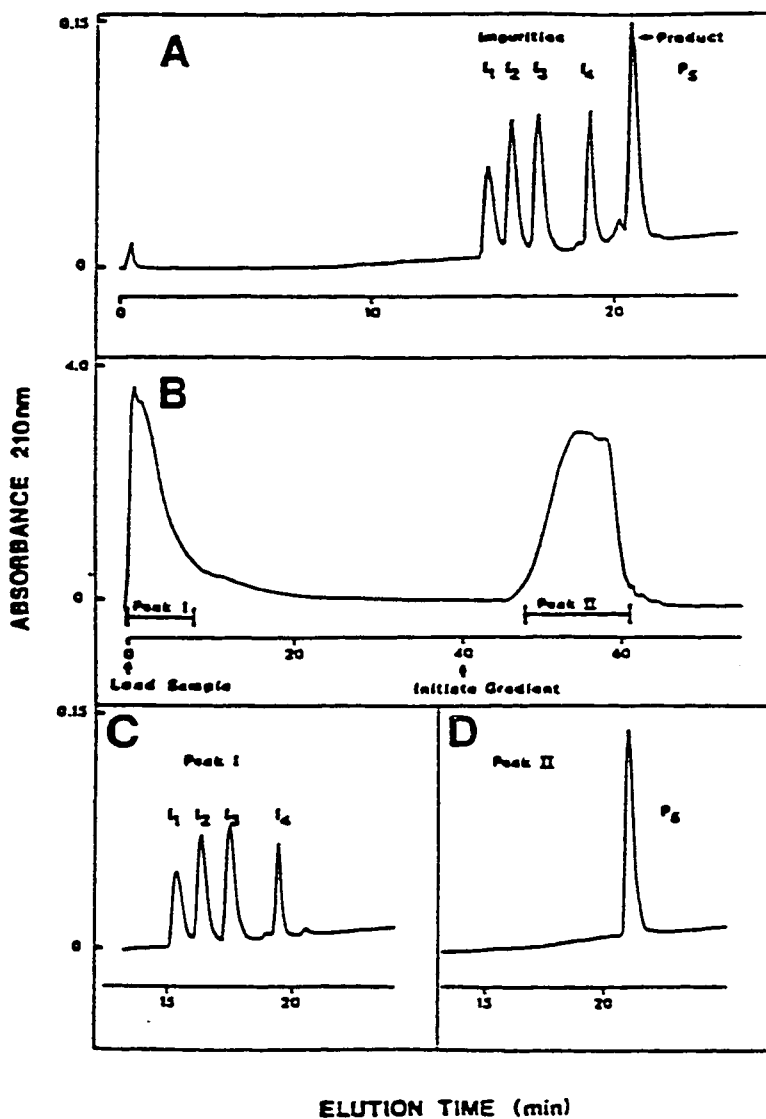


Column: Aquapore RP 300 C<sub>8</sub> (30 x 4.6 mm ID)  
 Conditions: Panel A: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile.  
 Panel B: Isocratic elution with 100% Eluent A for 40 min at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, followed by linear gradient elution at 1% B/min.  
 Panel C: Same conditions as Panel A.  
 Panel D: Same conditions as Panel A.

**Figure 49 Separation by SDC of peptide product (P<sub>5</sub>) from hydrophilic peptide impurities (I<sub>1</sub>, I<sub>2</sub>, I<sub>3</sub>, I<sub>4</sub>)**

Panel A: Analytical gradient elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel B: SDC elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel C: Analytical gradient elution profile of Peak 1  
 Panel D: Analytical gradient elution profile of Peak 2

(Burke *et al.*, 1988)

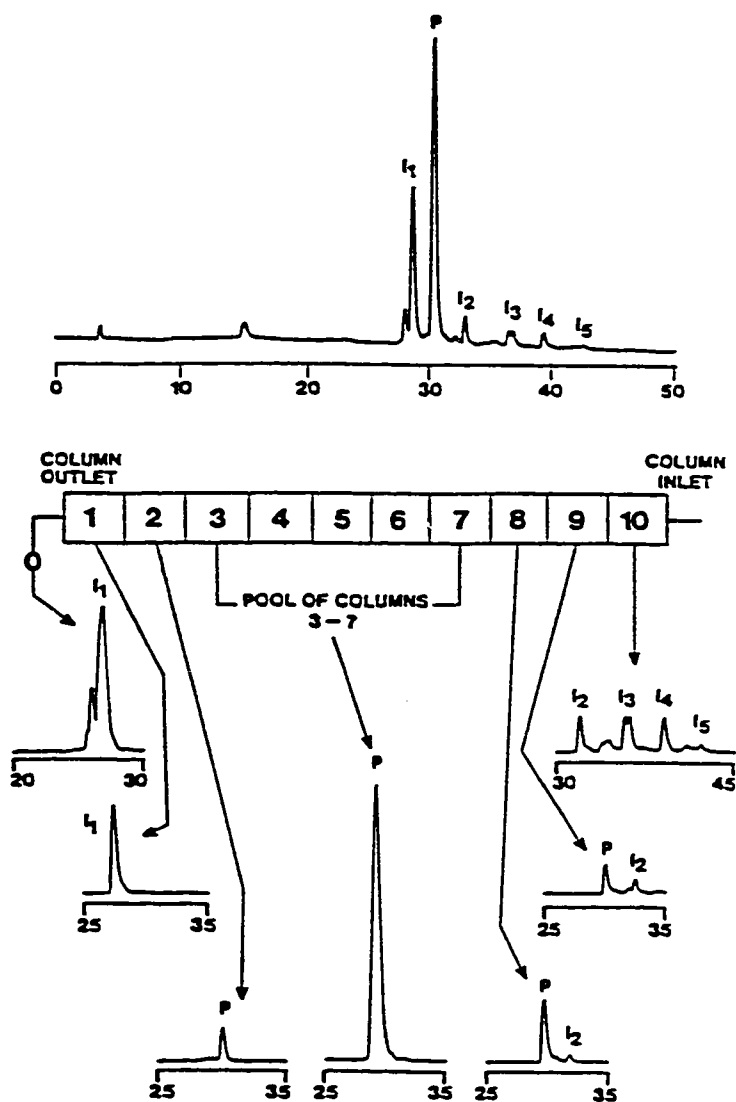


Column: Aquapore RP 300 Cg (30 x 4.6 mm ID)  
 Conditions: Panel A: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile.  
 Panel B: Isocratic elution with 100% Eluent A for 40 min at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, followed by linear gradient elution at 1% B/min.  
 Panel C: Same conditions as Panel A.  
 Panel D: Same conditions as Panel A.

**Figure 50 Multi-column separation by SDC of a synthetic decapeptide crude mixture**

Top: Analytical gradient elution profile of crude mixture  
 Middle: Schematic of 10-segment column  
 Bottom: Analytical gradient elution profiles of peptide components retained on each column segment and breakthrough (0)

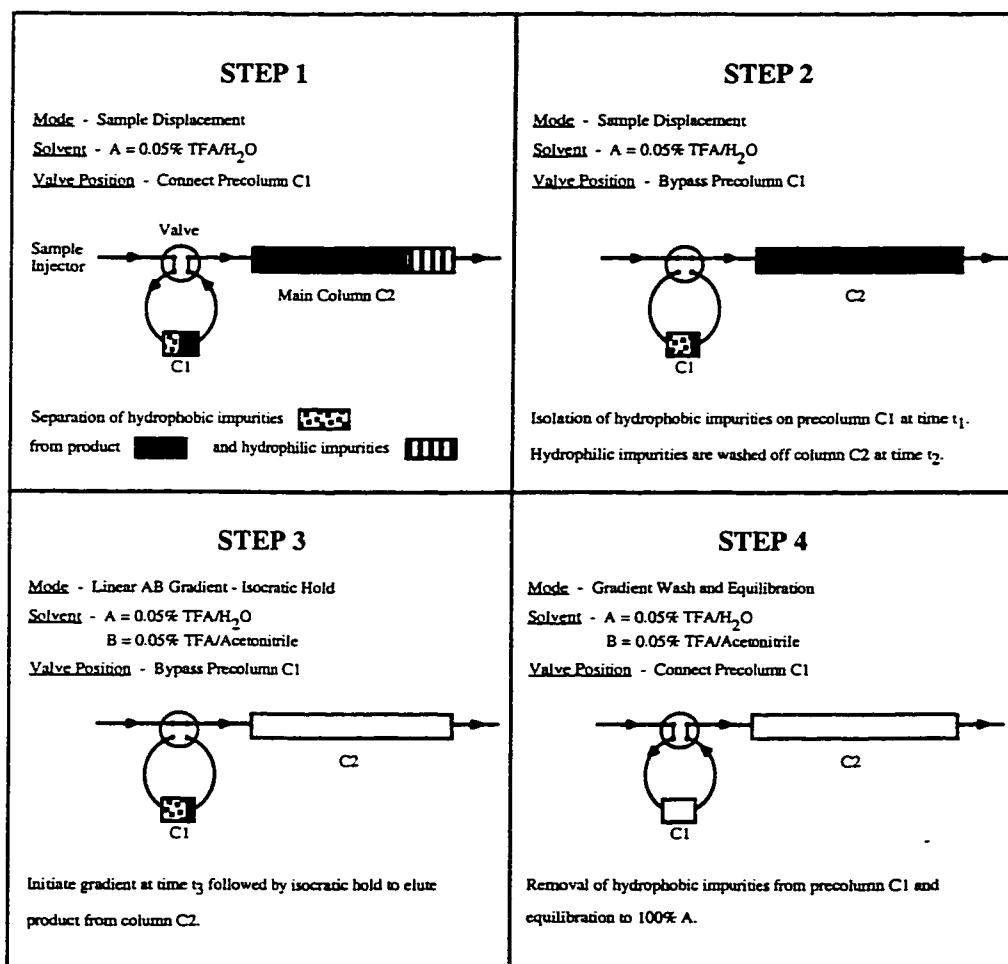
(Hodges *et al.*, 1991)



Column: Ten Aquapore RP 300 C8 (30 x 4.6 mm ID) column segments in series  
 Conditions: Top: Linear AB gradient (1% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.1% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile.  
 SDC: Isocratic elution with 100% Eluent A for 50 min at a flowrate of 0.5 mL/min, followed by isocratic elution of column segments at 25% Eluent A.  
 Bottom: Same conditions as Top.

## Figure 51 Two-Column SDC Approach

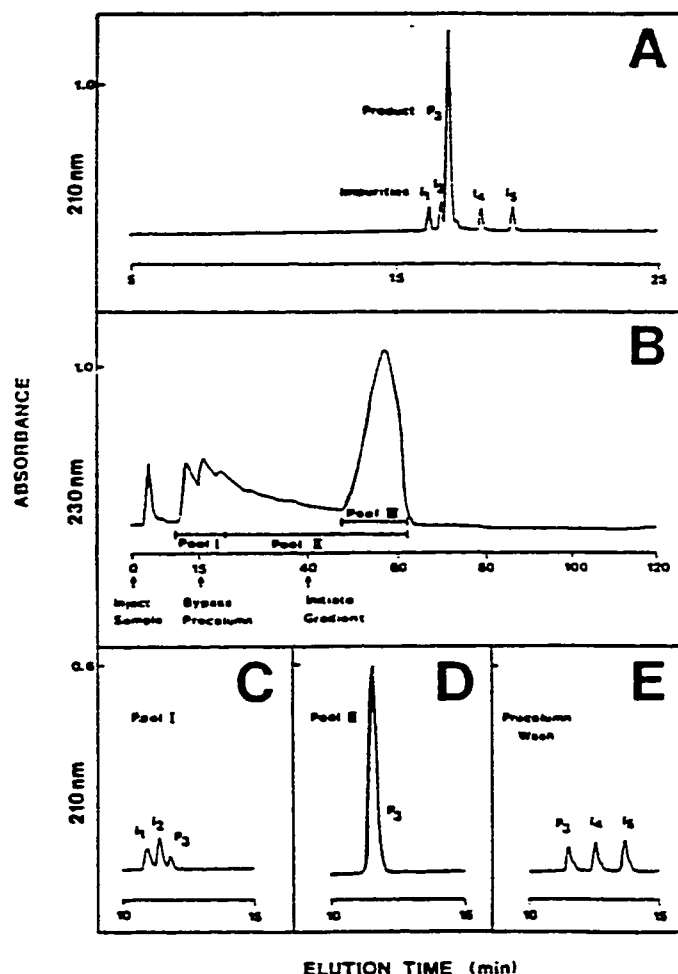
(Mant and Hodges, 1991)



**Figure 52 Two-column separation by SDC of peptide product ( $P_3$ ) from hydrophilic ( $I_1, I_2$ ) and hydrophobic ( $I_3, I_4$ ) peptide impurities**

Panel A: Analytical gradient elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel B: SDC elution profile of sample mixture  
 Panel C: Analytical gradient elution profile of Pool I  
 Panel D: Analytical gradient elution profile of Pool II  
 Panel E: Analytical gradient elution profile of components retained on pre-column

(Mant and Hodges, 1991)



Columns: Aquapore RP 300 C8 (4.6 mm ID): analytical, 30 mm length; pre-column, 2 x 30 mm length; main column, 220 mm length.

Conditions: Panel A: Linear AB gradient (2% B/min) at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile.

Panel B: Isocratic elution with 100% Eluent A for 40 min at a flowrate of 1 mL/min, followed by linear gradient elution at 1% B/min.

Panel C: Same conditions as Panel A.

Panel D: Same conditions as Panel A.

Panel E: Same conditions as Panel A.

### **6.3 Development of Multiple Peptide Purification**

The growing requirement for synthetic peptides in numbers and quantities suitable for large-scale research and development applications has been the stimulus for the development of efficient multiple peptide synthesis, and is now driving the demand for equally rapid and effective peptide purification. The last decade has seen the development of ultrafast HPLC in which peptide and protein separations are accomplished in under 5 minutes; microbore columns packed with non-porous or macroporous supports to reduce mass transfer resistance are able to operate at 5 - to 10 - fold normal flow velocities, and instrumentation optimized with respect to flow dynamics and minimal system volumes ensures rapid equilibration between sample injections. This technology has been designed specifically for on-line analysis of peptide or protein syntheses and is less appropriate for rapid peptide purification, since the need for tedious fraction collection and analysis remains and the reduction in actual separation time becomes less significant as the number of peptides undergoing purification rises. As seen with multiple peptide synthesis, there is a need for simultaneous multiple peptide purification rather than for improvements in the conventional serial approach. This may prove even more of a challenge, combining the need for operational simplicity with rapid purification of large numbers of crude peptides produced in varying yield and displaying a wide range of overall hydrophobicity.

One approach to achieving this goal involves the adaptation of SDC to the operating constraints of a simultaneous purification scheme. The prime consideration is the technical complexity imposed by maintaining equal flow distribution while operating parallel multiple columns at high pressure - clearly, a low pressure operation is desirable for simplicity and reliability. Practical application of SDC is possible only



if the benefits of high sample load, aqueous separation in the absence of an organic modifier, and the excellent resolving power of RP-HPLC, are retained under low pressure conditions. Successful development of this multiple purification scheme also requires a low-cost alternative to standard HPLC columns, and a ready-made solution may be found in the application of solid phase extraction (SPE) technology. A convenient, inexpensive, and time-saving alternative to liquid-liquid extraction traditionally used for cleaning and concentrating analytical samples, SPE offers a variety of bonded-phase silica-based packings (including reversed-phase) to extract contaminants or analytes of interest from liquid solution. Disposable polypropylene tubes containing these packings are designed to operate as extraction columns under low pressure conditions where sample solutions are passed through using either positive pressure or partial vacuum, and are ideally suited for adaptation to a low pressure version of SDC. The choice of SPE packed tube size depends on sample volume, amount of analyte of interest (or degree of contamination), strength of analyte/sorbent interaction, sample solvent strength, and sample complexity, factors also important to RP-HPLC. Customized arrangements are made possible by the use of stackable tubes, a range of tube sizes (1-12 mL, containing 100-2000 mg packing), sample reservoirs (20-50 mL capacity), and a variety of collection vessels (including test tubes, 1-10 mL volumetric flasks, autosampler and scintillation vials); most importantly, multiple extractions can be accommodated simultaneously by attaching 12-24 tubes to SPE vacuum manifolds fitted with collection vessel racks, providing a ready-made system for testing the potential of the low pressure chromatographic technique. Two SPE operational modes exist, depending upon the desired product: in clean-up applications, the sample is applied to the tube and analytes of interest are collected once they pass through the adsorbent, while contaminants retained on the packing can be disposed of with the tube; in concentration applications, contaminants

pass through the tube while analytes of interest are retained on the packing and are selectively eluted in a small volume of the appropriate solvent to increase their concentration. These two modes of operation are easily adapted to the hydrophobic trapping and product isolation operations of SDC required for peptide product separation from hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities.

## **Chapter 7     DESIGN OF A MULTIPLE PEPTIDE PURIFICATION SYSTEM**

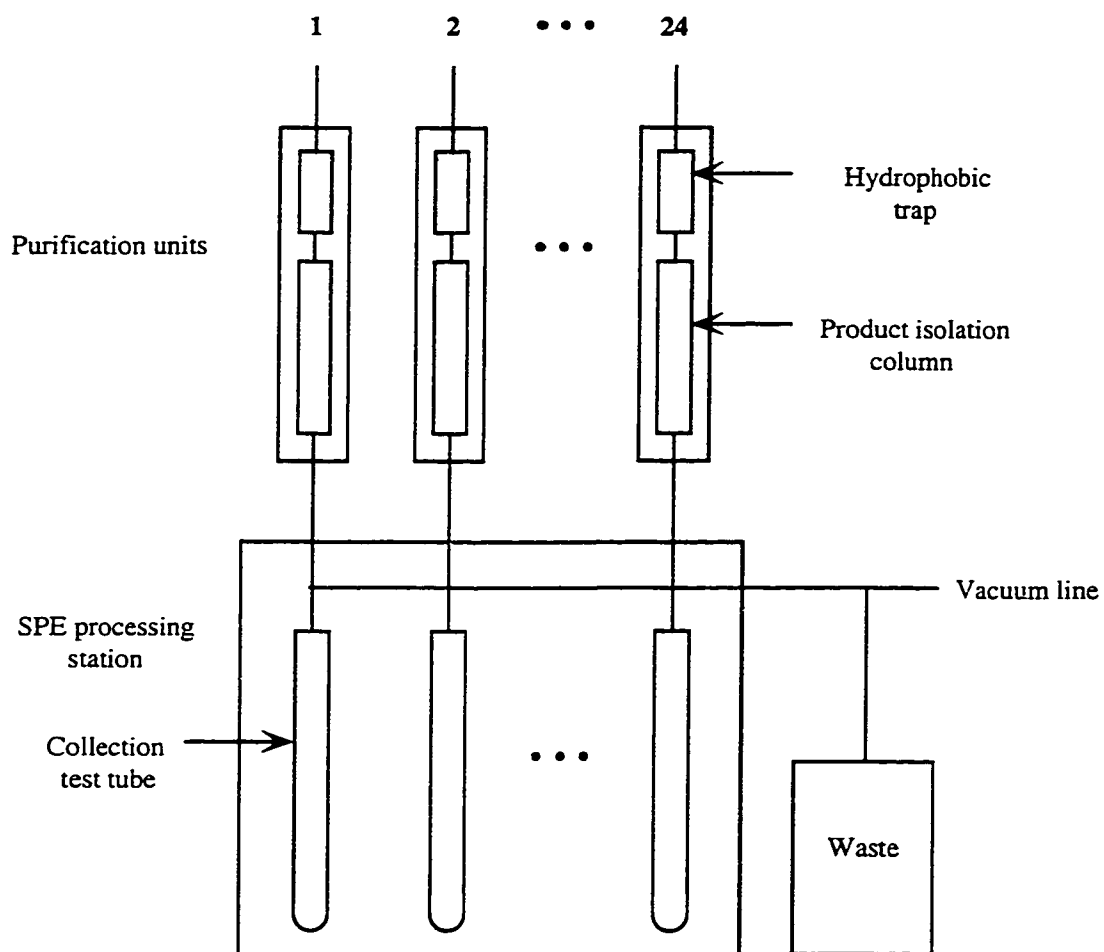
### **7.1    Design Proposal**

The combination of solid phase extraction (SPE) technology and sample displacement chromatography (SDC) methodology may provide a facile, rapid and cost-effective approach to multiple peptide purification. In the proposed purification system design presented in **Figure 53**, peptide purifications are performed in extraction columns consisting of disposable SPE tubes with silica-based reversed-phase packing. A low pressure version of SDC is achieved by adding crude peptide sample at overload conditions and applying vacuum to draw the solution through the packing. Product separation from hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities is accomplished in a two-stage purification unit which takes advantage of the two SPE operational modes: a short pre-column is used in a clean-up application, functioning as a trap for hydrophobic impurities, and a second longer column is used in a concentration application, functioning as a product isolation column. Crude peptide sample is loaded onto the purification unit in 100% aqueous solvent at overload conditions to achieve sample displacement mode (SDM) operation, and is washed through trap and product isolation column in sequence. Under ideal SDC conditions, hydrophobic impurities are retained on the trap, product and hydrophilic impurities are displaced from the trap to the product isolation column, and hydrophilic impurities are displaced off the product isolation column to waste; only product is retained on the main column. The product is subsequently removed from this column by isocratic elution with organic modifier, and is recovered from solution by lyophilization. This arrangement reduces the extensive fraction collection and analysis required by analytical RP-HPLC for product isolation to an absolute minimum: only three "fractions" exist, namely the hydrophobic trap, the

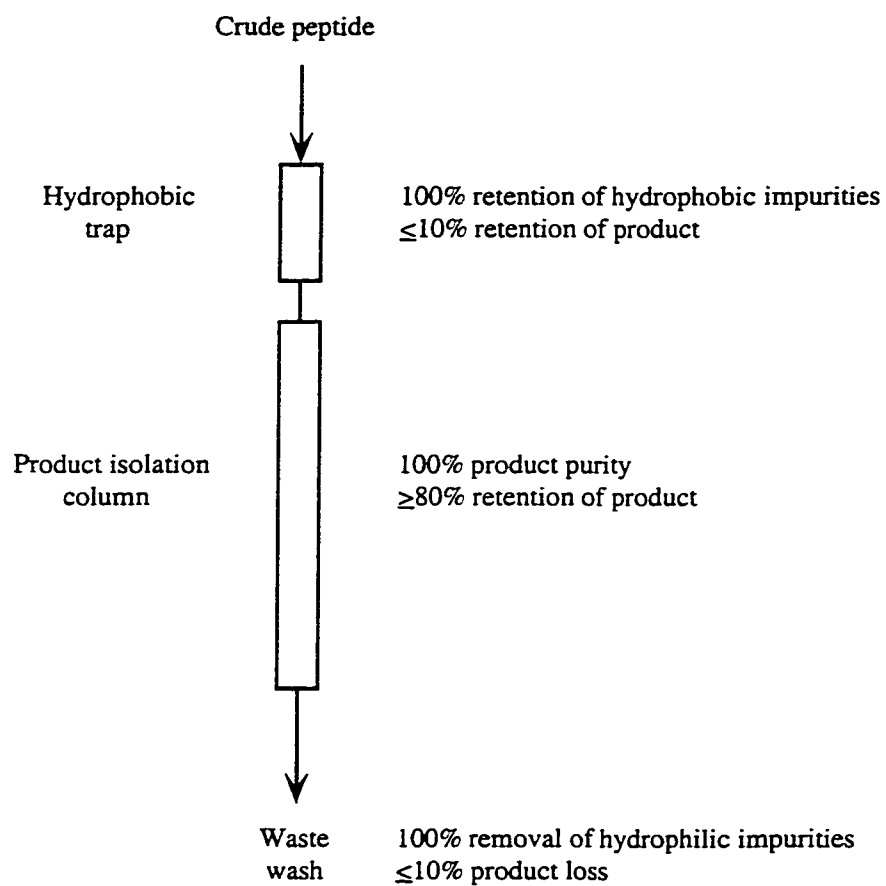
product isolation column, and the waste wash, and only the retained peptide on the product isolation column is collected. Simultaneous multiple purifications are carried out by mounting tubes on a standard SPE processing station connected to an in-house vacuum line. Lacking pumps, injectors, solvent mixing systems and the like, this purification system design uses minimal instrumentation compared with RP-HPLC, and avoids the need for high pressure containment.

Performance objectives of the two-stage purification unit are summarized in **Figure 54**, and are based on sacrificing some product yield to ensure product purity. The purification unit is designed to handle sample loads of up to 10 mg crude peptide and to recover at least 80% of the product, with no more than 10% losses to each of the hydrophobic trap and waste wash and the corresponding removal of essentially all hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities in these respective fractions.

**Figure 53      Schematic of Multiple Peptide Purification System**



**Figure 54 Performance Objectives of Two-Stage Purification Unit**



## 7.2 Purification System Development

The major challenge faced by this multiple peptide purification system lies in the variable nature of the crude peptides undergoing purification. Peptides show significant variation in overall hydrophobicity, and may be synthesized at various scales and exhibit a range of purity. For routine operation of a simultaneous purification system, it is necessary to use a standardized purification unit with the appropriate operating protocol(s) to achieve a specified product purity for a range of peptide hydrophobicities, crude loads and impurities.

### Purification Unit

The development of a standardized purification unit was based on sample loads of up to 10 mg in solution volumes of 1-5 mL, leaving larger loads to be handled by additional runs. Following the rule of thumb that sample size should be 5% of the packing bed (i.e. a 100 mg bed should retain 5 mg of sample), a 1 mL SPE tube designed to hold 100 mg of RP-packing and 1 mL sample volume was selected for use as both hydrophobic trap and product isolation column; the stackable nature of these tubes ensured a "building block" approach to development, should longer columns be required, and larger solution volumes could be accommodated using 20 mL sample reservoirs. The SPE tubes were filled manually with variable quantities of reversed-phase packing sandwiched between polyethylene frits during developmental work; column size was reported as mg packing, since constant column diameter was maintained. Trap and product isolation column were joined in series by means of an adapter to form a two-stage purification unit (**Figure 55**). Purification units were mounted on a 24-position vacuum-operated Vac Elut SPS24 SPE processing station (Analytichem International, USA) equipped with stainless steel sample delivery tips and a 13x100 mm test tube collection rack (**Photograph 16**).

## Operating Procedures

Preparation of the two-stage purification unit entails packing and conditioning of the column and assembly of the unit (outlined in **Figure 56**), while unit operation proceeds in discrete stages of sample loading, washing, and elution (summarized in **Figure 57**). Packing beds should not be allowed to dry out between stages of operation, nor should very large sample volumes be used since RP-packings gradually lose the solvent layer acquired through conditioning when excessive volumes of aqueous solutions are extracted. As described in **Table 16**, a manual packing procedure was developed for SPE tubes to produce trap and product isolation columns of variable packing bed length. Conditioning, sample loading, washing, and elution procedures were drawn from SPE methodology with adaptations from SDC in terms of solvent selection: sample loading and washing were performed with water, while elution was carried out with 50% acetonitrile in water (the level of organic modifier chosen to ensure recovery of all peptide components from trap and column). SPE operational procedures recommend slow sample passage (described as dropwise flow) for greatest extraction; for operation on the VacElut SPE processing station, this was translated into a vacuum-assisted flowrate of approximately 0.7 mL/min, slightly slower than the standard 1 mL/min flowrate used in RP-HPLC applications. A minimal trap wash into the main column was employed to ensure complete passage of the sample liquid (and unretained peptide components) through the trap, before disconnecting the trap from the column and continuing to wash the column. Trap and column wash volumes have been normalized in terms of trap and column volumes ( $V_{\text{trap}}$  and  $V_{\text{col}}$ ), defined later. The assembled purification unit was subject to an operational constraint under vacuum, arising from the sizeable dead space between the packing beds of the trap and product isolation column: bed solvation in the product isolation column could only be maintained during sample transport through the trap by



introduction of an aqueous solvent layer (approximately 350  $\mu\text{L}$ ) above the column bed before sample addition to the unit.

### **Synthetic Peptide Standards**

The synthetic peptide standards  $S_2$ ,  $S_4$ , and  $S_5$  were chosen to evaluate performance during development of the purification system, and their sequences are repeated in **Table 17**. As stated previously, these standards are quite closely related in hydrophobicity so as to provide a reasonable challenge to separation - between  $S_2$  and  $S_4$  there is an increase of 3 carbon atoms, and the same increase exists between  $S_4$  and  $S_5$ . Lys and Arg residues have been incorporated to provide net positive charge and improve peptide solubility. A mixture of these standards provides a simple representation of a crude peptide produced by solid-phase synthesis, in which a desired product ( $S_4$ ) is contaminated by single hydrophilic ( $S_2$ ) and hydrophobic ( $S_5$ ) impurities (**Figure 58**).

### **Packing**

Compared with typical silica-based RP-HPLC packings used for peptide/protein separations (characterized by a 300 Å pore size and a particle size range of 5-20  $\mu\text{m}$ ), RP-SPE packings possess a larger particle size (to enable fast drainage under positive pressure or partial vacuum conditions) and a smaller pore size (suitable for typical applications involving the extraction of smaller organic molecules). The peptide capacities of a selection of  $C_8$  and  $C_{18}$  RP-HPLC packings and a RP-SPE packing (described in **Table 18**) were compared by loading 5-7 mg of synthetic peptide standard  $S_5$  onto single-column purification units containing 100 mg of each packing, washing the columns with a single tube volume (i.e. 1 mL) of 0.05% aqueous TFA, and eluting peptide with a single tube volume of 0.05% TFA / 50% acetonitrile in water (results presented in **Figure 59**). Since the synthetic standards are small peptides, the reduced pore size of the RP-SPE packing had no adverse effect on peptide capacity.

There was no apparent correlation between peptide capacity and packing reversed-phase ligand (C<sub>8</sub> vs C<sub>18</sub>), particle size, or pore size (**Figure 60**), although probable differences between packings of the reversed-phase ligand density (or loading) of the particles could not be taken into account since this proprietary data was not available from all manufacturers. However, the high loading (and hence most hydrophobic nature) of the Kromasil packing undoubtedly prevented sufficient wetting under the conditions employed; the problem could have been overcome by sample addition in 1% aqueous CH<sub>3</sub>CN for best results, but this would have contravened the minimalistic conditions of SDC. As expected, particle size had a noticeable effect on sample flowrate through the column, but the SPE processing station was able to compensate for this effect by increasing the vacuum to maintain a constant flowrate of approximately 0.7 mL/min, slightly below the standard 1 mL/min used in HPLC applications. The Rainin and SynChrom RP-HPLC packings exhibited the highest peptide capacities under the conditions employed (6.0 mg /100 mg packing and 5.0 mg/100 mg packing, respectively); the Rainin packing was retained for further developmental work on the basis of highest capacity (under the given conditions), available supplies, and direct comparison with analytical RP-HPLC purification (since only the Rainin packing falls into the normal particle size range used in analytical RP-HPLC).

### **Operational Parameters**

Successful operation of the purification unit depends on three parameters: 1) an optimized trap-to-column packing ratio (to remove all hydrophobic impurities in the trap with minimal product loss and to ensure only the separation of product from hydrophilic impurities occurs within the product isolation column); 2) an optimized wash volume (sufficient for washing out all hydrophilic impurities from the product isolation column while retaining most of the product); and 3) a minimal elution volume

for the product isolation column. The effects of wash and elution volumes were investigated using 7 mg sample loads of S<sub>5</sub> peptide standard on a column containing 100 mg of Rainin packing. Peptide was slowly but steadily washed off the column as increasing volumes of wash were applied, demonstrating that product will be released from the packing even in the absence of a more hydrophobic displacer and proving the need to optimize wash volume in order to retain as much product as possible while still displacing all hydrophilic impurities (**Figure 61**). The effect of increasing elution volume on peptide recovery was negligible - only a small volume of eluent (1 mL of 50% acetonitrile in water) was required to remove all remaining peptide from the column, proving the minimal solvent requirements of this technique. The data also confirm an acceptable degree of accuracy for peptide determination by quantitative HPLC, since the total peptide load applied to the column was recovered from wash and eluent.

Working on the basis that trap size is determined by the quantity of hydrophobic impurities to be removed and product isolation column size by the quantity of product to be recovered, the initial estimate of trap-to-column packing ratio (outlined in **Table 19**) was based on previously described performance objectives and a 10 mg trap as the minimum acceptable for practical application. Wash and elution volumes were normalized as numbers of trap volumes ( $V_{\text{trap}}$ ) and column volumes ( $V_{\text{col}}$ ) to account for potential differences in scale, based on the total volume of the respective solvated packing beds (rather than the respective void volumes). This simple and rapid method avoided the need to measure void volumes of individual columns by using a packing volume constant (estimated as 205  $\mu\text{L}/100$  mg solvated Rainin packing in 0.05% aqueous TFA), and provided sufficient accuracy considering the variation encountered in manually packed columns.

Trap size was investigated using a 9:1 mixture of product S<sub>4</sub> to hydrophobic impurity S<sub>5</sub> (as determined by HPLC chromatogram peak area) at a sample load of 4 mg (slightly under the 5-10 mg design range to test scale-up at a later time), and the results are presented in **Figure 62** as % recovered peptide located in the trap. Only 68% of the hydrophobic impurity S<sub>5</sub> was retained by the 10 mg trap, indicating the need for a larger trap with excess capacity to allow S<sub>5</sub> displacement by product S<sub>4</sub> to proceed. A 1.5-fold increase in trap size to 15 mg packing permitted complete retention of the hydrophobic impurity, and the concomitant product loss of 14% constituted a negligible increase over the 11% product loss in the 10 mg trap. The importance of a trap wash (a minimal volume of 5 V<sub>trap</sub> = 155 µL) into the product isolation column to ensure complete passage of the sample liquid and unretained sample components was clearly demonstrated: a minimal wash of the 10 mg trap lowered the retained product in the trap from 17% to 11%, corresponding to a 35% reduction in product loss (6% / 17%) with virtually no change in hydrophobic impurity retention, and a wash of the optimally sized 15 mg trap provided an even more dramatic 46% decline in product loss (12% / 26%, corresponding to the decline in retained product on the trap from 26% to 14%) while completely retaining the hydrophobic impurity. The performance of the complete purification unit with optimized trap is presented in **Figure 63**, where the wash fraction is so-named due to the absence of hydrophilic impurities in the two-component sample. An 18% loss of product to the wash fraction was observed, suggesting a need to increase the size of the product isolation column.

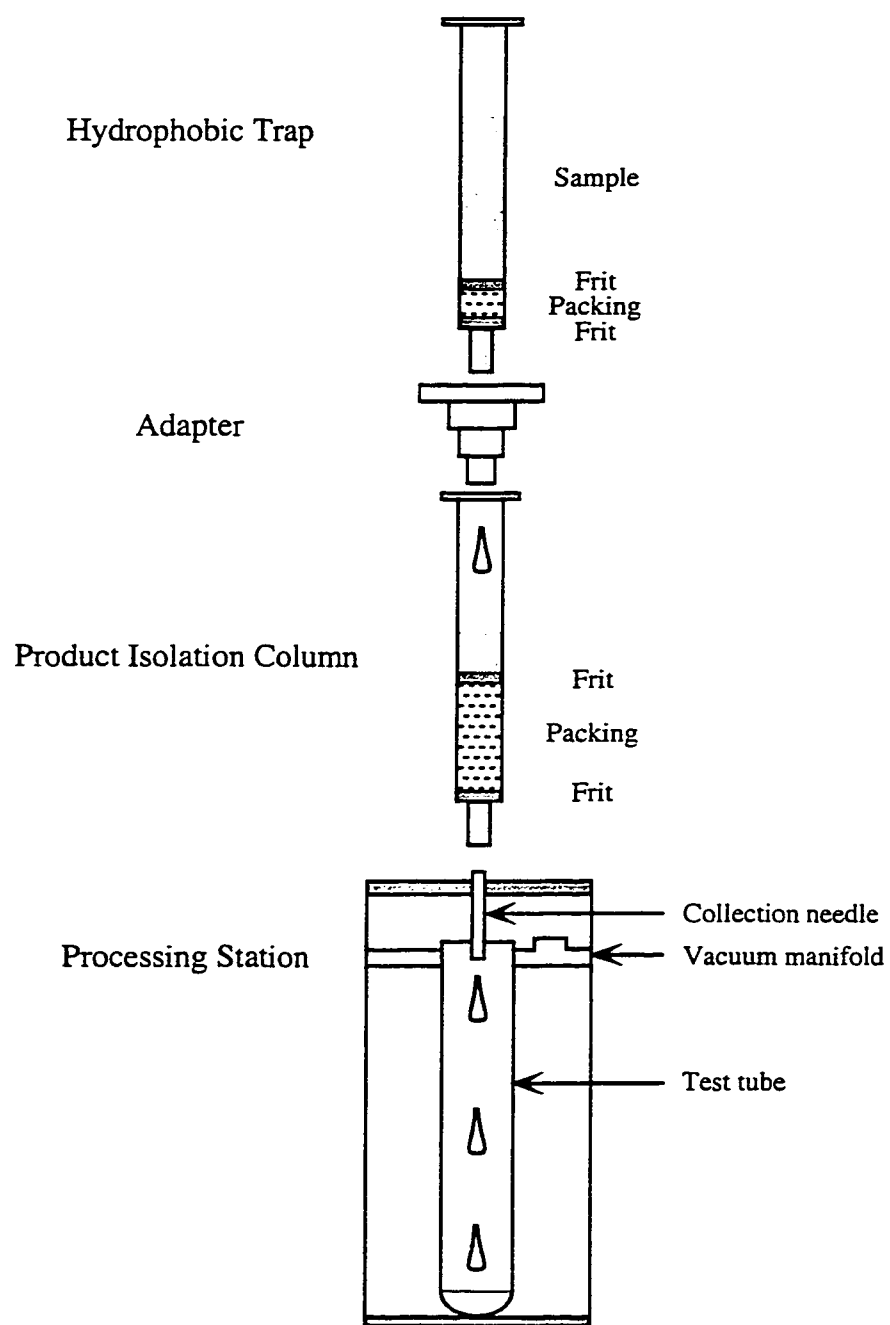
Sizing of the product isolation column was investigated using a 1:9:1 mixture of hydrophilic impurity S<sub>2</sub> to product S<sub>4</sub> to hydrophobic impurity S<sub>5</sub> (i.e. retaining the previous ratio of S<sub>4</sub> to S<sub>5</sub>, and adding S<sub>2</sub> to the sample in the same ratio as the hydrophobic impurity to examine washout demands on the column); results are presented in **Figure 64**. The 15 mg trap selected during trap sizing was successful at

achieving the performance objectives with the new three-component sample mixture, removing 100% of the hydrophobic impurity with only 14% product loss. The importance of a trap wash was once again clearly illustrated with the 56 mg product isolation column: 16% of the hydrophilic impurity remained in the trap in the absence of a trap wash and hydrophilic impurity contaminated the product isolation column, due to incomplete passage of the sample liquid through the trap. The trap wash also cut product loss on the trap in half (from 33% to 14%, close to the 10% performance objective) by extending  $S_5$  displacement of  $S_4$ , and this product in turn displaced all hydrophilic impurity from the product isolation column. In the process of achieving complete hydrophilic impurity removal from the 56 mg column, an 11% product loss to the wash was observed (essentially achieving the 10% performance objective), and the 74% product recovery was within reach of the performance objective of 80%. As seen in **Figure 65**, lengthening the product isolation column improved product recovery, although an almost 2.25-fold increase in column size (from 56 mg to 125 mg packing) achieved only a 1.12-fold increase in product recovery (from 74% to 83%). The unexpected presence of approximately 15%  $S_5$  in the 100 mg and 125 mg columns suggests that too large a wash (i.e. more than the designated  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$ ) was used on the two 15 mg traps before disconnecting them from their product isolation columns, or possibly a slightly smaller amount of packing was present in these traps. Complete removal of hydrophilic impurity appeared possible provided sufficient wash volume was used (in the case of the 100 mg column size,  $S_2$  remained in the column due to incomplete washthrough of  $S_4$  and the corresponding displacement of  $S_2$ ). Acting on the assumption that the length of the product isolation column could be manipulated to achieve complete removal of the hydrophilic impurity in a reasonable volume of wash before the first loss of product, thereby maximizing both product purity and product recovery, the patterns of hydrophilic impurity and product washout over the given

range of column size were monitored and have been presented in **Figure 66**. In the case of the smallest column (i.e. 56 mg packing), 9% of the hydrophilic impurity emerged with the sample solution in the absence of a column wash, and product loss from the column occurred almost immediately (a 4% loss with the application of a wash volume of only  $2 V_{col}$ ). The breakthrough of  $S_2$  and its steep rate of removal indicated the hydrophilic impurity had been displaced to the end of the column by product during sample loading, and only minimal washing ( $7 V_{col}$ ) was required to finish the separation. This represents the minimum column required for purification. The hydrophilic impurity was concentrated by a factor of 1.33-fold greater than in the sample (having been applied in 1 mL and collected in 0.75 mL), illustrating a feature of frontal chromatography. The gradual rate of product loss reflects adsorption/desorption down the column in the absence of a stronger displacer component. Increasing the column size beyond the minimum (from 75 mg to 125 mg) resulted in a much more gradual and roughly constant rate of removal of the hydrophilic impurity in the wash as  $S_2$  distributed through the column was driven out by the product, and subsequent development with a sufficiently long column (i.e. 100 mg) of a lag before  $S_2$  emergence in the wash. Run times were relatively short, as all hydrophilic impurity was removed from even the 125 mg column after  $60 V_{col}$ , corresponding to a run time of approximately 22 minutes at an average flowrate of 0.7 mL/min. Choosing a trap-to-column packing ratio greater than 15:75 did not provide a greater degree of separation within the product isolation column for the three-component sample mixture, but a larger ratio may be beneficial when dealing with more complex sample mixtures (requiring the separation of more than two components in the column) or with less hydrophobic sample mixtures (which would pass more rapidly through the column and might not achieve the desired degree of separation before emerging in the wash). On this basis, the 15:100 trap-to-column packing ratio was chosen for future work.

The ability to scale trap and column sizes for sample load based on maintaining a constant trap-to-column packing ratio was tested using 5 mg and 10 mg loads of the 1:9:1 three-component sample mixture (corresponding to 1.25- and 2.5-fold increases in load). This basis for scale-up from the original 4 mg sample load was very successful, as the 15:100 trap-to-column packing ratio provided nearly identical system performance when trap and column sizes were linearly increased to 19:125 and 38:250 for the 5 mg and 10 mg sample loads, respectively (**Figure 67**). Product recovery was maintained at 82-84%, with trap and wash losses of 9-11% and 7-8% respectively, and in each case all hydrophobic impurity was removed by the trap. The amount of washing required to achieve this performance was similar: the 10 mg load required a 1.4-fold greater proportionate wash (an additional 19  $V_{col}$ ). This reflected a somewhat slower rate of  $S_2$  removal from the larger column as seen in **Figure 68**; in addition, the lag before  $S_2$  emergence in the wash was less well defined.

**Figure 55      Schematic of Two-Stage Purification Unit**

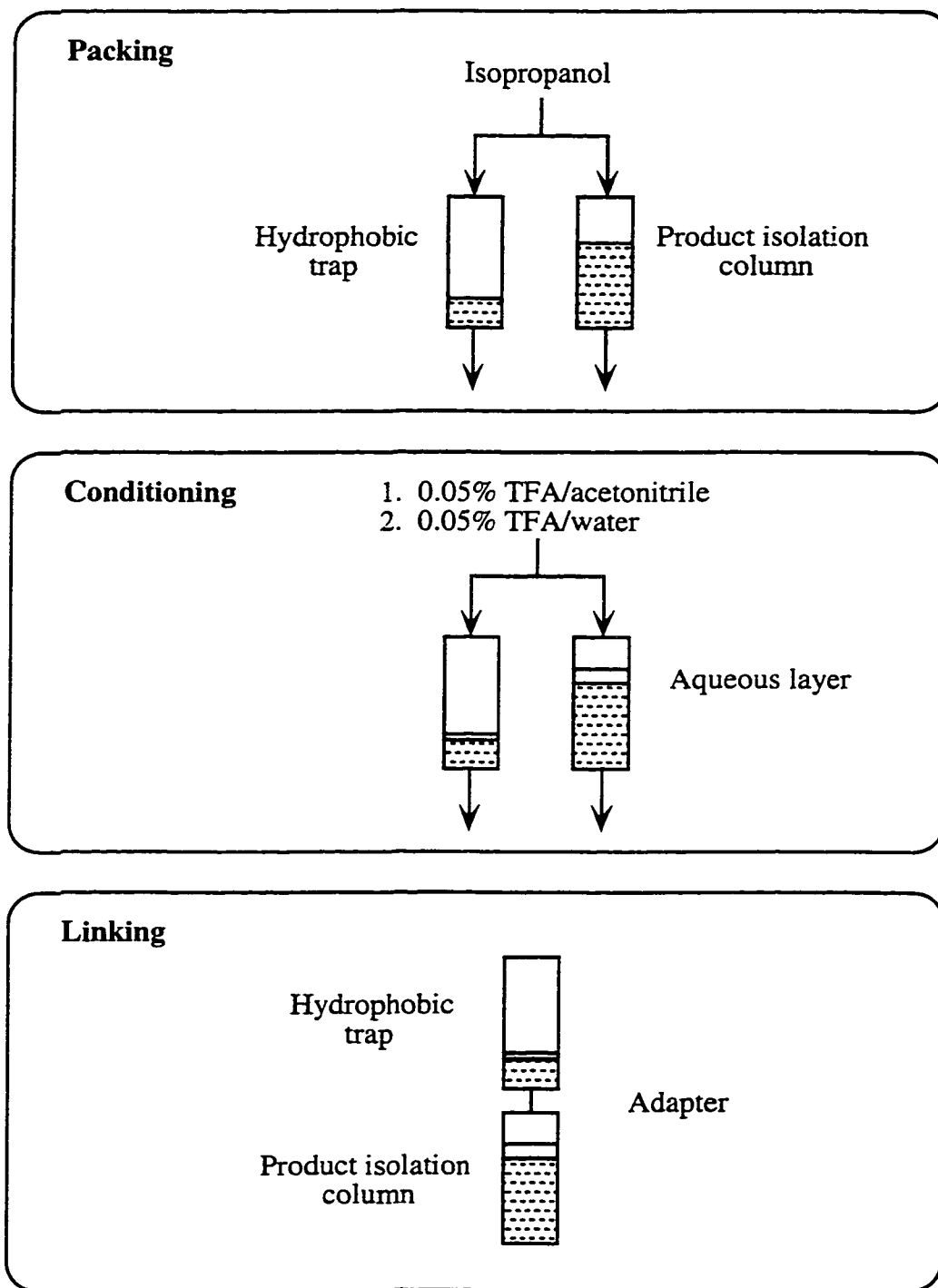




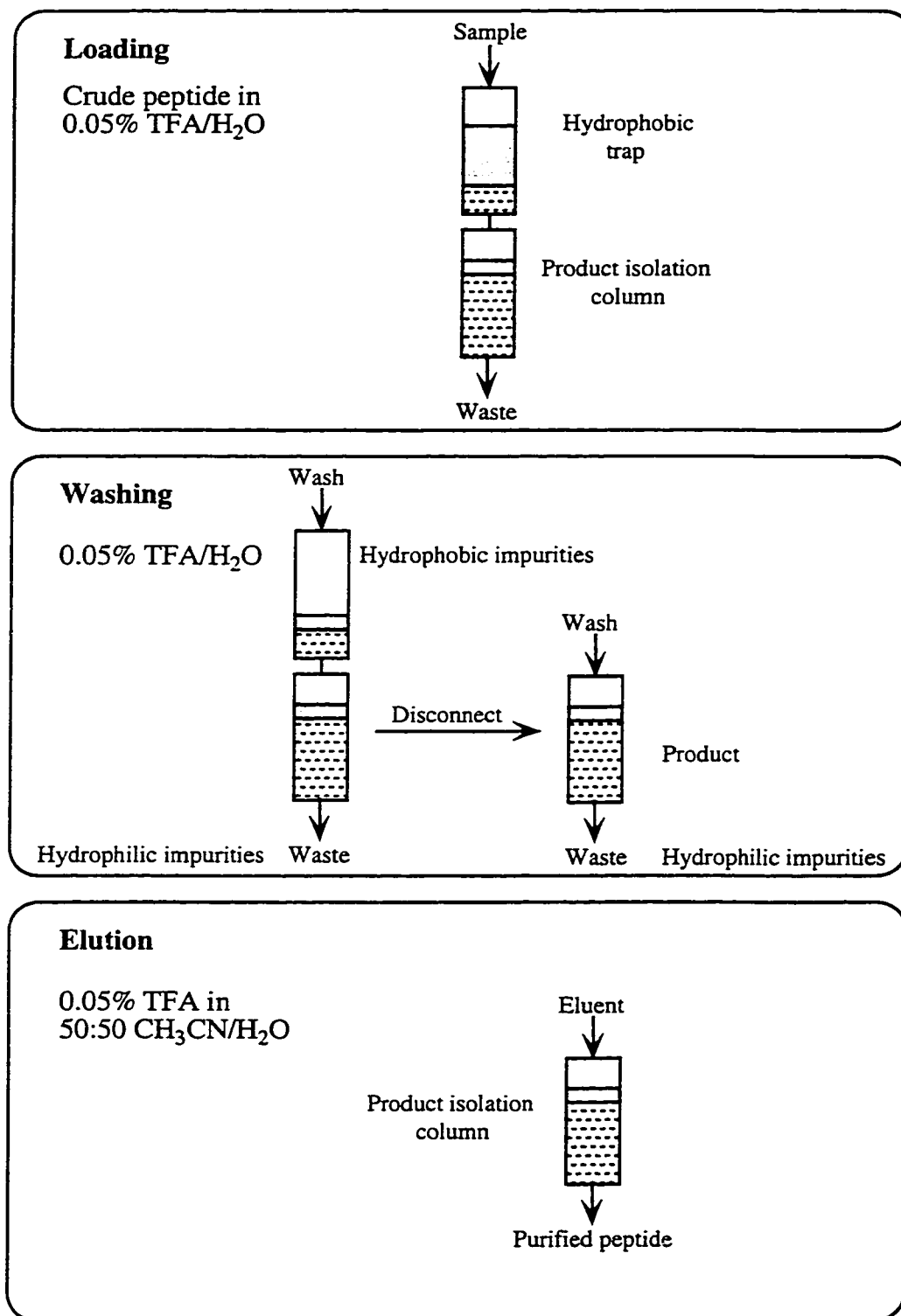
**Photograph 16      VacElut SPS24 SPE processing station**



**Figure 56      Preparation of Purification Unit**



**Figure 57      Operation of Purification Unit**



**Table 16 Purification Unit Packing and Operational Procedures**

| Packing Procedure   | Operational Procedures   |
|---|--|
| <p>Insert bottom frit into SPE tube.</p> <p>Add desired quantity of dry packing to SPE tube;<br/>Wash down with isopropanol to form a bed.</p> <p>Insert top frit to restrain packing bed.</p> <p>Wet packing with one <math>V_{\text{tube}}</math> of isopropanol;<br/>Drain under minimal vacuum, retaining 1 mm liquid above top frit to avoid draining bed.</p> <p>Manually compress bed to remove air pockets and distribute packing evenly.</p> | <p><b>Conditioning</b></p> <p>1 <math>V_{\text{tube}}</math> of <math>\text{CH}_3\text{CN}</math> to establish solvent layer.<br/>1 <math>V_{\text{trap}}</math> or 1 <math>V_{\text{col}}</math> of 0.05% TFA/<math>\text{H}_2\text{O}</math> to equilibrate.</p> <p>Retain 1 mm liquid above trap packing bed;<br/>Retain 350 <math>\mu\text{L}</math> liquid above product isolation bed.</p> |
|   | <p><b>Loading</b></p> <p>Sample dissolved in 0.05% TFA/<math>\text{H}_2\text{O}</math></p> <p>Dropwise flow (approximately 0.7 mL/min);<br/>Retain liquid 1 mm above packing bed.</p>  |
|   | <p><b>Washing</b></p> <p>0.05% TFA/<math>\text{H}_2\text{O}</math></p> <p>Minimal wash of trap into column.<br/>Disconnect trap from product isolation column.</p> <p>Optimal wash of product isolation column;<br/>Retain 1 mm liquid above packing.</p>  |
|   | <p><b>Elution</b></p> <p>50% <math>\text{CH}_3\text{CN}</math> / 0.05% TFA / <math>\text{H}_2\text{O}</math></p> <p>Minimal volume elution of product isolation column.<br/>Drain column completely.</p>   |

**Table 17      Sequences of Synthetic Peptide Standards**

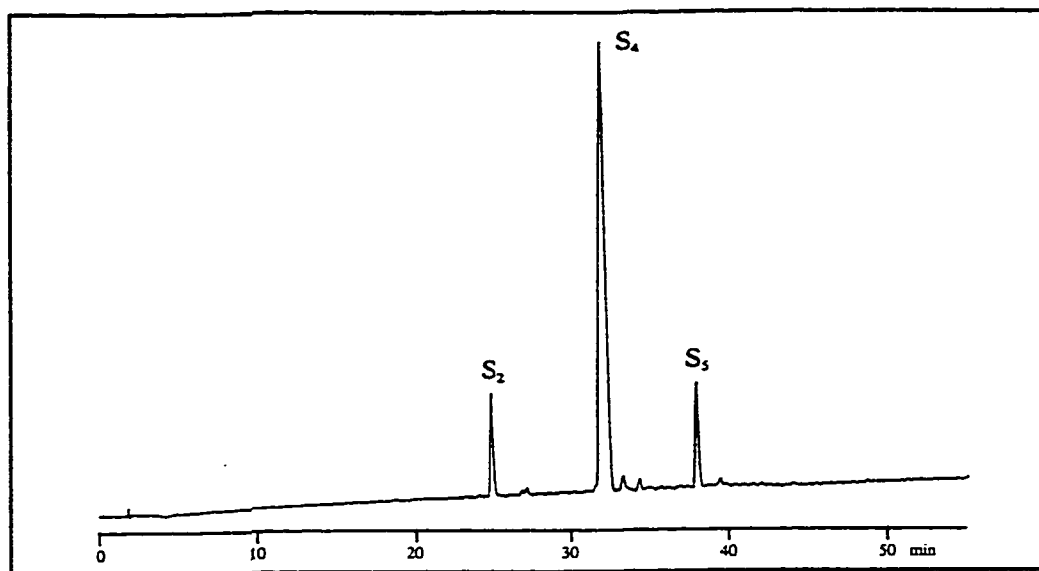
| Standard | Sequence   |
|----------|--|
| $S_2$    | Ac- R G <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">G G</span> G L G L G K -amide |
| $S_4$    | Ac- R G <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">V G</span> G L G L G K -amide |
| $S_5$    | Ac- R G <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">V V</span> G L G L G K -amide |

Ac = N<sup>α</sup>-acetyl; amide = C<sup>α</sup>-amide.

Variations in sequence are shown within the box.

**Figure 58**      **RP-HPLC of synthetic peptide standards S<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>4</sub>, and S<sub>5</sub>**  
**(1:9:1 sample mixture)**

Sample mixture: S<sub>4</sub> = product; S<sub>2</sub> = hydrophilic impurity; S<sub>5</sub> = hydrophobic impurity.

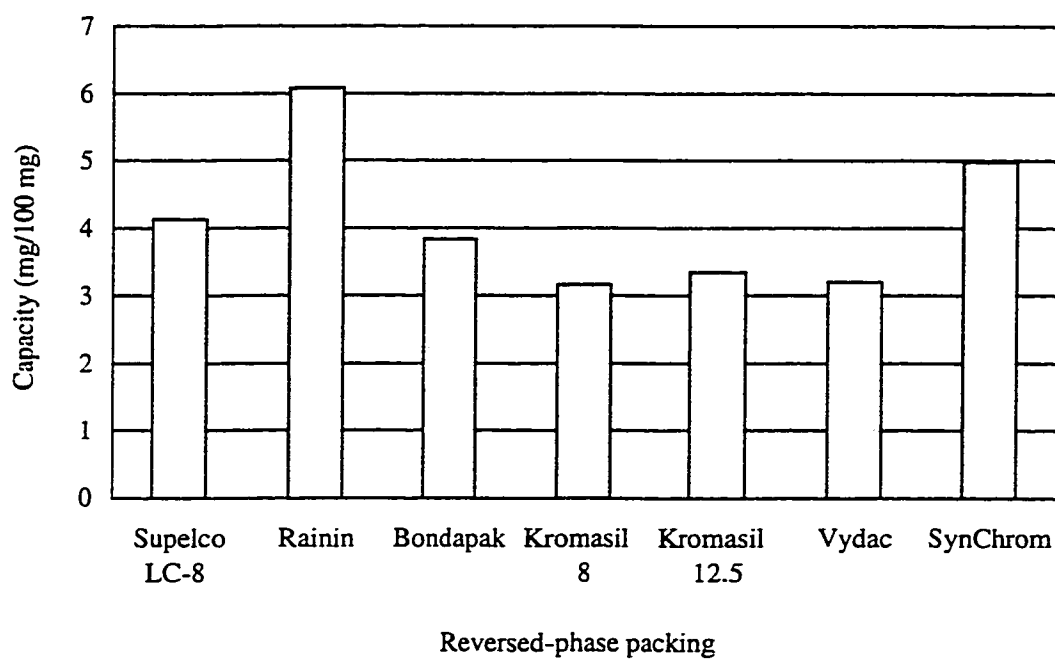


Column:            Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)  
Conditions:       Linear AB gradient (0.5% B/min) at a flowrate of 1.0 mL/min, Eluent A  
                         is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

**Table 18                      Selected Silica-Based Reversed-Phase Packings**

| <b>Packing</b> | <b>Separation technique</b> | <b>Ligand</b> | <b>Particle Size (μm)</b> | <b>Pore Size (Å)</b> |
|----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Rainin         | HPLC                        | C8            | 12                        | 300                  |
| Bondapak       | HPLC                        | C8            | 15-20                     | 300                  |
| Kromasil-8     | HPLC                        | C18           | 8                         | 300                  |
| Kromasil-12.5  | HPLC                        | C18           | 12.5                      | 100                  |
| Vydac          | HPLC                        | C18           | 20-30                     | 300                  |
| SynChrom       | HPLC                        | C18           | 30                        | 300                  |
| Supelco LC-8   | SPE                         | C8            | 40                        | 300                  |

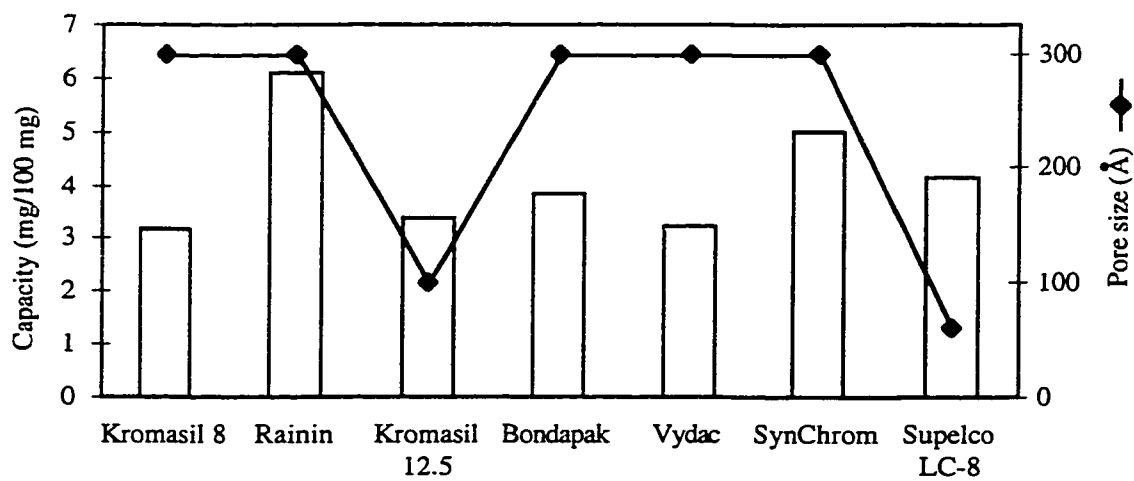
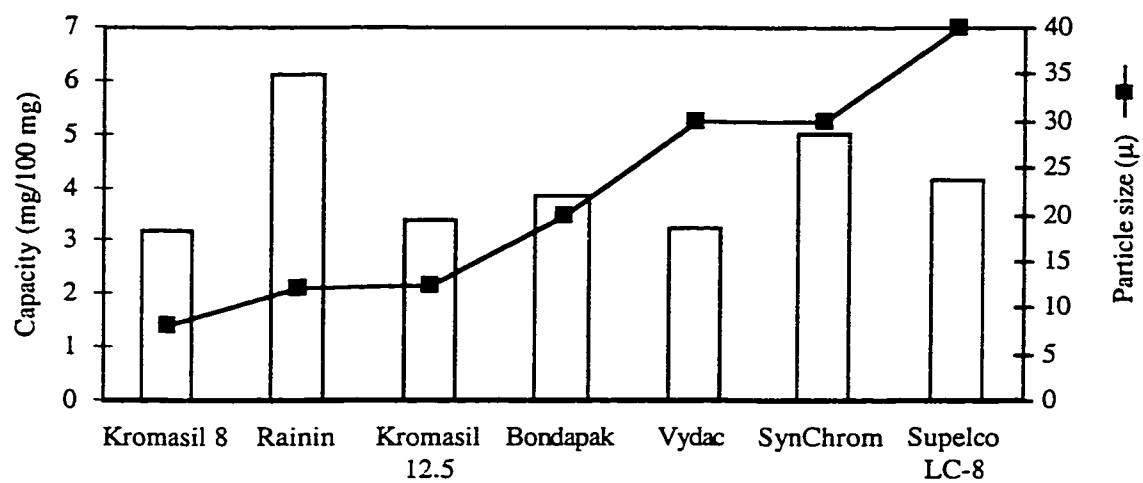
**Figure 59 Capacity Rating of Selected Reversed-Phase Packings**



Packing capacity defined as mg peptide retained/100 mg packing using  $S_5$  standard in 0.05% aqueous TFA.

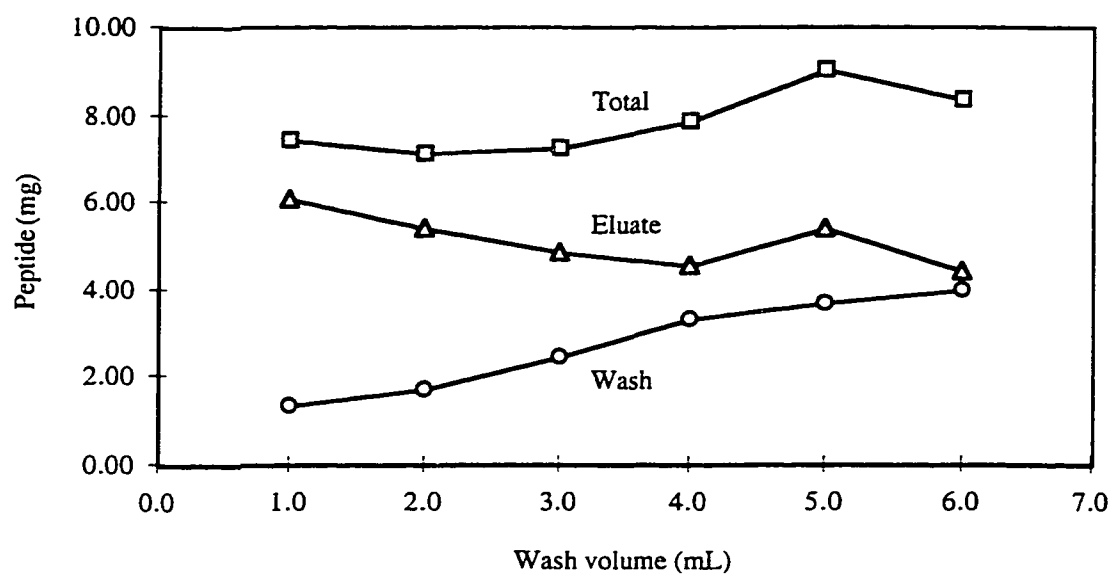


**Figure 60**      **Variation of Packing Capacity with Particle and Pore Size**



Reversed-phase packing

**Figure 61**      **Effect of Wash Water on Peptide Retention by Packing**



Column: 100 mg of Rainin packing  
Load: 7 mg of peptide standard S<sub>5</sub>  
Wash: 0.05% aqueous TFA  
Eluate: 50% acetonitrile / 0.05% aqueous TFA

**Table 19 Initial Estimate of Trap-to-Column Packing Ratio**

Performance objectives modified to account for absence of hydrophilic impurity S<sub>2</sub>

|                                 |   |   |
|---------------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Crude peptide sample</b>     | 9:1 S <sub>4</sub> to S <sub>5</sub>                          | Trap size set at 10 mg Rainin packing (i.e. minimum practical for assembly and operation)<br><br>Peptide retention = 10 mg packing x 6.0 mg peptide/100 mg packing = 0.6 mg peptide   |
| <b>Hydrophobic trap</b>         | 100% retention of S <sub>5</sub><br>5% loss of S <sub>4</sub> | 100% S <sub>5</sub> + 5% S <sub>4</sub> = 0.6 mg<br><br>Sample load: S <sub>4</sub> = 3.72 mg<br>S <sub>5</sub> = 0.41 mg<br>S <sub>4</sub> + S <sub>5</sub> = 4.13 mg  |
| <b>Product isolation column</b> | 90% retention of S <sub>4</sub>                               | Estimated product isolation column size based on desired product retention<br><br>Product retention = 90% S <sub>4</sub> = 3.35 mg<br><br>Column size = 90% S <sub>4</sub> / (6.0 mg peptide/100 mg packing)<br>= 56 mg packing |

**Trap:Column packing ratio estimate = 10 mg: 56 mg**

**Figure 62      Effect of Trap Size on Trap Performance  
(Two Component Sample)**

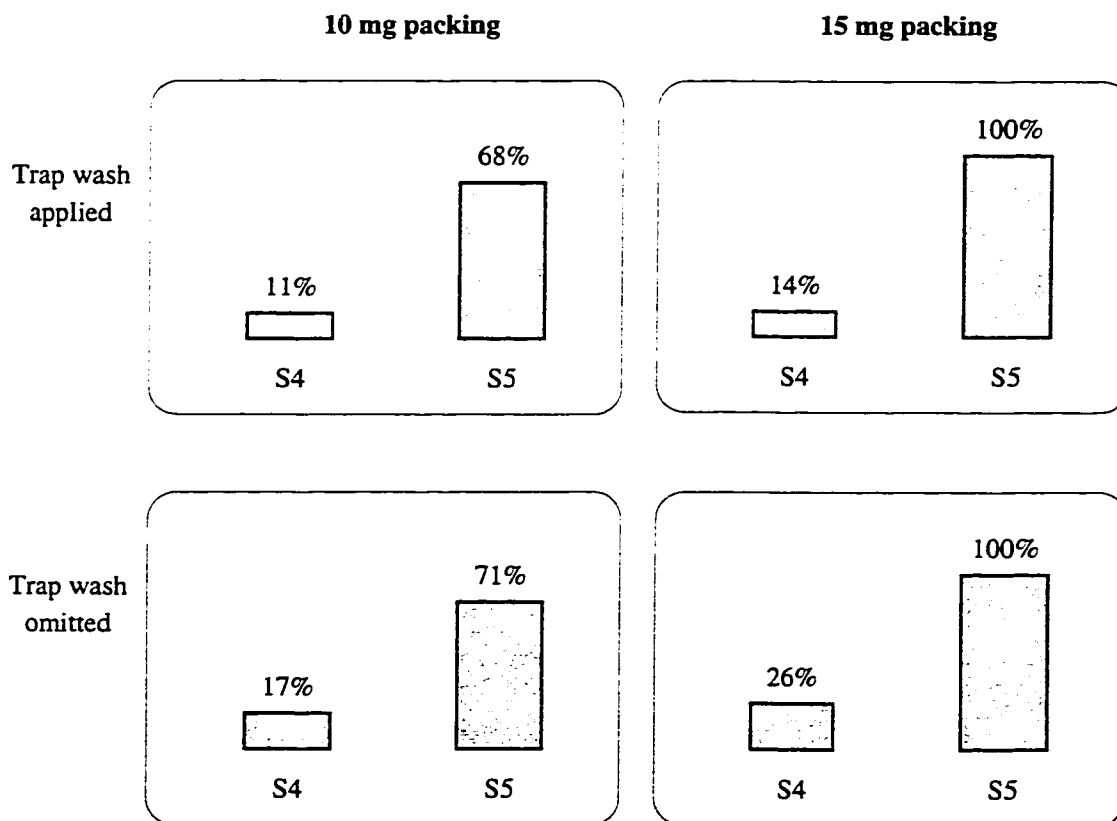
Sample load = 4 mg.

$S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 9:1.

$S_4$  = product,  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

Trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$       (100  $\mu\text{L}$  for 10 mg packing  
155  $\mu\text{L}$  for 15 mg packing)

Retention of sample components on trap



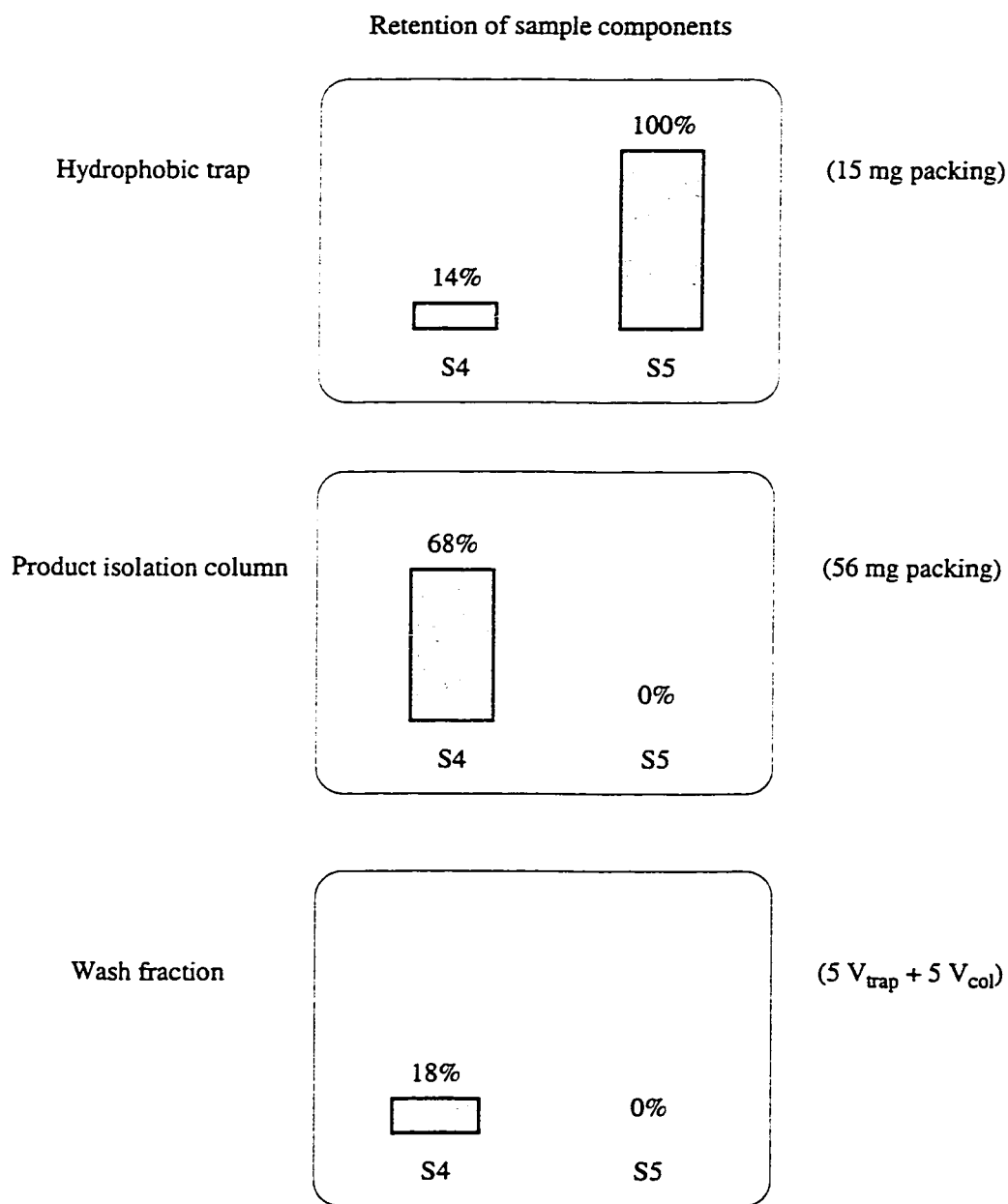
**Figure 63 Purification Unit Performance with Optimized Trap  
(Two-Component Sample)**

Sample load = 4 mg.

$S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 9:1.

$S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

Trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$  (155  $\mu\text{L}$ ); column wash =  $5 V_{\text{col}}$  (575  $\mu\text{L}$ ).



**Figure 64 Purification Unit Performance with Optimized Trap  
(Three Component Sample)**

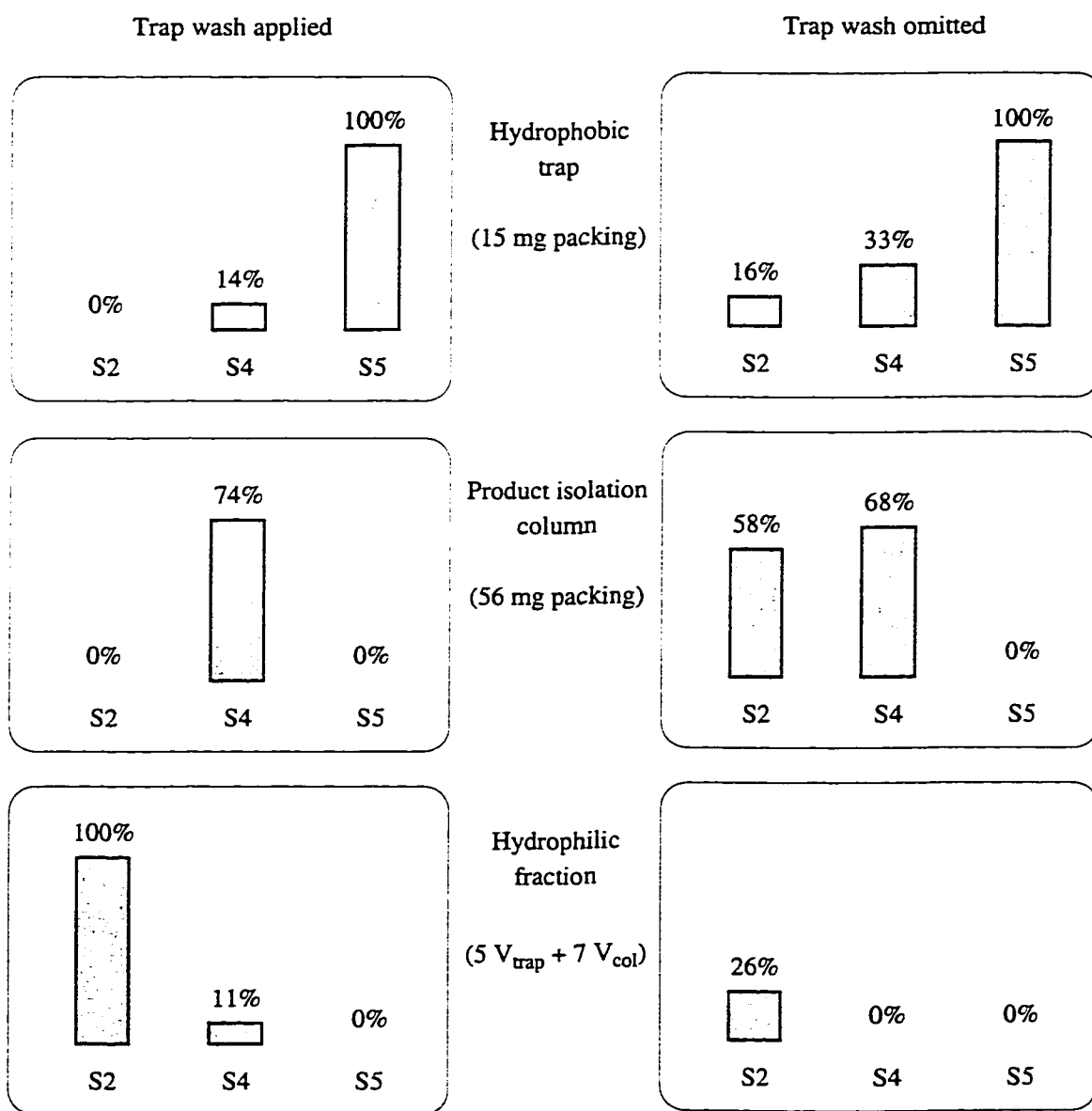
Sample load = 4 mg.

$S_2$  to  $S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 1:9:1.

$S_2$  = hydrophilic impurity;  $S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

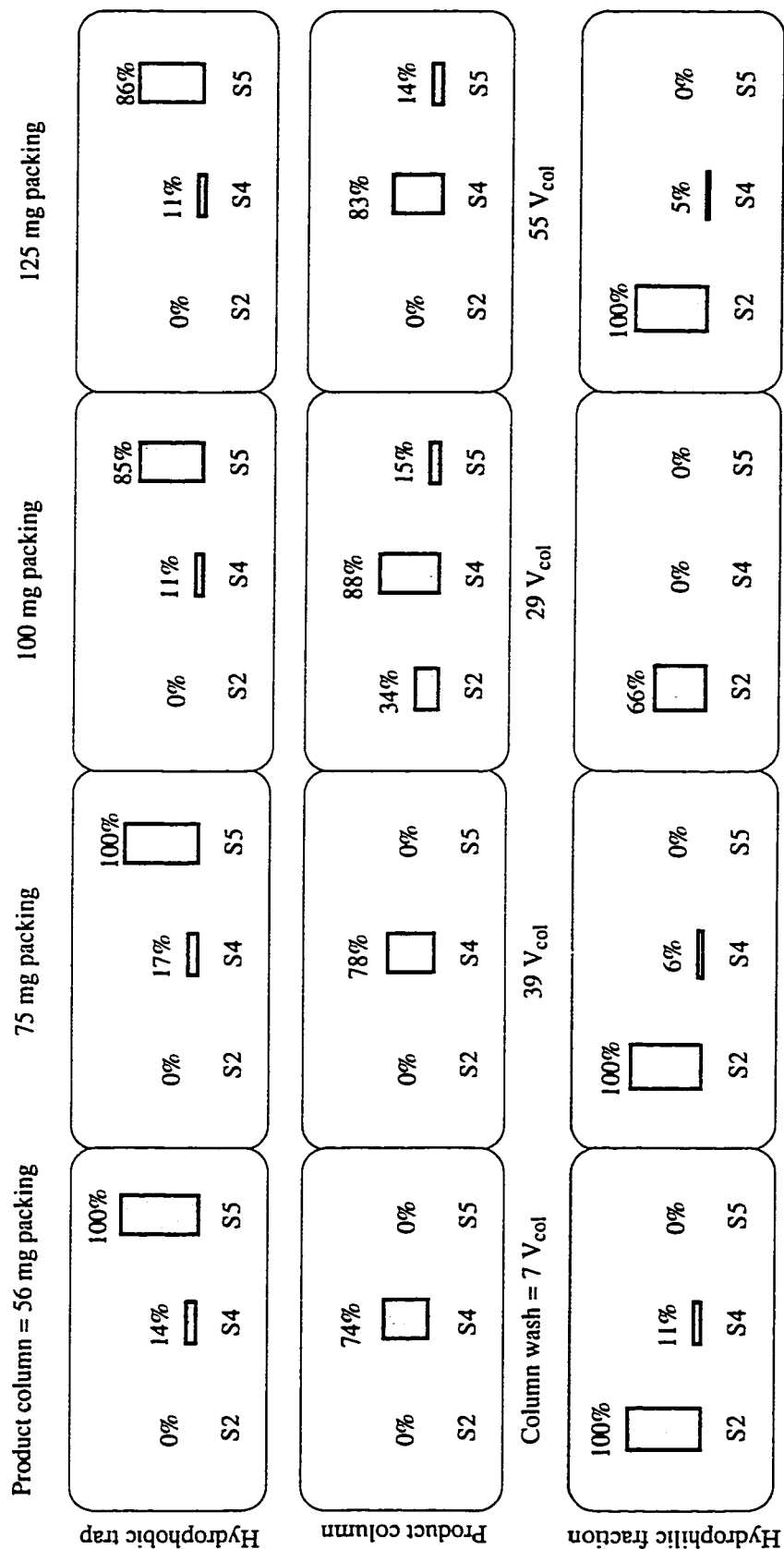
Trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$  (155  $\mu\text{L}$ ); column wash =  $7 V_{\text{col}}$  (805  $\mu\text{L}$ ).

Retention of sample components



**Figure 65      Effect of Product Isolation Column Size on Column Performance  
(Three Component Sample)**

Sample load = 4 mg.  
 $S_2$  to  $S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 1:9:1.  
 $S_2$  = hydrophilic impurity;  $S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.  
 Trap = 15 mg packing; trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$ .



**Figure 66**

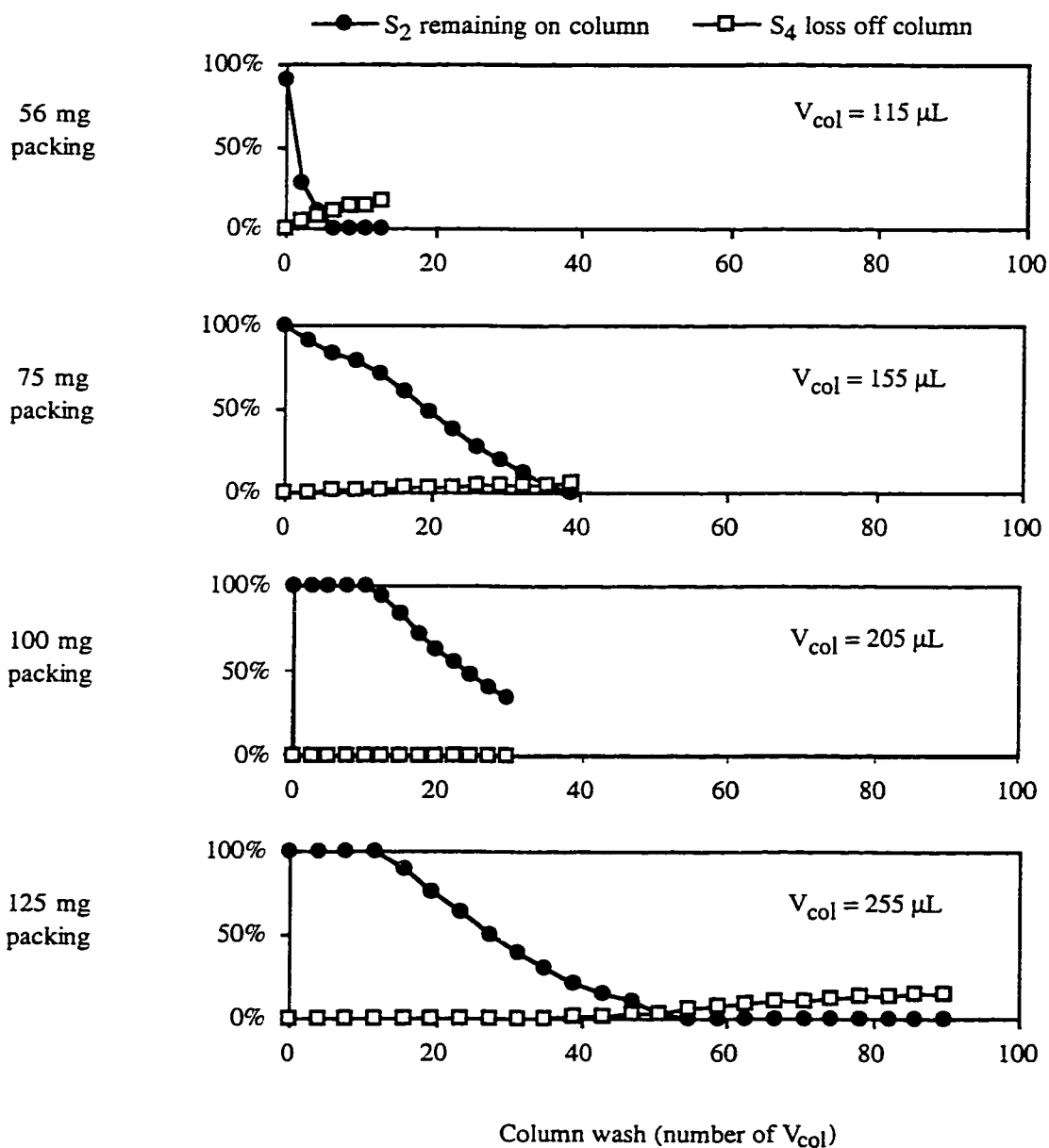
**Effect of Product Isolation Column Size on Sample  
Component Retention  
(Three Component Sample)**

Sample load = 4 mg.

$S_2$  to  $S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 1:9:1.

$S_2$  = hydrophilic impurity;  $S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

Trap = 15 mg packing; trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$  (150  $\mu\text{L}$ ).





**Figure 67 Purification Unit Performance at Different Sample Loads  
(Three Component Sample)**

$S_2$  to  $S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 1:9:1.

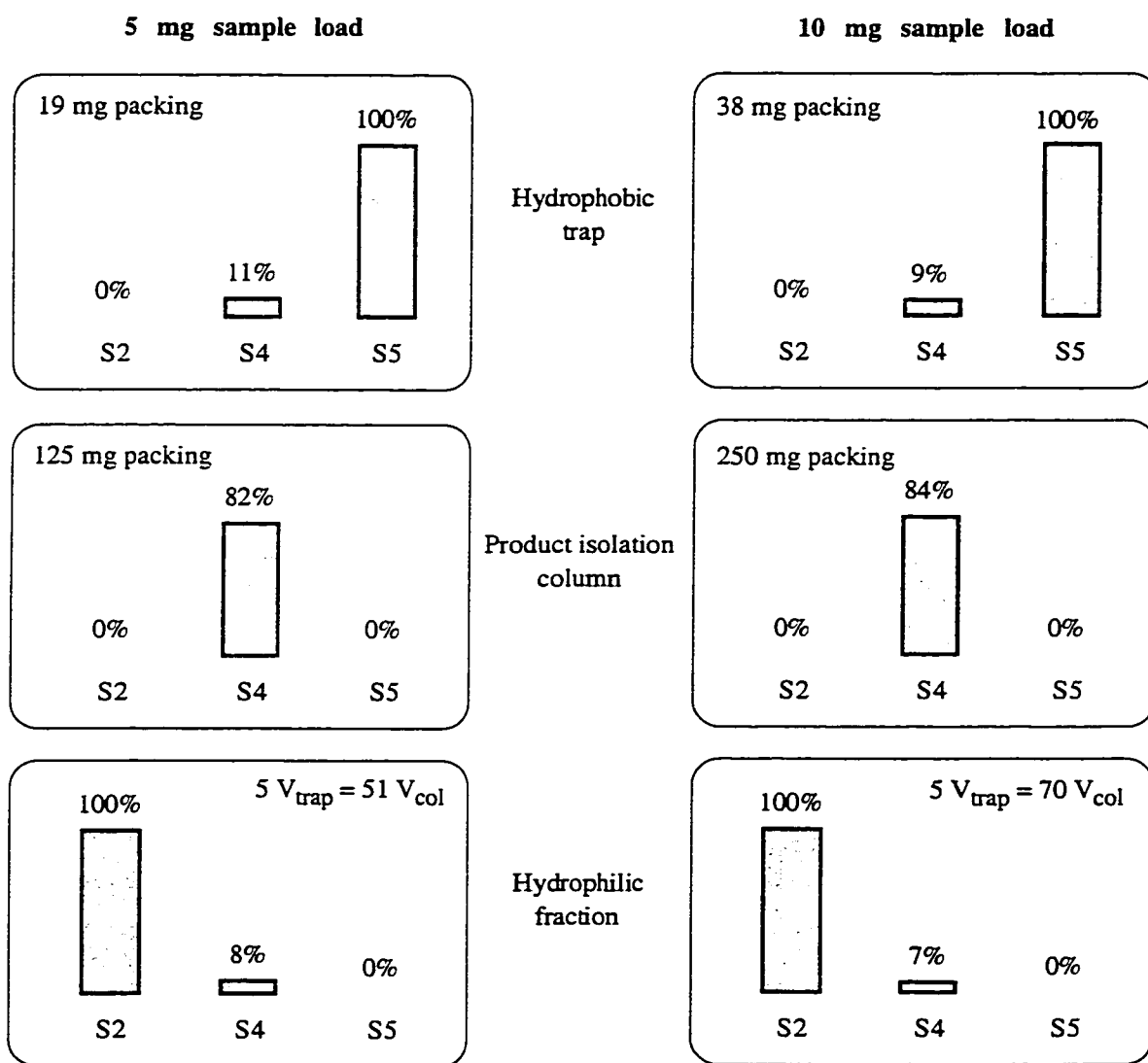
$S_2$  = hydrophilic impurity;  $S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

Trap-to-column packing ratio maintained at 15:100.

Trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$  (195  $\mu\text{L}$  for 5 mg load; 390  $\mu\text{L}$  for 10 mg load).

Column wash =  $51 V_{\text{col}}$  (13 mL) for 5 mg load;  $70 V_{\text{col}}$  (35 mL) for 10 mg load.

Retention of sample components



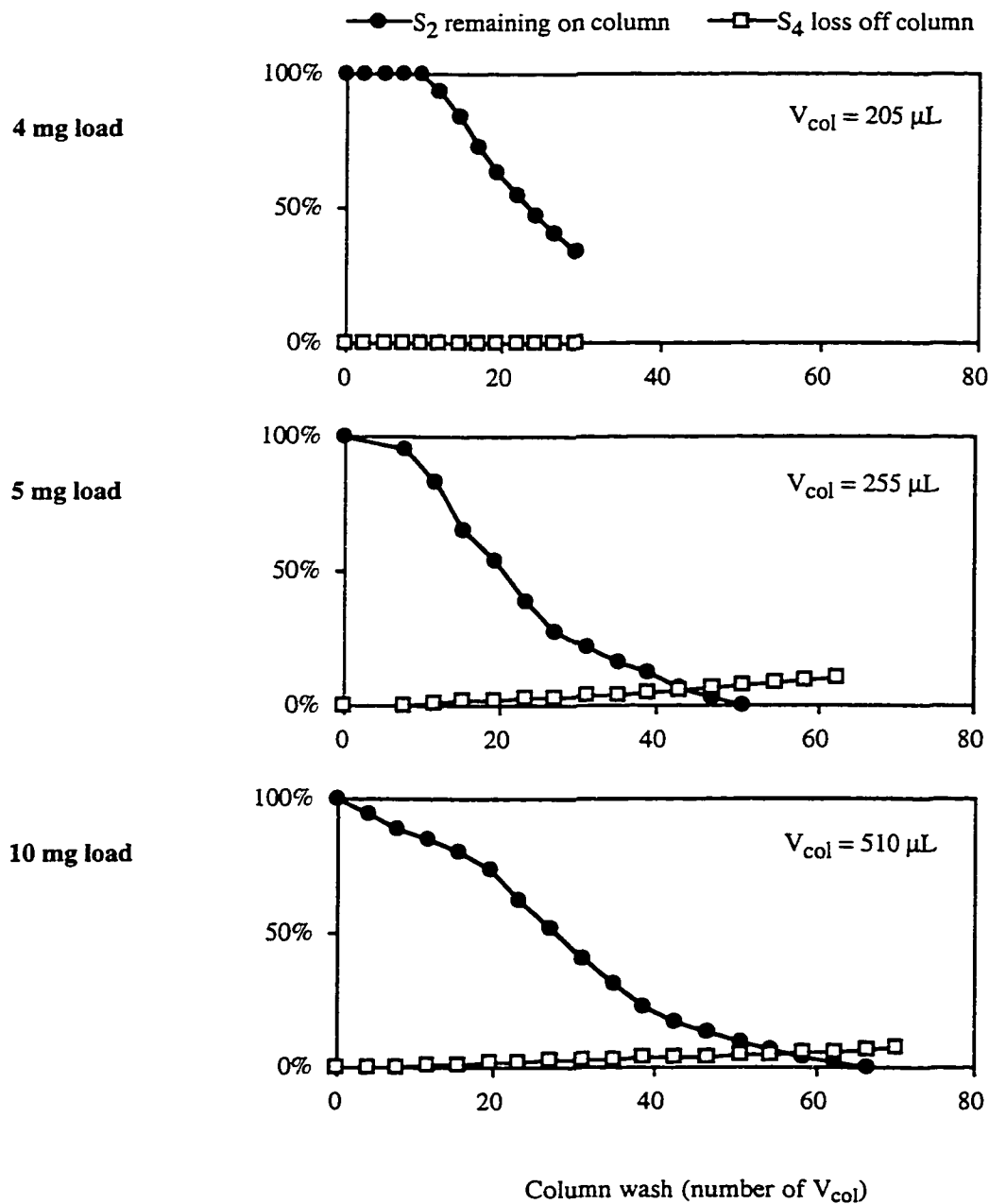
**Figure 68**                      **Effect of Scale-up on Sample Component Retention**  
**(Three Component Sample)**

$S_2$  to  $S_4$  to  $S_5$  ratio = 1:9:1.

$S_2$  = hydrophilic impurity;  $S_4$  = product;  $S_5$  = hydrophobic impurity.

Trap-to-column packing ratio maintained at 15:100

Trap wash (into column) =  $5 V_{\text{trap}}$  (195  $\mu\text{L}$  for 5 mg load; 390  $\mu\text{L}$  for 10 mg load).



### 7.3 Purification System Validation

As previously noted, the major challenge to multiple peptide purification is the variable nature of the synthesized crude peptides, characterized by a range of hydrophobicity, degree of purity, and scale of synthesis (i.e. sample load). The latter problem was addressed during the development of the purification system: the demonstrated ability to scale the purification unit to handle sample load on a linear basis, maintaining a constant trap-to-column packing ratio, permits the routine use of a protocol with standardized purification unit sizes accommodating different sample loads. The possibility of dealing in a similar manner with variation in crude purity, by establishing a few standardized trap-to-column packing ratios for expected ranges of sample impurities, was investigated during a more rigorous test of the system with a five-component mixture designed to represent the greater complexity of a typical crude peptide. The ability to separate product from multiple impurities over a range of hydrophobicities would validate the purification system design. The appropriate variation in hydrophobicity was provided by a second series of synthetic peptide standards, specifically constructed to span a greater hydrophobicity range than the S<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>4</sub>, and S<sub>5</sub> standards and to serve as a reference set for future protocols.

#### SDC Synthetic Peptide Standards

Three sets of synthetic peptide standards (GK, GI, and LI) were designed to cover a wide range of peptide hydrophobicity, and their sequences are presented in **Table 20**. Within each set there are 5 components (A<sub>0</sub>-A<sub>4</sub>) which are very closely separated in hydrophobicity, differing by the addition of 1 carbon atom with the substitution of an Ala residue for a Gly residue. A mixture of these components is used to represent a more complex crude peptide mixture produced by solid-phase peptide

synthesis, in which a desired product ( $A_2$ ) is contaminated by 2 hydrophilic impurities ( $A_0$  and  $A_1$ ) and 2 hydrophobic impurities ( $A_3$  and  $A_4$ ). Between sets, there is a difference in hydrophobicity range: the GK set incorporates Gly and Lys residues to provide the most hydrophilic set of standards; the GI set substitutes a much more hydrophobic residue, Ile, in place of the Lys residue; and the LI set incorporates two very hydrophobic residues, Leu and Ile, to provide the most hydrophobic set of standards. In addition, two Lys residues are present in all these standards to provide net positive charge and improve peptide solubility. These standards were all synthesized on the multiple peptide synthesizer using the standard protocol at 10-fold Fmoc-amino acid excess and a coupling time of 60 minutes. RP-HPLC chromatograms of the three sets are provided in **Figure 69**, demonstrating the three distinct hydrophobicity ranges; overlap exists only between component  $A_4$  of the GI set and component  $A_0$  of the LI set. A comparison of the three SDC sets with the ( $S_2$ ,  $S_4$ ,  $S_5$ ) test set employed during system development reveals a correspondence with the middle set (GI), which falls within the hydrophobicity range of the test set.

### Crude Complexity

Validation of the previously optimized purification system was conducted at a 5 mg sample load using a five-component mixture composed of the SDC GI set, maintaining the hydrophobicity range of the ( $S_2$ ,  $S_4$ ,  $S_5$ ) standard set used during system development; the sample composition of 80% product, 10% hydrophilic impurity (5% each), and 10% hydrophobic impurity (5% each) was very close to the 1:9:1 ratio (corresponding to 82% product and 9% of each impurity) used with the ( $S_2$ ,  $S_4$ ,  $S_5$ ) test set. At first glance, the performance of the 19:125 purification unit (trap and column sizes of 19 mg and 125 mg packing, respectively) appeared to reflect an inability to resolve the sample components due to their close hydrophobicities

**(Figure 70).** On closer inspection, the pattern of separation suggested the need for a larger hydrophobic trap: while adequate to retain all of the most hydrophobic impurity ( $A_4$ ), the trap removed only 48% of the second, less hydrophobic impurity ( $A_3$ ), resulting in extensive contamination of the product isolation column, and although product loss to the trap was expected, the presence of significant amounts of hydrophilic impurities  $A_0$  and  $A_1$  in the trap (2% and 11%, respectively) indicated that progressive sample displacement of one component by the next, more hydrophobic component was not allowed to reach completion. An almost 4-fold increase in trap size to 75 mg packing (approaching the size of the product isolation column) was required to ensure the complete retention of both hydrophobic impurities, as premature  $A_3$  loss from the trap in the presence of product  $A_2$  persisted with the use of smaller traps **(Figure 71)**. The substantial increase in size reflected the difficulty in resolving components  $A_2$  and  $A_3$ . A similar increase in the trap wash (from 7  $V_{\text{trap}}$  to 28  $V_{\text{trap}}$ ) was necessary to displace all hydrophilic impurities from the hydrophobic trap. The elevated wash requirements to clear product from the much larger trap, along with a desire to simplify handling, prompted a change in operating procedure to apply wash to the entire purification unit (trap and column) rather than disconnecting the trap after a minimal wash; the wash volume was normalized as numbers of unit volumes ( $V_{\text{unit}}$ ), based on the total solvated volume of the combined trap and column packing beds. The performance of the intact purification unit after re-optimization of trap size is presented in **Figure 72**. Using trap and column sizes of 75 mg and 125 mg packing respectively, the system was able to resolve five components exhibiting very minor differences in hydrophobicity to the extent of ensuring pure product in the product isolation column. Although the original performance objective of 80% product recovery could not be reached with the more complex mixture, complete removal of hydrophilic and hydrophobic impurities could be achieved by sacrificing sufficient

product: 22% product loss in the hydrophobic trap and 13% product loss in the hydrophilic fraction, for a total pure product recovery of 65%.

### **Crude Purity (Sample Composition)**

Purification unit performance depends on matching the crude purity to the trap-to-column ratio, as illustrated in **Figure 73**. Using the SDC GI standard set and maintaining a 5 mg sample load on the 75:125 purification unit, the sample composition was changed from 1:1:16:1:1 (i.e. 80% product and 5% hydrophilic and hydrophobic impurities each) to 1:1:6:1:1 (i.e. 60% product and 10% of each impurity); the purification unit wash was unchanged. In this case, the trap was sufficiently large to handle a 2-fold increase in the total hydrophobic impurity level without overflowing to the product isolation column, but the trap-to-column packing ratio was too large to recover pure product (insufficient product in the column prevented the complete displacement of both hydrophilic impurities). The purification unit was able to completely remove all hydrophobic impurities from the product as well as the most hydrophilic impurity, but 51% of the second hydrophilic impurity remained to contaminate the product. This problem could be overcome by continuing to wash the column separately (although this becomes more complicated and time consuming as the number of crude peptides to be purified rises). However, the reverse situation in which the trap-to-column packing ratio is too small for the level of impurities cannot be rescued: the product would be contaminated by both hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities. These results emphasize the necessity of estimating the purity of the crude peptides (or more accurately, the purity of suspected poor synthesis products to determine the maximum trap required) by obtaining a few analytical RP-HPLC elution profiles; this would allow the future selection of an appropriate trap-to-column packing ratio from a limited number of standard ratios provided for routine use.

## Peptide Hydrophobicity Range

A multiple peptide purification system must also be able to handle a range of crude peptide hydrophobicities, and this feature was investigated by applying a 5 mg sample load with a 1:1:16:1:1 component ratio (corresponding to 80% product and 5% of each hydrophilic and hydrophobic impurity) to the purification unit using each of the three SDC standard sets. The results (presented in **Figure 74**) suggest that these standards could be used as a reference set to adjust washing requirements for the hydrophobicity range of the crude peptide. The performance of the purification unit with the most hydrophobic standard set (LI) was lowered by incomplete removal of hydrophilic impurity A<sub>1</sub>, although the 8% A<sub>1</sub> remaining represents a product contamination of only 0.7% (i.e. column retention 8%/68% x 5%/80% level in crude). This reflects the stronger interaction between peptide and packing due to the greater hydrophobicity of the SDC standard set. The advantage of this system is the ability to overcome this problem by increasing the wash volume used during the purification to displace the impurity from the column to the hydrophilic fraction; there may be potential to increase product recovery by continuing to direct the wash through the complete purification unit (trap and column) since considerable product (32%) remained in the trap. The performance achieved with the most hydrophilic standard set (GK) shows the converse trend: slightly incomplete removal of the hydrophobic impurity A<sub>3</sub> from the product and a greater product loss to the hydrophilic fraction (although the overall product recovery is similar). The separation is still excellent for a considerable change in hydrophobicity: only 0.7% of the A<sub>3</sub> impurity escaped the trap to contaminate the product, representing a product contamination of less than 0.1% (i.e. column retention 0.7%/68% x 5%/80% level in crude). This problem could also be overcome by adjusting the wash water: a decrease could prevent the displacement of the hydrophobic impurity from the trap and potentially reduce product loss to the

hydrophilic fraction. The GK standard set may also point to the limit of the resolving power of this technique: the apparent premature loss of hydrophobic impurity A<sub>3</sub> from the trap in the presence of product A<sub>2</sub> suggests that the close hydrophobicity of the two standards (the closest of any of the standards) may be on the borderline of what can be separated.

These results extend the boundaries of the purification system beyond scaling for sample load on the basis of constant trap-to-column packing ratio in a two-stage purification unit. Variable crude purity can be accommodated by adjusting the ratio for the poorest quality product of the multiple peptide synthesis (i.e. the maximum ratio required) which will also achieve successful separation of higher quality crudes; peptide hydrophobicity (as predicted using hydrophobicity coefficients such as provided by Guo *et al.*, 1986) can be accommodated by comparison with a reference set of SDC standards to select an appropriate protocol with adjusted washing requirements best suited to the peptide. Standard protocols employing a limited number of standardized trap-to-column packing ratios and wash volumes can be envisaged, capable of handling the majority of crude peptides produced on the multiple peptide synthesizer.



**Table 20 Sequences of SDC Synthetic Peptide Standard Sets**

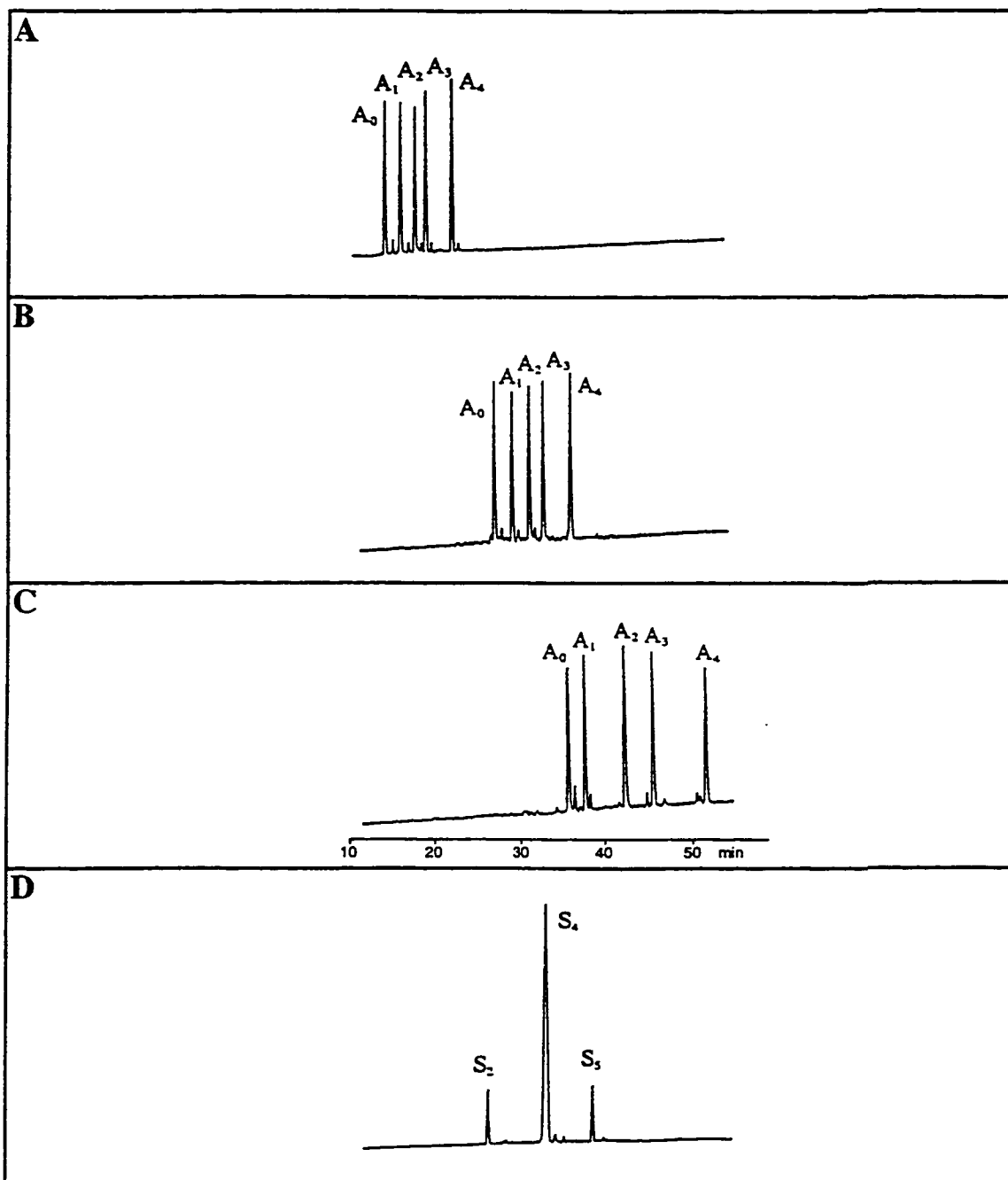
| SDC Set | Standard       | Sequence   |
|---------|----------------|--|
| GK      | A <sub>0</sub> | Ac- K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">K</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V G K -amide |
|         | A <sub>1</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">K</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>2</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">K</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>3</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">K</span> A A V G K  |
|         | A <sub>4</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V A A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">K</span> A A V G K  |
|         |                |  |
| GI      | A <sub>0</sub> | Ac- K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V G K -amide |
|         | A <sub>1</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>2</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>3</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A A V G K  |
|         | A <sub>4</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V A A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A A V G K  |
|         |                |  |
| LI      | A <sub>0</sub> | Ac- K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">L</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> V G K -amide |
|         | A <sub>1</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">L</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>2</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">L</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A G V G K  |
|         | A <sub>3</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">L</span> V <span style="border: 1px solid black;">G</span> A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A A V G K  |
|         | A <sub>4</sub> | K <span style="border: 1px solid black;">L</span> V A A <span style="border: 1px solid black;">I</span> A A V G K  |
|         |                |  |

Ac = N<sup>α</sup>-acetyl; amide = C<sup>α</sup>-amide.

Variations in sequence of the standards are shown within boxes.

**Figure 69**    **RP-HPLC of synthetic peptide standards:**  
**Comparison of SDC sets with (S<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>4</sub>, S<sub>5</sub>) test set**

Panel A:    GK set.  
 Panel B:    GI set.  
 Panel C:    LI set.  
 Panel D:    (S<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>4</sub>, S<sub>5</sub>) test set



Column:    Zorbax 300 SB C8 (150 x 4.6 mm ID)  
 Conditions:    Linear AB gradient (0.5% B/min) at a flowrate of 1.0 mL/min, Eluent A is 0.05% aqueous TFA and Eluent B is 0.05% TFA in acetonitrile

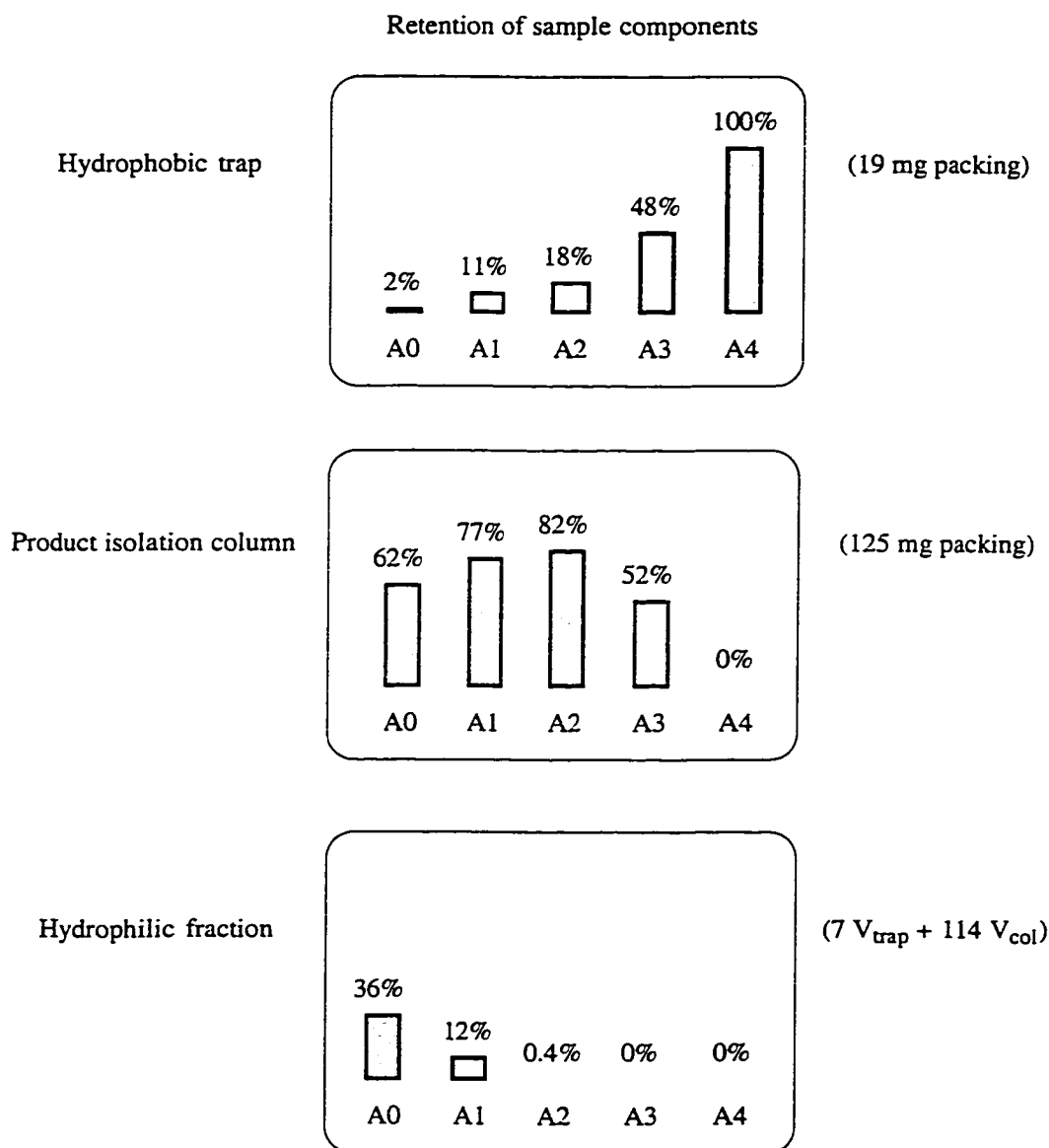
**Figure 70      Performance of Purification Unit  
(Five-Component Sample)**

Sample load = 5 mg.

SDC GI set:  $A_0$  to  $A_1$  to  $A_2$  to  $A_3$  to  $A_4$  ratio = 1 : 1 : 16 : 1 : 1 (i.e. 80 % product).

$A_2$  = product;  $A_3$ ,  $A_4$  = hydrophobic impurities;  $A_1$ ,  $A_2$  = hydrophilic impurities.

Trap wash (into column) =  $7 V_{\text{trap}}$  (215  $\mu\text{L}$ ); column wash =  $114 V_{\text{col}}$  (29 mL).

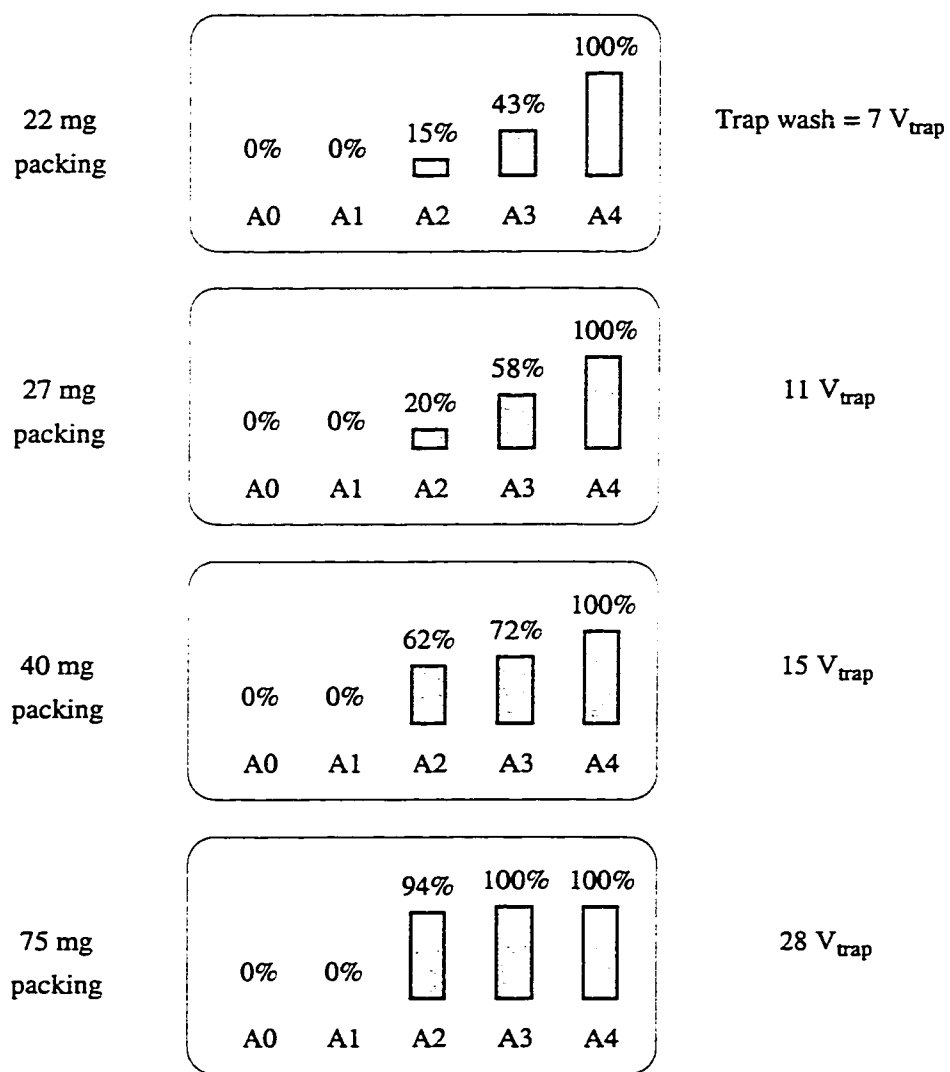


**Figure 71      Effect of Hydrophobic Trap Size on Trap Performance  
(Five Component Sample)**

Sample load = 5 mg.

SDC GI set:  $A_0$  to  $A_1$  to  $A_2$  to  $A_3$  to  $A_4$  ratio = 1 : 1 : 16 : 1 : 1 (i.e. 80 % product).

$A_2$  = product;  $A_3, A_4$  = hydrophobic impurities;  $A_1, A_2$  = hydrophilic impurities.



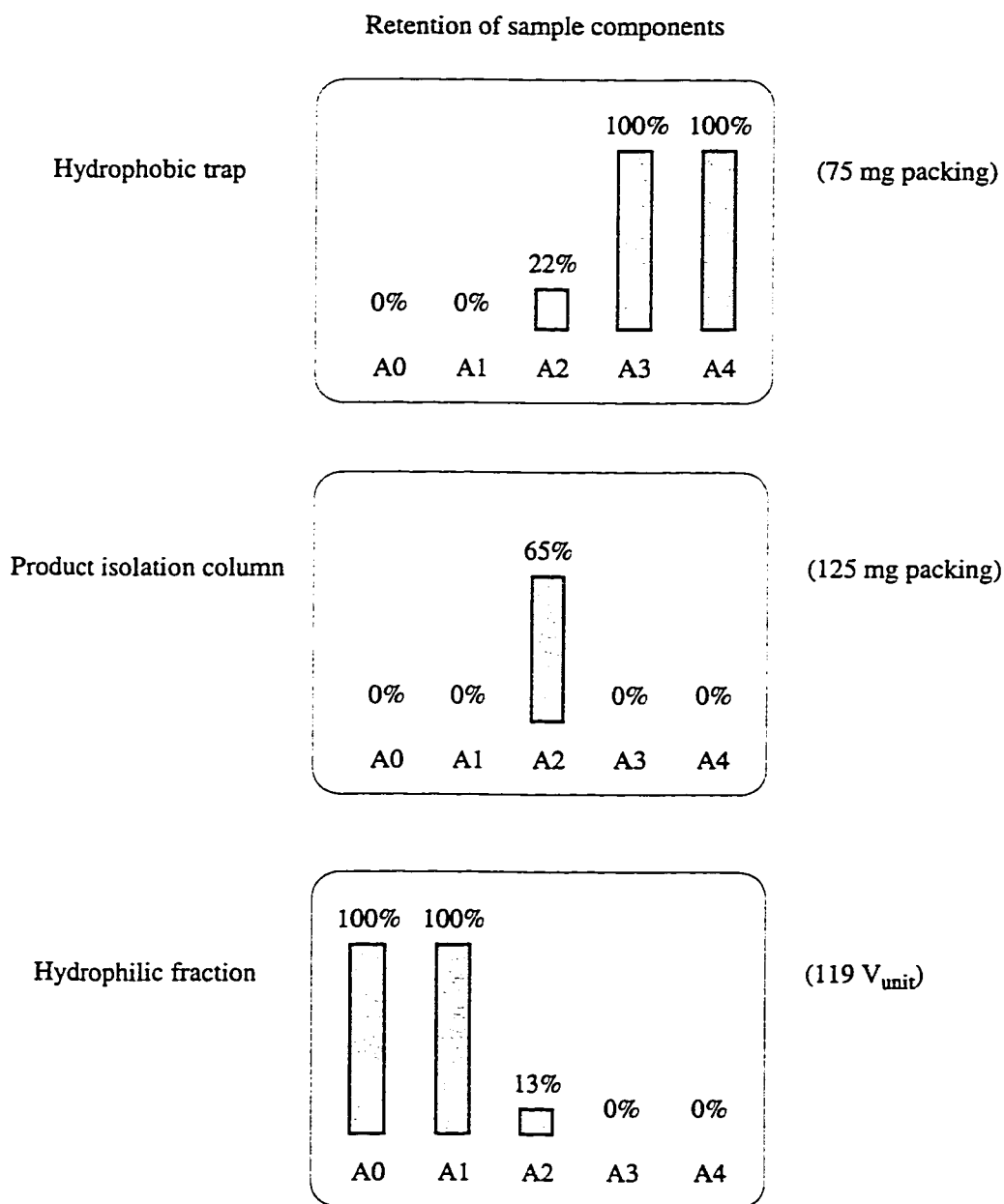
**Figure 72      Performance of Re-optimized Purification Unit  
(Five-Component Sample)**

Sample load = 5 mg.

SDC GI set:  $A_0$  to  $A_1$  to  $A_2$  to  $A_3$  to  $A_4$  ratio = 1 : 1 : 16 : 1 : 1 (80 % product).

$A_2$  = product;  $A_3, A_4$  = hydrophobic impurities;  $A_1, A_2$  = hydrophilic impurities.

Purification unit wash proceeds through trap and column.



**Figure 73      Effect of Sample Composition on Purification Unit Performance**

**(Five-Component Sample)**

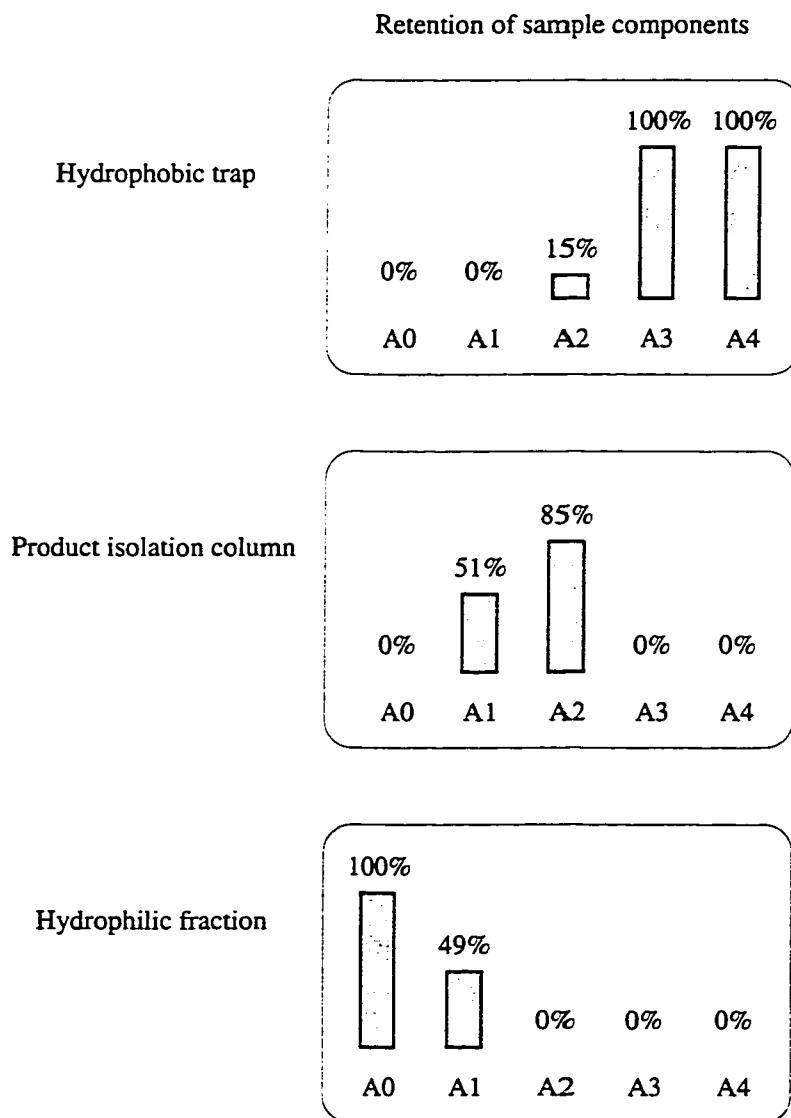
Sample load = 5 mg.

SDC GI set:  $A_0$  to  $A_1$  to  $A_2$  to  $A_3$  to  $A_4$  ratio = 1 : 1 : 6 : 1 : 1 (i.e. 60 % product).

$A_2$  = product;  $A_3, A_4$  = hydrophobic impurities;  $A_1, A_2$  = hydrophilic impurities.

Trap = 75 mg packing; column = 125 mg packing.

Purification unit wash =  $119 V_{\text{unit}}$  (49 mL).



**Figure 74**      **Effect of Hydrophobicity Range on Purification Unit Performance**  
**(Comparison of SDC Standard Sets)**

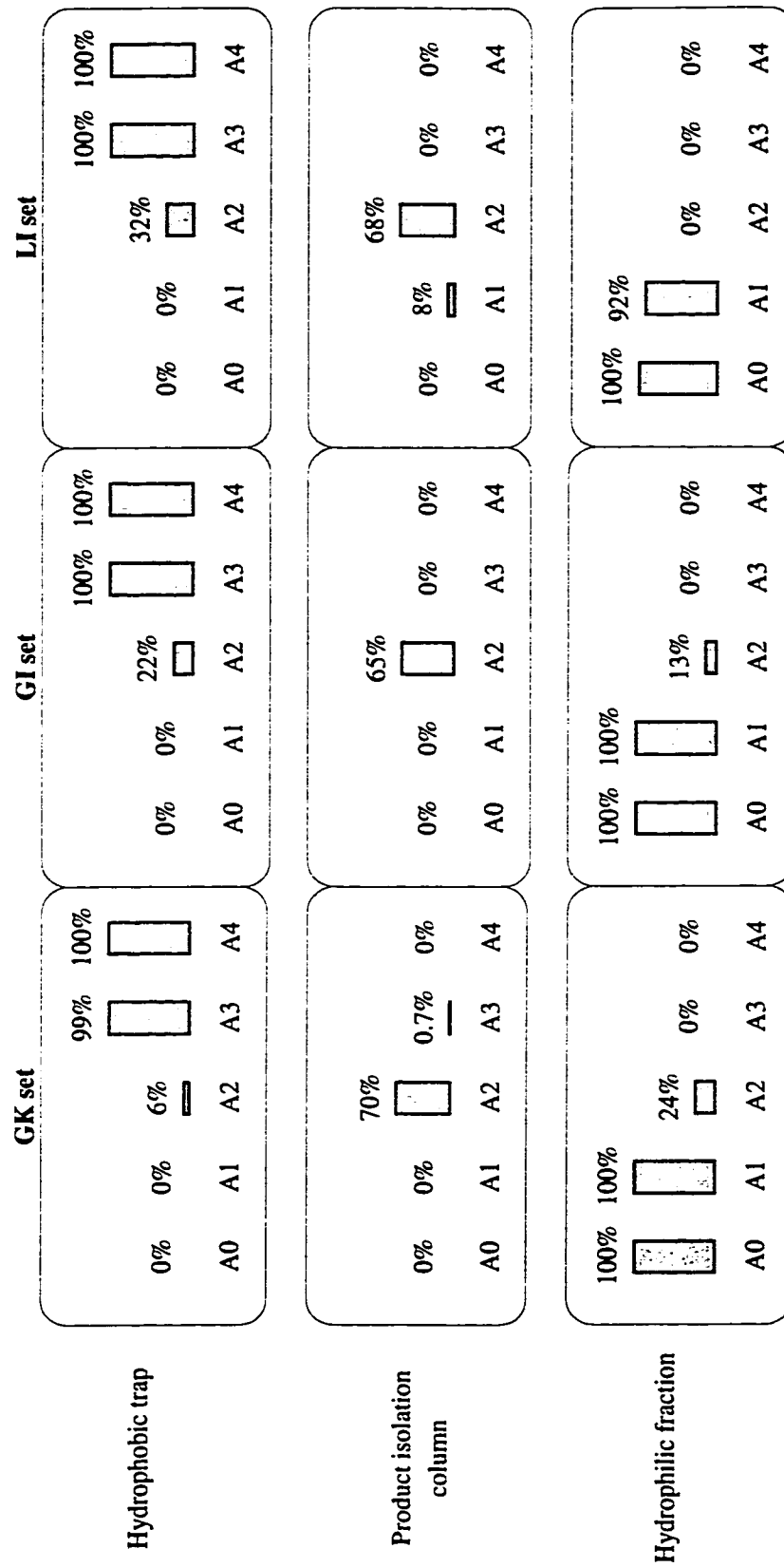
Sample load = 5 mg.

A<sub>2</sub> = product; A<sub>3</sub>, A<sub>4</sub> = hydrophobic impurities; A<sub>1</sub>, A<sub>2</sub> = hydrophilic impurities.

SDC GI set: A<sub>0</sub> to A<sub>1</sub> to A<sub>2</sub> to A<sub>3</sub> to A<sub>4</sub> ratio = 1 : 1 : 16 : 1 : 1 (i.e. 80% product).

Trap = 15 mg; column = 125 mg.

Purification unit wash = 119 V<sub>unit</sub>.



The expanding utility of synthetic peptides in a wide range of biological and medical applications emphasizes the importance of bringing multiple peptide synthesis to general laboratory use. The application of multi-tasking robotics to peptide synthesis has resulted in the recent introduction of a much more elaborate programmable multiple peptide synthesizer such as the 396 MBS offered by Advanced ChemTech, which is designed in a modular format very similar to the prototype with both synthesis and cleavage capability. The trend towards a completely automated synthesizer with accessory software to plan common syntheses (such as the generation of peptide fragments from a given protein sequence) is very costly - up to \$100,000 Can., removing automated multiple peptide synthesis beyond the reach of individual laboratories. Yet this degree of sophisticated hardware and automation is not required in the laboratory - in fact, a minimalistic approach has been adopted in the construction of the Multiblock system by Lebl and Krchnák (1997) to facilitate multiple synthesis in syringes: this system consists of a block holder for 42 syringes equipped with an array of sealing stoppers and individual drainage lines attached to a vacuum manifold system. Simple design alternatives used by the synthesizer prototype designed in this project, such as the valveless module with sparging capability for mixing and the parallel dispensing station, achieve reliable results at an affordable price with a reasonable degree of automation, and the recent commercial availability of SPE processing stations with drying attachments (equipped with independently controlled gas flow to each sample tube) provides a ready-made solution to the unique evaporator employed in the preliminary stage of peptide recovery. The prototype has undergone successful testing of hardware and selected methodology and is currently in routine use in a peptide synthesis laboratory, and a second generation model has been designed with microprocessor-controlled operation of the dispensing station and reaction module



pressurization/aspiration to provide further automation of tedious synthetic steps at a fraction of the cost imposed by robotics; the programmable features of this model are provided in **Appendix C**. New instrument features include the use of relatively inexpensive peristaltic pumps for solvent and reagent delivery (in place of the typical high pressure pneumatic system employed by conventional automated single peptide synthesizers with attendant containment problems) and the extension of the modular approach to interchangeable 20- and 100-reactor dispenser and reaction modules mounted in a common cabinet. Commercialization of this synthesizer is underway, and is expected to accomplish the goal of affordable multiple peptide synthesis (in the initial range of \$15,000-\$20,000 Can.) for individual laboratories.

Considerable progress has been made on the development of a simple, rapid and affordable multiple peptide purification system. The standard use of RP-HPLC requires a considerable investment in instrumentation, and even the introduction of ultrafast RP-HPLC is insufficient to handle large numbers of peptide purifications due to its serial nature. The development of a parallel low pressure multiple purification system using modular solid phase extraction (SPE) technology and sample displacement chromatography (SDC) methodology has provided a remarkably effective and inexpensive alternative to complement the multiple peptide synthesizer. Equipment costs are a fraction of traditional RP-HPLC: SPE processing stations with independent valves to accommodate unequal flowrates in purification units (preventing dryout of packing) are now available in the range of only \$1000-\$1500 Can.. The purification system has demonstrated excellent separation of product from both hydrophobic and hydrophilic impurities over a range of hydrophobicity, crude composition, and sample load for a model system of synthetic standards; it remains to be tested on an actual synthesis project such as a sizeable series of analogues, using a standard protocol based on the predicted hydrophobicity.

- Albericio F. and Barany G. (1987). Acid-labile anchoring linkage for solid-phase synthesis of C-terminal peptide acids under mild conditions. *Int. J. Pept. Protein. Res.* 30: 206-216.
- Albericio F. and Barany G. (1991). Hypersensitive acid-labile (HAL) tris(alkoxy)benzyl ester anchoring for solid-phase synthesis of protected peptide segments. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 32: 1015-1018.
- Alessi D.R., McDougall L.K., Sola M.M., Ikebe M. and Cohen P. (1992). The control of protein phosphatase-1 by targeting subunits. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 210: 1023-1035.
- Atherton E., Fox H., Harkiss D. and Sheppard R.C. (1978). Application of polyamide resins to polypeptide synthesis: An improved synthesis of  $\beta$ -endorphin using fluorenyl-methoxycarbonylamino-acids. *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*: 539-540.
- Atherton E., Brown E., Sheppard R.C. and Rosvear A. (1981). A physically supported gel polymer for low pressure, continuous flow solid phase reactions: Application to solid phase peptide synthesis. *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*: 1151-1152.
- Atherton E. and Sheppard R.C. (1989). *Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis: A Practical Approach*, IRL Press, Oxford.
- Barany G., Kneib-Cordonier N. and Mullen D.G. (1987). Solid-phase peptide synthesis: A silver anniversary report. *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 30: 705-739.
- Barany G. and Merrifield R.B. (1979). Solid phase peptide synthesis. *In The Peptides*, Vol. 2 (E. Gross and J. Meienhofer, eds.), Academic Press, New York, pp. 1-284.
- Barlos K., Papaioannou D. and Theodoropoulos D. (1982). Efficient "one-pot" synthesis of N-trityl amino acids. *J. Org. Chem.* 47: 1324-1326.
- Barton G.J., Cohen P.T.W. and Barford D. (1994). Conservation analysis and structure prediction of the protein serine/threonine phosphatases. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 220: 225-237.
- Bech-Sickinger A.G., Dürr H. and Jung G. (1991). Semiautomated T-bag peptide synthesis using 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl strategy and benzotriazol-1-yl-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate activation. *Peptide Research* 4: 88-94.
- Bennett H.P.J. (1991). Manipulation of pH and ion-pairing reagents to maximize the performance of reverse-phase columns. *In High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation* (C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges, eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 319-326.

Berg R.H., Almdal K., Pedersen W.B., Holm A., Tam J.P. and Merrifield R.B. (1989). Long-chain polystyrene-grafted polyethylene film matrix: A new support for solid-phase peptide synthesis. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 111: 8024-8026.

Bij K.E., Horvath Cs., Melander W.R. and Nahum A. (1981). Surface silanols in silica-bonded hydrocarbonaceous stationary phases.II.Irregular retention behavior and effect of silanol masking. *J. Chromatogr.* 203: 65.

Bodanszky M. and Bodanszky A. (1984). *The Practice of Peptide Synthesis*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin.

Bodey G.P., Bolivar R., Fainstein V. and Jadeja L. (1983). Infections caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Rev. Infect. Dis.* 5:279-313.

Brown S. (1992). Engineered iron oxide-adhesion mutants of the *Escherichia coli* phage  $\lambda$  receptor. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 89: 8651-8655.

Brown T., Jones J.H. and Richards J.D. (1982). Further studies on the protection of histidine side chains in peptide synthesis: The use of the  $\pi$ -benzyloxymethyl group. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*: 1553-1561.

Bray A.M., Maeji N.J. and Geysen H.M. (1990). The simultaneous multiple production of solution phase peptides: Assessment of the Geysen method of simultaneous peptide synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 31: 5811-5814.

Burdick D.J., Struble M.E. and Burnier J.P. (1993). Solid phase synthesis of peptide *p*-nitroanilides. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 34: 2589-2592..

Burke T.W.L., Mant C.T. and Hodges, R.S. (1988). A novel approach to reversed-phase preparative high-performance liquid chromatography of peptides. *J. Liq. Chromatogr.* 11: 1229-1247.

Burke T.W.L., Mant C.T. and Hodges R.S. (1991a). The effect of varying flow-rate, gradient-rate, and detection wavelength on peptide elution profiles in reversed-phase chromatography. *In High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation* (C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges, eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 307-318.

Burke T.W.L., Mant C.T. and Hodges, R.S. (1991b). Comparison of peptide resolution on conventional, narrowbore, and microbore reversed-phase columns. *In High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation* (Eds. C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 679-686.

Büttner K., Zahn H. and Fischer W.H. (1988). Rapid solid phase peptide synthesis on a controlled pore glass support. *In Peptides: Chemistry and Biology*, Ptoc. 10th Am. Pept. Symp. (G.R. Marshall, ed.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, pp. 210-211.

- Büttner J.A., Hudson D., Johnson C.R., Ross M.J. and Shoemaker K. (1994). *In Innovation and Perspectives in Solid Phase Synthesis* (R. Epton, ed.), Mayflower Worldwide, Birmingham, UK, p.169.
- Canne L.E., Walker S.M. and Kent S.B.H. (1995). A general method for the synthesis of thioester resin linkers for use in the solid phase synthesis of peptide- $\alpha$ -thioacids. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 36: 1217-1220.
- Carpino L.A. and Han G.Y. (1972). The 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl amino protecting group. *J. Org. Chem.* 37: 3404-3409.
- Chang C.D., Waki M., Ahmad M., Meienhofer J., Lundell E.O. and Haug J.D. (1980). Preparation and properties of N $\alpha$ -9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonylamino acids bearing tert.-butyl side chain protection. *Int. J. Pept. Protein. Res.* 15: 59-66.
- Charbit A., Boulain J.C., Ryter A. and Hofnung M. (1986). Probing the topology of a bacterial membrane protein by genetic insertion of a foreign epitope: expression at the cell surface. *EMBO J.* 5: 3029-3037.
- Chen Y.H., Chen M.X., Alessi D.R., Campbell D.G., Shanahan C., Cohen P. and Cohen P.T.W. (1994). Molecular cloning of cDNA encoding the 110 kDa and 21 kDa regulatory subunits of smooth muscle protein phosphatase 1M. *FEBS Lett* 356: 51-55.
- Chillemi F. and Merrifield R.B. (1969). Use of Nim-dinitrophenylhistidine in the solid-phase synthesis of the tricosapeptides 124-146 of human hemoglobin  $\beta$  chain. *Biochemistry* 8: 4344-4346.
- Cohen P. (1989). The structure and regulation of protein phosphatases. *Annu. Rev. Biochem.* 58: 453-508.
- Cohen P. (1992). Signal integration at the level of protein kinases, protein phosphatases and their substrates. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 17: 408-413.
- Cohen P., Alemany S., Hemmings B.A., Resink T.J., Strålfors P. and Tung H.Y.L. (1988). Protein phosphatase-1 and -2A from rabbit skeletal muscle. *Methods Enzymol.* 159: 391-408.
- Colombo R., Colombo F. and Jones J.H. (1984). Acid-labile histidine sidechain protection: The  $\pi$ -benzyloxymethyl group. *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.* 292-293.
- Cook R.M. and Hudson D. (1996). Chemically modified polyolefin particles for biomolecule synthesis, analysis and display. *In Peptides: Chemistry, Structure and Biology*, Proc. 14th Am. Pept. Symp. (P. T. P. Kaumaya and R. S. Hodges, eds.), Mayflower Scientific, Birmingham, UK, pp.39-41.
- Cull M.G., Miller J.F. and Schatz P.J. (1992). Screening for receptor ligands using large libraries of peptides linked to the C terminus of the *lac* repressor. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 89: 1865-1869.

Desdouits F., Cheetham J.J., Huang H.B., Kwon Y.G., da Cruz e Silva E.F., Deneffe P., Ehrlich M.E., Nairn A.C., Greengard P. and Girault J.A. (1995). Mechanism of inhibition of protein phosphatase 1 by DARPP-32: Studies with recombinant DARPP-32 and synthetic peptides. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 206: 652-658.

Dingwall C. and Laskey R.A. (1991). Nuclear targeting sequences - a consensus? *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 16: 478-481.

Doherty M.J., Moorhead G., Morrice N., Cohen P. and Cohen P.T.W. (1995). Amino acid sequence and expression of the hepatic glycogen-binding G<sub>L</sub>-subunit of PP1. *FEBS Lett.* 375: 294-298.

Doig P., Todd T., Sastry P.A., Lee K.K., Hodges R.S., Paranchych W. and Irvin R.T. (1988). Role of pili in adhesion of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* to human respiratory epithelial cells. *Infect. Immun.* 56: 1641-1646.

Dorman L.C., Nelson D.A. and Chow R.C.I. (1972). Solid phase synthesis of glutamine-containing peptides. *In Progress in Peptide Research*, Vol. 2 (S. Lande, ed.), Gordon and Breach, New York, pp. 65-68.

Doyle D.A., Lee A., Lewis J., Kim E., Sheng M. and MacKinnon, R. (1996). Crystal structures of a complexed and peptide-free membrane protein-binding domain: molecular basis of peptide recognition by PDZ. *Cell* 85: 1067-1076.

Durfee T., Becherer K., Chen P.L., Yeh S.H., Yang Y., Kilburn A.E., Lee W.H., and Elledge S.J. (1993). The retinoblastoma protein associates with the protein phosphatase type 1 catalytic subunit. *Genes Dev.* 7: 555-569.

Egloff M.-P., Johnson D.F., Moorhead G., Cohen P.T.W., Cohen P. and Barford D. (1997). Structural basis for the recognition of regulatory subunits by the catalytic subunit of protein phosphatase 1. *EMBO J.* 16: 1876-1887.

Endo S., Zhou X., Connor J., Wang B. and Shenolikar S. (1996). Multiple structural elements define the specificity of recombinant human inhibitor-1 as a protein phosphatase-1 inhibitor. *Biochem.* 35: 5220-5228.

Englebrechtsen D.R., Garnham B.G., Bergman D.A. and Alewood P.F. (1995). A novel thioether linker: Chemical synthesis of a HIV-1 protease analogue by thioether ligation. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 36: 8871-8874.

Erickson B.W. and Merrifield R.B. (1973a). Acid stability of several benzylic protecting groups used in solid-phase peptide synthesis: Rearrangement of O-benzyltyrosine to 3-benzyltyrosine. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 95: 3750-3756.

Erickson B.W. and Merrifield R.B. (1973b). Use of chlorinated benzyloxycarbonyl protecting groups to eliminate N<sup>ε</sup>-branching at lysine during solid-phase peptide synthesis. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 95: 3757-3763.

Erickson B.W. and Merrifield R.B. (1976). Solid-phase peptide synthesis. *In The Proteins*, 3rd Ed., Vol.II (H. Neurath and R.L. Hill, eds.), Academic Press, New York, pp 255-527.

- Esser U. and Unger K.K. (1991). Reversed-phase packings for the separation of peptides and proteins by means of gradient elution high-performance liquid chromatography. *In* High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation (C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges, eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 273-278.
- Faux M.C. and Scott J.D. (1996). More on target with protein phosphorylation: conferring specificity by location. *TIBS* 21: 312-315.
- Fehrentz J.-A., Paris M., Heitz A., Velek J., Liu C.-F., Winternitz F. and Martinez J. (1995). Improved solid phase synthesis of C-terminal peptide aldehydes. *Tetrahedron Lett* 36: 7871-7874.
- Fields C.G., Lloyd D.H., Macdonald R.L., Otteson K.M. and Noble, R.L. (1991). *In* Peptides 1990. Proc. 21st Eur. Pept. Symp. (E. Giralt and D. Andreu, eds.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, pp 65-66.
- Fields G.B. and Noble R.L. (1990). Solid phase peptide synthesis utilizing 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl amino acids. *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 35: 161-214.
- Fields G. B., Tian Z. and Barany G. (1992). *In* Synthetic Peptides: A User's Guide (G.A. Grant, ed.), Freeman, New York, p.77.
- Flörsheimer A. and Riniker B. (1991). Solid-phase synthesis of peptides with the highly acid-sensitive HMPB linker. *In* Peptides 1990. Proc. 21st Eur. Pept. Symp. (E. Giralt and D. Andreu, eds.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, pp. 131-133.
- Fodor S.P., Read J.L., Pirrung M.C., Stryer L., Tsai Lu A. and Solas D. (1991). Light-directed, spatially addressable parallel chemical synthesis. *Sci.* 251: 767-773.
- Frank R. and Döring R. (1988). Simultaneous multiple peptide synthesis under continuous flow conditions on cellulose paper discs as segmental solid supports. *Tetradedron* 44: 6031-6040.
- Frank R., Güler S., Krause S. and Lindenmaier W. (1991). Facile and rapid 'spot-synthesis' of large numbers of peptides on membrane sheets. *Peptides 1990. Proc. 21st Eur. Pept. Symp.* (E. Giralt and D. Andreu, eds.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, pp. 151-152.
- Frenz J. and Horvath C. (1988). High-performance displacement chromatography. *In* High Performance Liquid Chromatography: Advances and Perspectives, Vol. 5 (C. Horvath, ed.), Academic Press, New York, pp. 211.
- Fujino M., Wakimasu M. and Kitada C. (1981). Further studies on the use of multi-substituted benzenesulfonyl groups for protection of the guanidino function of arginine. *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* 29: 2825-2831.
- Furka A., Sebestyen F., Asgedom M. and Dibo G. (1991). General method for rapid synthesis of multicomponent peptide mixtures. *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 37: 487-493.

Gausepohl H., Kraft M., Boulin C. and Frank R.W. (1992). Peptides: Chemistry, Structure and Biology, Proc. 11th Am. Pept. Symp. (J.E. Rivier and G.R. Marshall, eds.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, pp. 1003-1004.

Geysen H.M., Meloen R.H. and Barteling S.J. (1984). Use of peptide synthesis to probe viral antigens for epitopes to a resolution of a single amino acid. Proc.Natl.Acad.Sci.USA 81: 3998-4002.

Geysen H.M., Rodda S.J. and Mason T.J. (1986). *A priori* delineation of a peptide which mimics a discontinuous antigenic determinant. Mol.Immunol. 23: 709-715.

Geysen H.M., Rodda S.J., Mason T.J., Tribbick G. and Schoofs P.G. (1987). Strategies for epitope analysis using peptide synthesis. J. Immunol. Methods 102: 259-274.

Guo D., Mant C.T., Taneja A.K. and Hodges R.S. (1986). Prediction of peptide retention times in reverse-phase high-performance liquid chromatography. II. Correlation of observed and predicted peptide retention times and factors influencing the retention times of peptides. J. Chromatogr. 359: 519-532.

Guo D., Mant C.T., Taneja A.K., Parker J.M.R. and Hodges R.S. (1986). Prediction of peptide retention times in reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography. I.Determination of retention coefficients of amino acid residues using model synthetic peptides. J. Chromatogr. 359: 499.

Gutte B. and Merrifield R.B. (1971). The synthesis of ribonuclease A. J. Biol. Chem. 30: 2641-2644.

Guy C.A. and Fields G.B. (1997). Trifluoroacetic acid cleavage and deprotection of resin-bound peptides following synthesis by Fmoc chemistry. Methods Enzymol. 289: 67-83.

Hammer R.P., Albericio F., Gera,L. and Barany G. (1990). Practical approach to solid-phase synthesis of C-terminal peptide amides under mild conditions based on photolysable anchoring linkage. Int. J. Pept. Protein Res. 36: 31-45.

Hellermann H., Lucas H.-W., Maul J., Pillai V.N.R. and Mutter M. (1983). Poly(ethylene glycol)s grafted onto crosslinked polystyrenes, 2: Multi-detachably anchored polymer systems for the synthesis of solubilized peptides. Makromol. Chem. 184: 2603-2617.

Helps N., Barker M., Elledge S.J. and Cohen P.T.W. (1995). Protein phosphatase 1 interacts with p53BP2, a protein which binds to the tumour suppressor p53. FEBS Lett. 377: 295-300.

Hermanson M. and Mahoney W.C. (1983). Separation of peptides by reversed-phase high-performance liquid chromatography. Methods Enzymol. 91: 352-359.

Hodges R.S., Burke T.W.L. and Mant, C.T. (1991). Multi-column preparative reversed-phase sample displacement chromatography of peptides. J. Chromatogr. 548: 267-280.

Hodges R.S., Burke T.W.L., Mendonca A.J. and Mant C.T. (1993). Preparative reversed-phase sample displacement chromatography of peptides. *Chromatography in Biotechnology, ACS Symposium Series* 259: 59-76.

Hodges R.S. and Mant C.T. (1991). Properties of peptides/proteins and practical implications. *In High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation* (C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges, eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 3-9.

Hodges R.S. and Merrifield R.B. (1975). Monitoring of solid phase peptide synthesis by an automated spectrophotometric picrate method. *Anal. Biochem.* 65: 241-272.

Holm A. and Meldal M. (1989). Multiple column peptide synthesis. *In Peptides 1989. Proc. 20th Eur. Pept. Symp.*, (G. Jung and E. Bayer, eds.), de Gruyter, Berlin, pp. 208-210.

Holmes C.F.B. (1991). Liquid chromatography-linked protein phosphatase bioassay; a highly sensitive marine bioscreen for okadaic acid and related diarrhetic shellfish toxins. *Toxicon* 29: 469-477.

Houghten R.A. (1985). General method for the rapid solid phase synthesis of large numbers of peptides: Specificity of antigen-antibody interaction at the level of individual amino acids. *Proc.Natl.Acad.Sci.USA* 82: 5131-5135.

Houghten R.A., Pinilla C., Blondelle S.E., Appel J.R., Dooley C.T. and Cuervo J.H. (1991). Generation and use of synthetic peptide combinatorial libraries for basic research and drug discovery. *Nature* 354: 84-86.

Hubbard M.J. and Cohen P. (1993). On target with a new mechanism for the regulation of protein phosphorylation. *Trends Biochem. Sci.* 18: 172-177.

Jagiello I., Beullens M., Stalmans W. and Bollen M. (1995). Subunit structure and regulation of protein phosphatase-1 in rat liver nuclei. *J. Biol. Chem.* 270: 17257-17263.

Johnson D.F., Moorhead G., Caudwell F.B., Cohen P., Chen Y.H., Chen M.X. and Cohen P.T.W. (1996). Identification of protein phosphatase-1-binding domains on the glycogen and myofibrillar targeting subunits. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 239: 317-325.

Knorr R., Trzeciak A., Bannwarth W., and Gillessen D. (1989). New coupling reagents in peptide chemistry. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 30: 1927-1930.

Kornreich W., Anderson H., Proter J., Vale W. and Rivier J. (1985). Peptide N-alkylamides by solid phase synthesis. *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 25: 414-420.

Krchnák V., Vágner J., Novák J, Suchánková A. and Roubal J. (1989). Multiple continuous-flow solid-phase peptide synthesis. *Int.J.Peptide Protein Res.* 33: 209-213.

Lajoie G., Crivici A. and Adamson J.G. (1990). A simple and convenient synthesis of  $\omega$ -tert-butyl esters of Fmoc-aspartic and Fmoc-glutamic acids. *Synthesis (Issue 7)*: 571-572.



Lam K.S., Salmon S.E., Hersh E.M., Hruby V.J., Kazmierski W.M. and Knapp R.J. (1991). A new type of synthetic peptide library for identifying ligand-binding activity. *Nature* 354: 82-84.

Lebl M. and Krchnák V. (1997). Synthetic Peptide Libraries. *Methods Enzymol.* 289: 336-392.

Lebl M., Krchnák V., Sepetov N.F., Seligmann B., Strop P. and Felder, S. (1995). One-bead-one-structure combinatorial libraries. *Biopolymers (Peptide Science)* 37: 177-198.

Lingwood C.A., Cheng M., Kriven H.C. and Woods D. (1991). Glycolipid receptor binding specificity of exoenzyme S from *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 175: 1076-1081.

McKay F.C. and Albertson N.F. (1957). New amine-masking groups for peptide synthesis. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 79: 4686-4691.

MacKintosh C., Beattie K.A., Klumpp S., Cohen P. and Codd G.A. (1990). Cyanobacterial microcystin-LR is a potent and specific inhibitor of protein phosphatase 1 and 2A from both mammals and higher plants. *FEBS Lett.* 264: 187-192.

Mant C.T. and Hodges R.S. (1991). Preparative reversed-phase sample displacement chromatography of synthetic peptides. *In High-Performance Liquid Chromatography of Peptides and Proteins: Separation, Analysis, and Conformation* (C.T. Mant and R.S. Hodges, eds.), CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp. 793-807.

Mattheakis L.C., Bhatt R. and Dower W.J. (1994). An *in vitro* polysome display system for identifying ligands from very large peptide libraries. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 91: 9022-9026.

Matsueda G.R. and Stewart J.M. (1981). A *p*-methylbenzhydrylamine resin for improved solid-phase synthesis of peptide amides. *Peptides* 2: 45-50.

Meldal M. (1992). PEGA: A flow stable polyethylene glycol dimethyl acrylamide copolymer for solid phase synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 33: 3077-3080.

Merrifield R.B. (1963). Solid phase peptide synthesis I: The synthesis of a tetrapeptide. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 85: 2149-2154.

Merrifield R.B. (1986). Solid phase synthesis. *Science* 232: 341-347.

Merrifield R.B. (1995). *In Peptides: Synthesis, Structures, and Applications* (B. Gutte, ed.), Academic Press, San Diego, p. 93.

Merrifield R.B., Stewart J.M. and Jernberg N. (1966). Instrument for automated synthesis of peptides. *Anal.Chem.* 38: 1905-1914.

Mitchell A.R., Kent S.B.H., Engelhard M. and Merrifield R.B. (1978). A new synthetic route to tert-butyloxycarbonylaminoacyl-4-(oxymethyl)phenylacetamidomethyl-resin, an improved support for solid-phase peptide synthesis. *J. Org. Chem.* 43: 2845-2852.

Moorhead G., MacKintosh W., Morrice N., Gallagher T. and McKintosh C. (1994). Purification of type 1 protein (serine/threonine) phosphatases by microcystin-Sepharose affinity chromatography. *FEBS Lett.* **356**: 46-50.

Moorhead G., MacKintosh C., Morrice N. and Cohen P. (1995). Purification of the hepatic glycogen-associated form of protein-phosphatase-1 by microcystin-Sepharose affinity chromatography. *FEBS Lett.* **362**: 101-105.

Munson M.C., García-Escheverría C., Albericio F. and Barany G. (1992). S-2,4,6-trimethoxybenzyl (Tmob): A novel cysteine protecting group for the N $\alpha$ -9-fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc) strategy of peptide synthesis. *J. Org. Chem.* **57**: 3013-3018.

Nokihara K. and Yamamoto R. (1992). *In* Peptides: Chemistry and Biology. Proc. 12th Am. Pept. Symp. (J.A. Smith and J.E. Rivier, eds.), ESCOM, Leiden, The Netherlands, p. 507.

Okada Y. and Iguchi S. (1988). Amino acid and peptides, part 19: Synthesis of  $\beta$ -1- and  $\beta$ -2-adamantyl aspartates and their evaluation for peptide synthesis. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*: 2129-2136.

Pelham H.R. (1992). The Florey Lecture. 1992. The secretion of proteins by cells. *Proc. R. Soc. Lond. Ser. B.* **250**: 1-10.

Photaki I., Taylor-Papadimitriou J., Sakarellos C., Mazarakis P. and Zervas L. (1970). On cysteine and cystine peptides, part V: S-trityl- and S-diphenyl-methyl-cysteine and -cystine peptides. *J. Chem. Soc. (C)*: 2683-2687.

Pinilla C., Appel J., Blondelle S., Dooley C., Dörner B., Eichler J., Ostresh J. and Houghten R.A. (1995). A review of the utility of soluble peptide combinatorial libraries. *Biopolymers (Peptide Science)* **37**: 221-240.

Ramage R. and Green J. (1987). NG-2,2,5,7,8-pentamethylchroman-6-sulphonyl-L-arginine: A new acid labile derivative for peptide synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **28**: 2287-2290.

Rapp W., Zhang L., Häbich R. and Bayer E. (1989). *In* Peptides 1988. Proc. 20th Eur. Pept. Symp. (G. Jung and E. Bayer, eds.), de Gruyter, Berlin, p. 199.

Renil M. and Meldal M. (1995). Synthesis and application of a PEGA polymeric support for high capacity continuous flow solid phase peptide synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **36**: 4647-4650.

Renil M. and Meldal M. (1996). POEPOP and POEPS: Inert polyethylene glycol crosslinked polymeric supports for solid synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **37**: 6185-6188.

Renil M. and Pillai V.N.R. (1994). Synthesis of fully protected peptides on a tetraethyleneglycol diacrylate (TTEGDA)-crosslinked polystyrene support with a photolytically detachable 2-nitrobenzyl anchoring group. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **35**: 3809-3812.

- Rich D. H. and Gurwara S.K. (1975). Preparation of a new o-nitrobenzyl resin for solid-phase synthesis of tert-butyloxycarbonyl-protected peptide acids. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 97: 1575-1579.
- Rink H. (1987). Solid-phase synthesis of protected peptide fragments using a trialkoxy-diphenyl-methylester resin. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 28: 3787-3790.
- Rivier J.E., Lazarus L.H., Perrin M.H. and Brown M.R. (1977). Neurotensin analogues. Structure-activity relationships. *J. Med. Chem.* 20: 1409-1412.
- Sarin V.K., Kent S.B.H., Tam J.P. and Merrifield R.B. (1981). Quantitative monitoring of solid-phase peptide synthesis by the ninhydrin reaction. *Anal. Biochem.* 117: 147-157.
- Schnorrenberg G. and Gerhardt H. (1989). Fully automatic simultaneous multiple peptide synthesis in micromolar scale - rapid synthesis of series of peptides for screening in biological assays. *Tetrahedron* 45: 7759-7764.
- Shenolikar S. (1994). Protein serine/threonine phosphatases - new avenues for cell regulation. *Annu. Rev. Cell Biol.* 10: 56-86.
- Sheppard R.C. and Williams B.J. (1982). Acid-labile resin linkage agents for use in solid phase peptide synthesis. *Int. J. Pept. Protein Res.* 20: 451-454.
- Sieber P. (1987). A new acid-labile anchor group for the solid-phase synthesis of C-terminal peptide amides by the Fmoc method. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 28: 2107-2110.
- Sieber P. and Riniker B. (1991). Protection of carboxamide functions by the trityl residue: Application to peptide synthesis. *Tetrahedron Lett.* 32: 739-742.
- Small P.W. and Sherrington D.C. (1989). Design and application of a new rigid support for high efficiency continuous-flow peptide synthesis. *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*: 1589-1591.
- Smith G.P. (1985). Filamentous fusion phage: novel expression vectors that display cloned antigens on the virion surface. *Science* 228: 1315-1317.
- Stark M. (1996). Yeast protein serine/threonine phosphatases: multiple roles and diverse forms of regulation. *Yeast* 12: 1647-1675.
- Stewart J.M., Knight M., Paiva A.C.M. and Paiva T. (1972). Histidine in solid phase peptide synthesis: Thyrotropin releasing hormone and the angiotensins. *In Progress in Peptide Research*, Vol. 2 (S. Lande, ed.), Gordon and Breach, New York, pp. 59-64.
- Stewart J.M. and Young J.D. (1984). *Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis*, 2nd Ed., Pierce Chemical Co., Rockford, Illinois.
- Stralfors P., Hiraga A. and Cohen P. (1985). The protein phosphatases involved in cellular regulation. Purification and characterization of the glycogen-bound form of protein phosphatase 1 from skeletal muscle. *Eur. J. Biochem.* 149: 295-303.

Tam J.P., Heath W.F. and Merrifield R.B. (1983).  $S_N2$  deprotection of synthetic peptides with a low concentration of HF in dimethyl sulfide: Evidence and application in peptide synthesis. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 105: 6442-6455.

Tam J.P. and Merrifield R.B. (1987). Strong acid deprotection of synthetic peptides: Mechanisms and methods. *In* The Peptides, Vol. 9 (S. Udenfriend and J. Meienhofer, eds.), Academic Press, New York, pp. 185-248.

Tang P.M., Bondor J.A., Swiderek L.M. and de Paoli-Roach A.A. (1991). Molecular cloning and expression of the regulatory ( $R_{GL}$ ) subunit of glycogen-associated protein phosphatase. *J. Biol. Chem.* 266: 15782-15789.

Tiselius A. (1943). Studies on adsorption analysis. *Kolloid Z.* 105: 101.

Van Eynde A., Wera S., Beullens M., Torrekens S., Van Leuven F., Stalmans W. and Bollen M. (1995). Molecular cloning of NIPP-1, a nuclear inhibitor of protein phosphatase-1, reveals homology with polypeptides involved in RNA processing. *J. Biol. Chem.* 270: 28068-28074.

Veber D.F., Milkowski J.D., Varga S.L., Denkwalter R.G. and Hirschmann R. (1972). Acetamidomethyl: A novel thiol protecting group for cysteine. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 94: 5456-5461.

Wang S.S. (1973). p-Alkoxybenzyl alcohol resin and p-alkoxybenzyloxycarbonyl-hydrazide resin for solid phase synthesis of protected peptide fragments. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 95: 1328-1333.

Wang Z. and Laursen R.A. (1992). Multiple peptide synthesis on polypropylene membranes for rapid screening of bioactive peptides. *Peptide Res.* 5: 275-280.

Wera S. and Hemmings B.A. (1995). Serine/threonine protein phosphatases. *Biochem. J.* 311: 17-29.

Weygand F., Steglich W. and Bjarnason J. (1968). Leicht abspaltbare Schutzgruppen für die Säureamidfunktion 3: Derivate des Asparagins und Glutamins mit 2,4-dimethoxy-benzyl-und 2,4,6-trimethoxy-benzyl-geschützten Amidgruppen. *Chem. Ber.* 101: 3642-3648.

Wong W.Y., Irvin R.T., Paranchych W. and Hodges R.S. (1992). Antigen-antibody interactions: Elucidation of the epitope and strain-specificity of a monoclonal antibody directed against the pilin protein adherence binding domain of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* strain K. *Protein Sci.* 1: 1308-1318.

Wong W.Y., Sheth H.B., Holm A., Hodges R.S. and Irvin R.T. (1994). Representative Combinatorial Peptide Libraries: An approach to reduce both synthesis and screening efforts. *Methods: A Companion to Methods in Enzymology* 6: 404-410.

Yajima H., Takeyama M., Kanaki J. and Mitani K. (1978). The mesitylene-2-sulphonyl group, an acidolytically removable  $NG$ -protecting group for arginine. *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.*: 482-483.

Yajima H., Fujii N., Funakoshi S., Watanabe T., Murayama E. and Otaka A. (1988). New strategy for the chemical synthesis of proteins. *Tetrahedron* 44: 805-819.

Yamashiro D. and Li C.H. (1973). Protection of tyrosine in solid-phase peptide synthesis. *J. Org. Chem.* 38: 591-592.

Zhou M.M.*et al.* (1995). Structure and ligand recognition of the phosphotyrosine binding domain of SHC. *Nature* 378: 584-592.

# **APPENDIX A**

## **MULTIPLE PEPTIDE SYNTHESIZER**

**Parts & Materials**

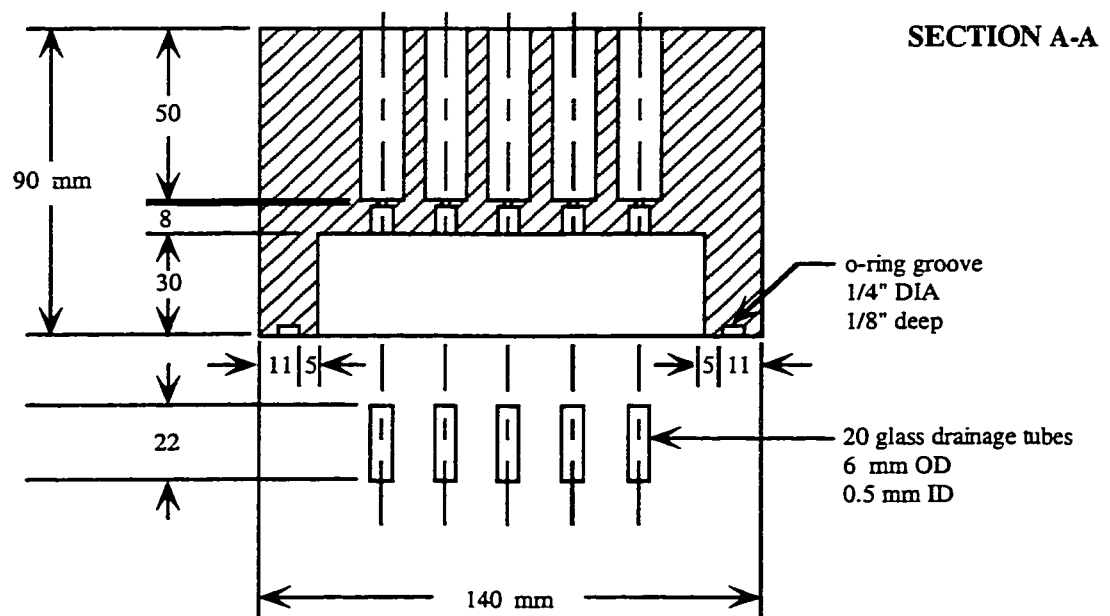
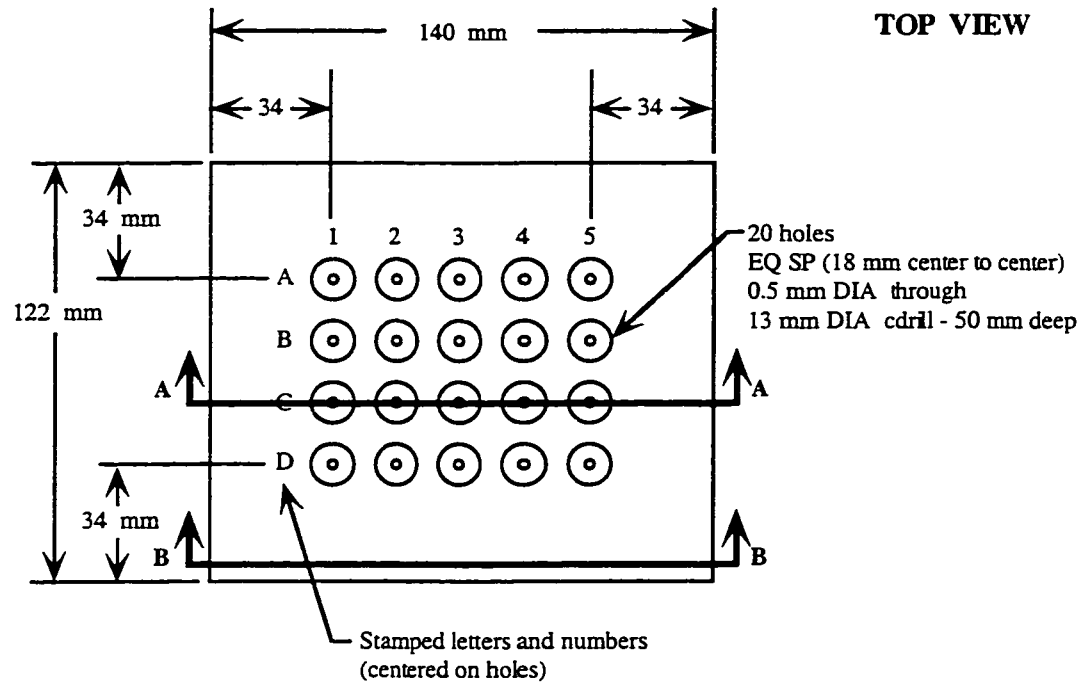
**Technical Drawings**

## SYNTHESIZER PARTS & MATERIALS

- 1/8", 3/16" 316 stainless steel sheet
- Gas rotameter with regulating valve (0.1-1.0 L/min)
- Manual miniature teflon 3-valve distribution manifold
- Manual miniature on-off teflon valve
- Teflon tee connector
- Teflon tubing (0.5 mm ID, 1.5 mm OD)
- Tefzel unions, flangeless ferrules and nuts
- Stainless steel adjustable tension clamps
- Glass capillary tubing (0.5 mm ID, 6 mm OD)
- 316 stainless steel tubing (0.5 mm ID, 0.8 mm OD)
- C-flex tubing (1/8" ID, 1/4" OD)
- Polyethylene frits (13 mm dia, 20  $\mu$  nominal pore size)

## 20 REACTOR MODEL

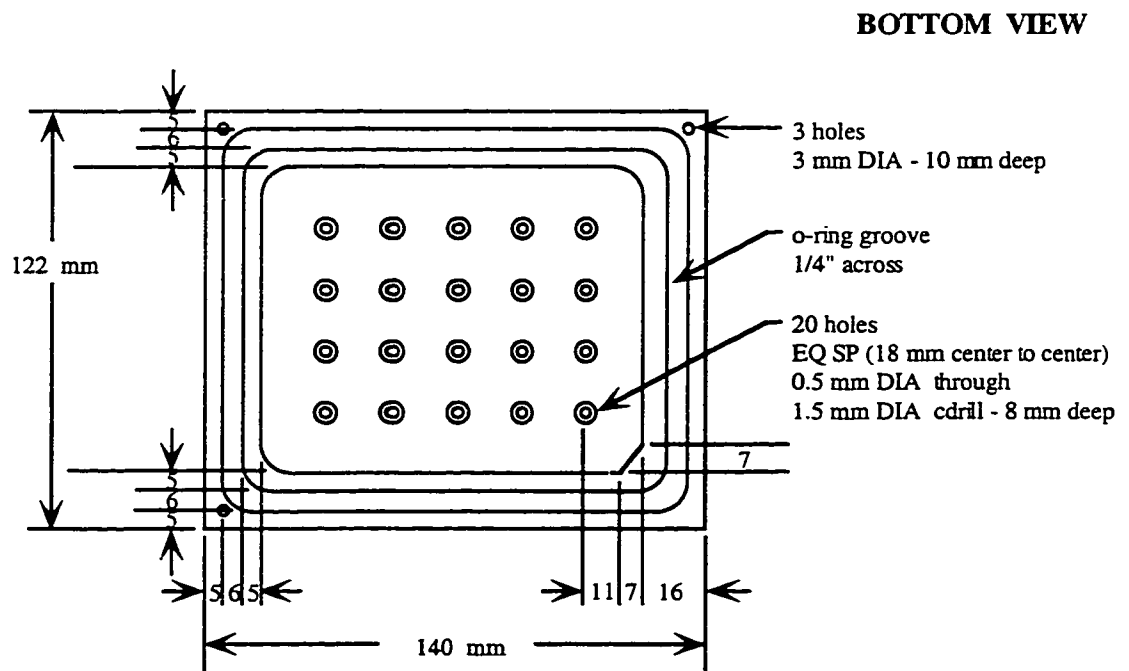
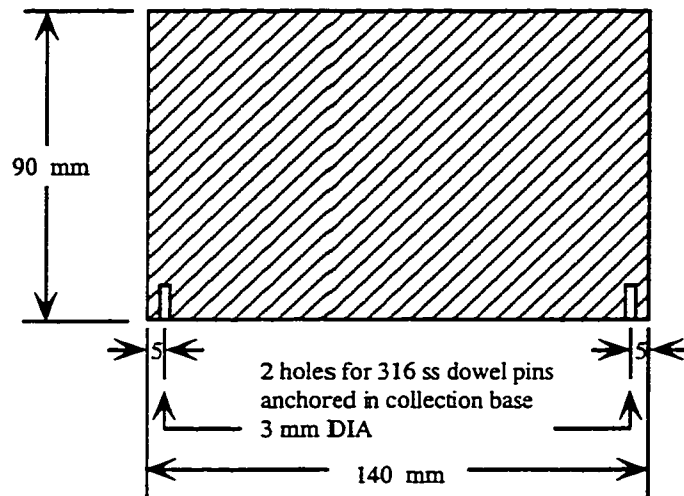
## REACTOR BLOCK





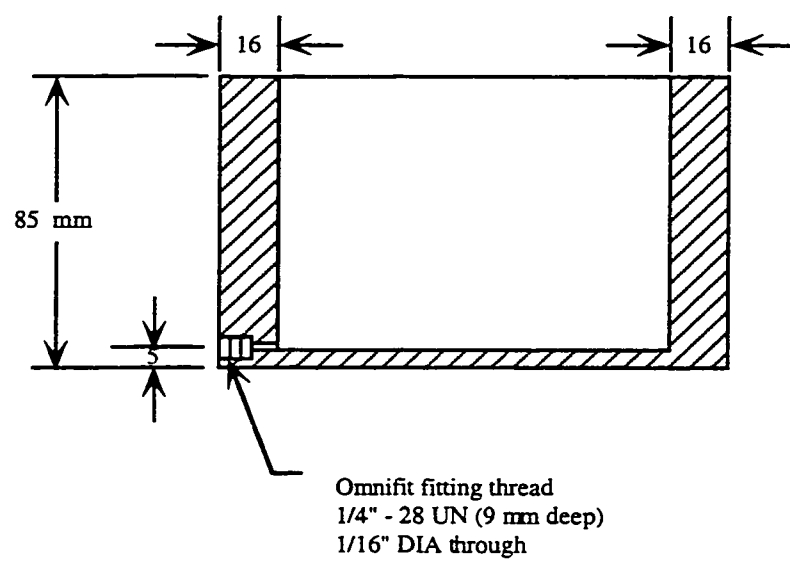
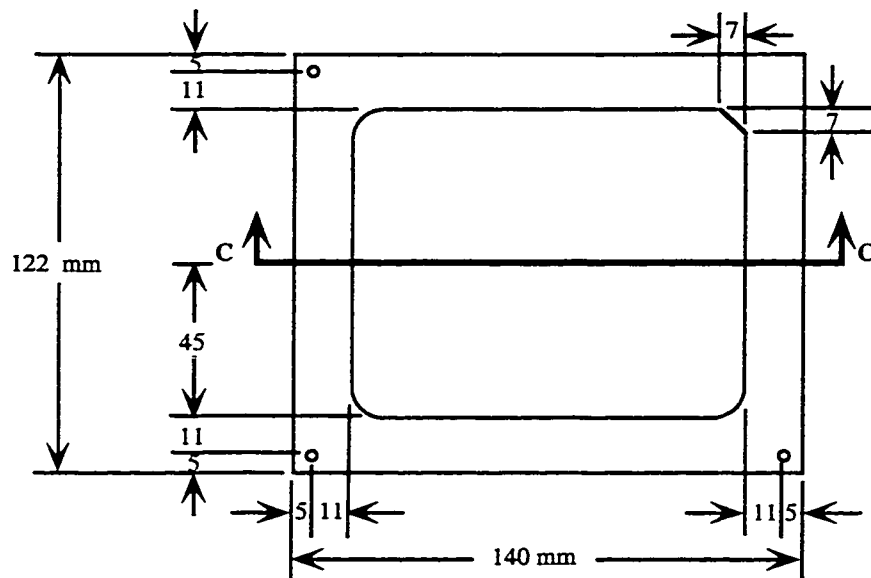
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## REACTOR BLOCK



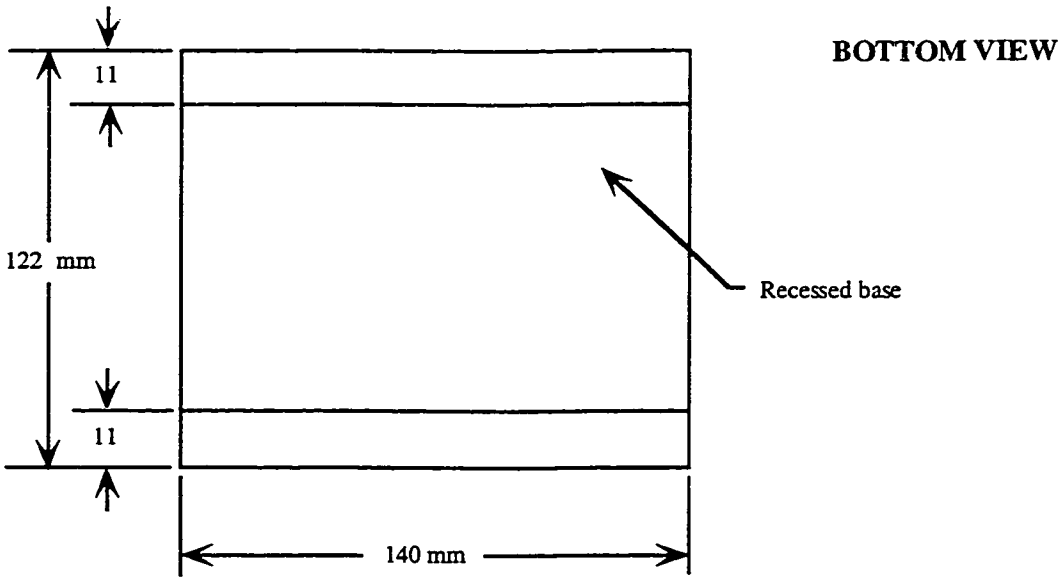
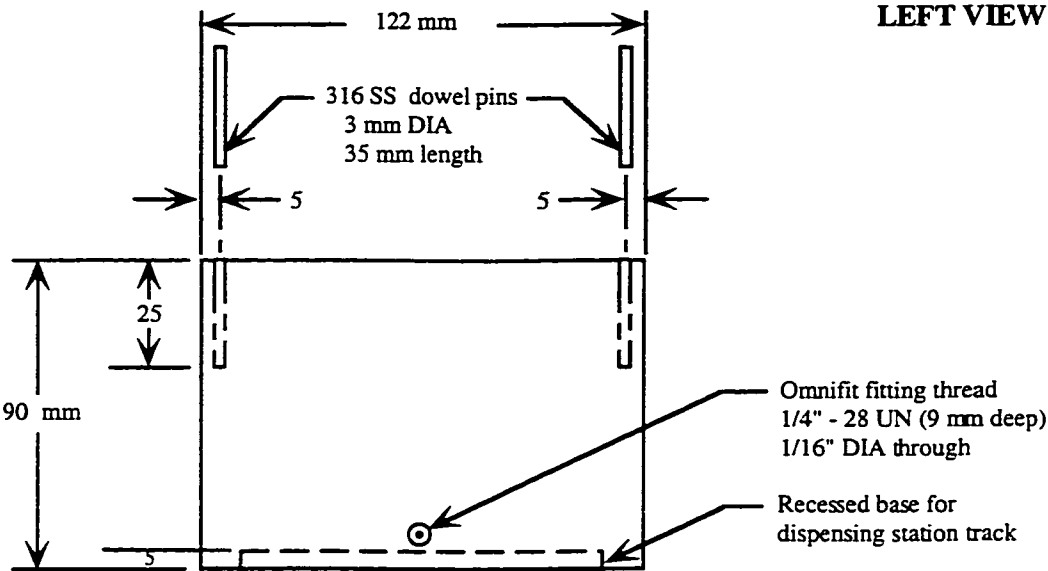
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## COLLECTION BASE



20 REACTOR MODEL

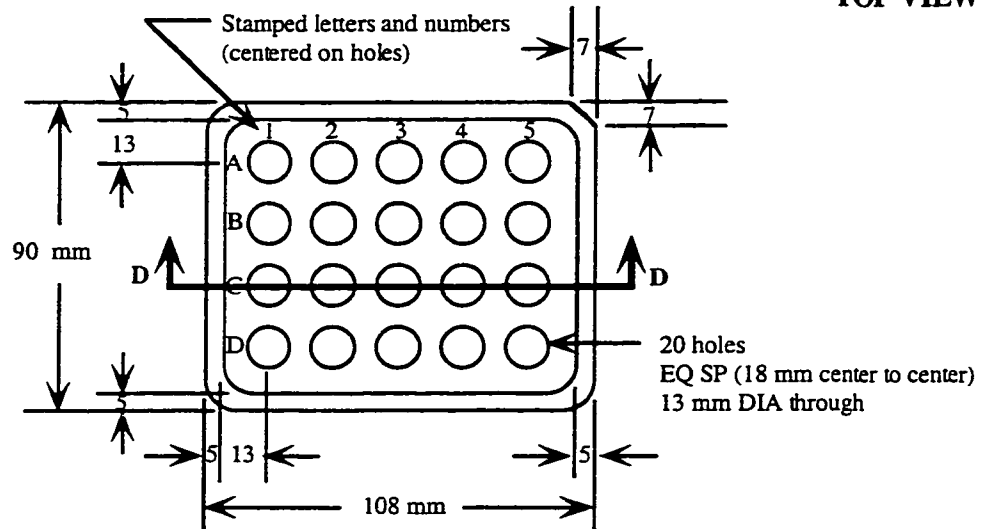
COLLECTION BASE



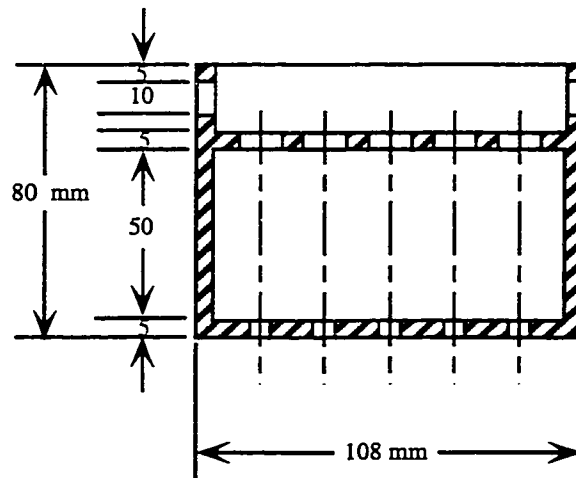
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## COLLECTION TUBE RACK

TOP VIEW

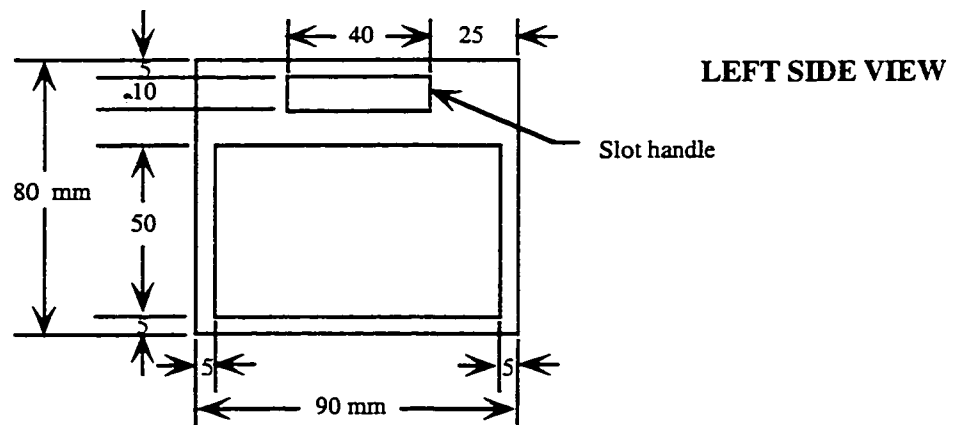
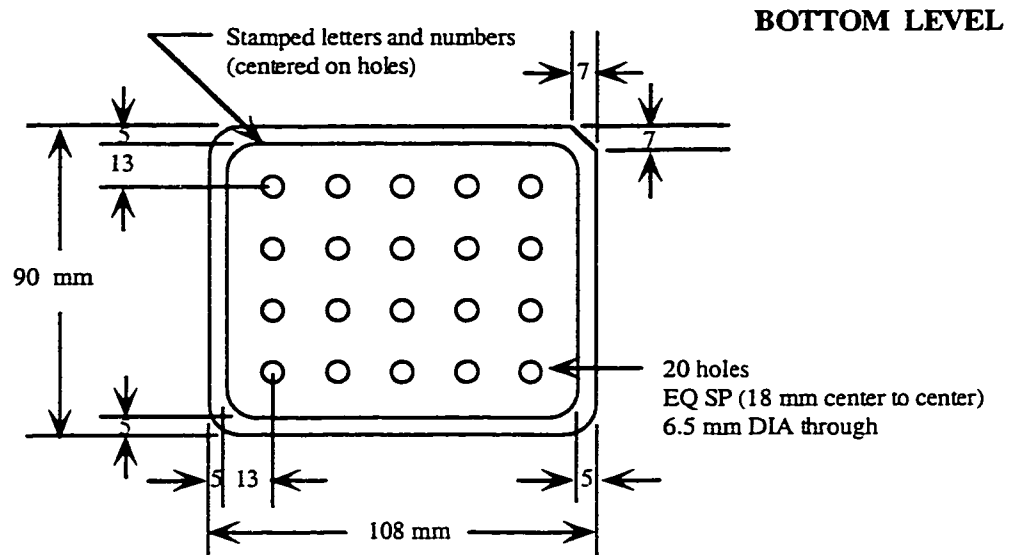


SECTION D-D



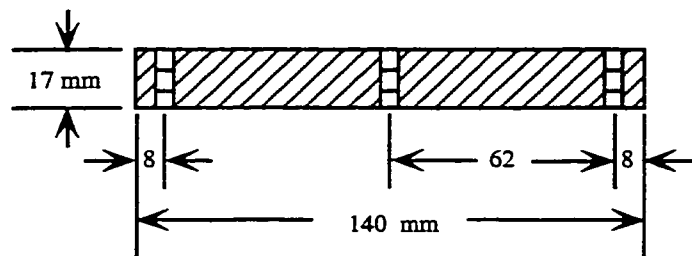
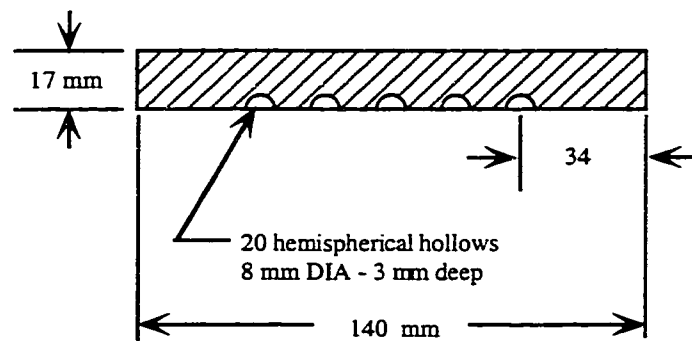
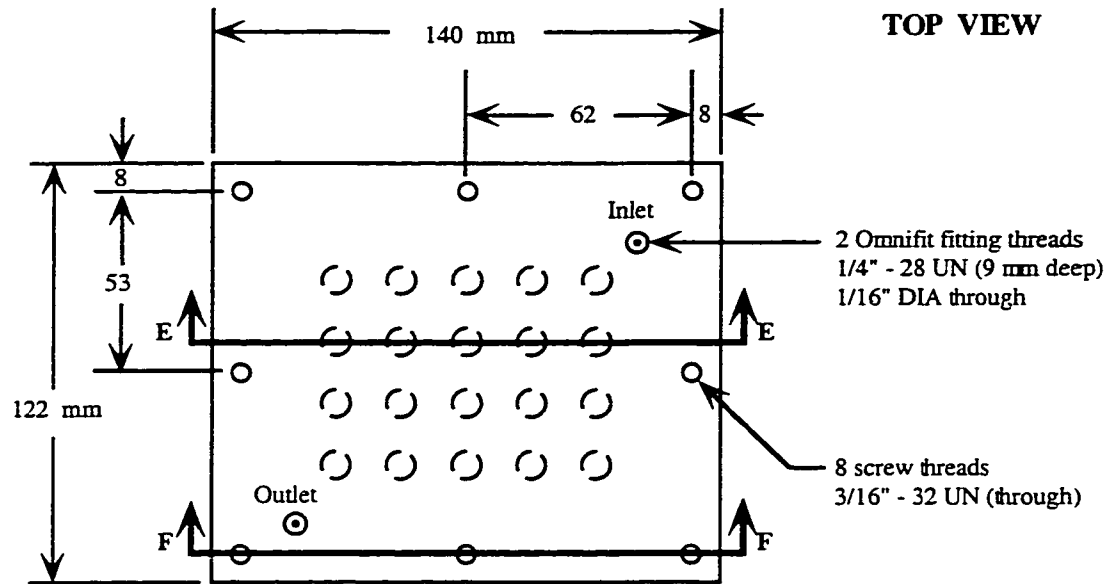
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## COLLECTION TUBE RACK



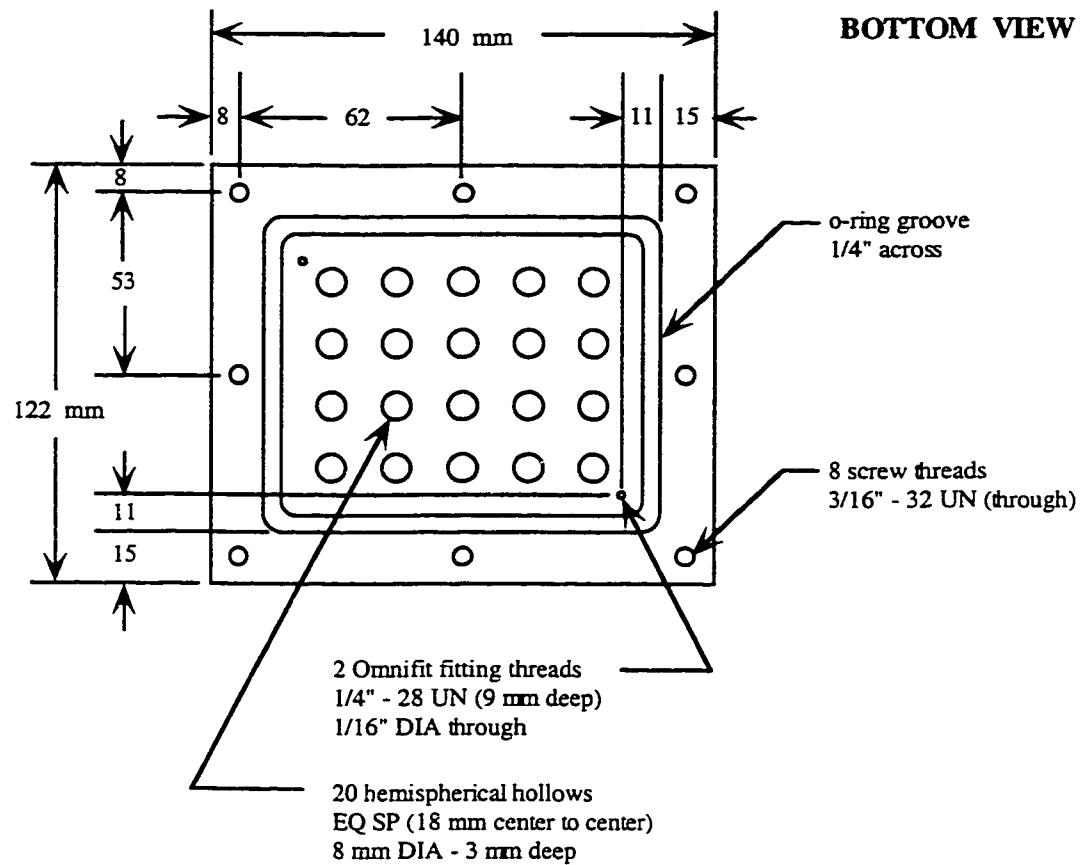
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## DISPENSER UPPER SECTION



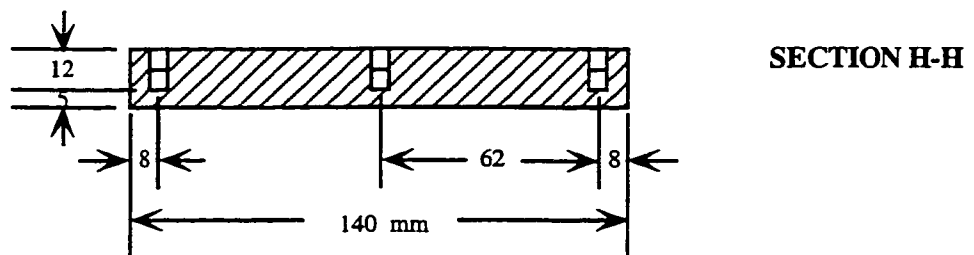
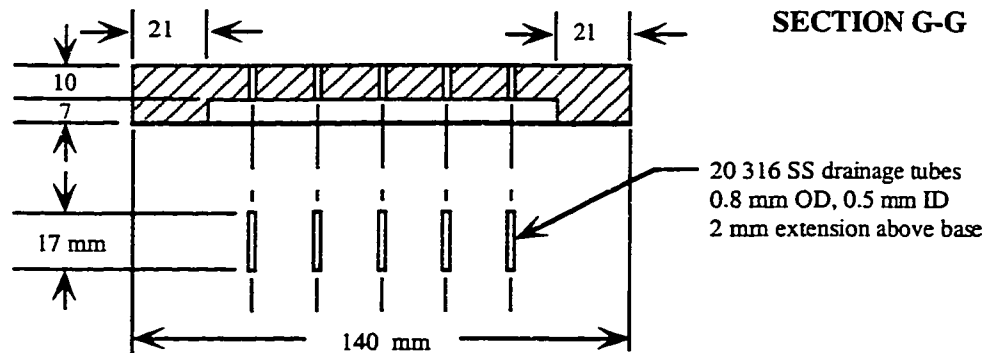
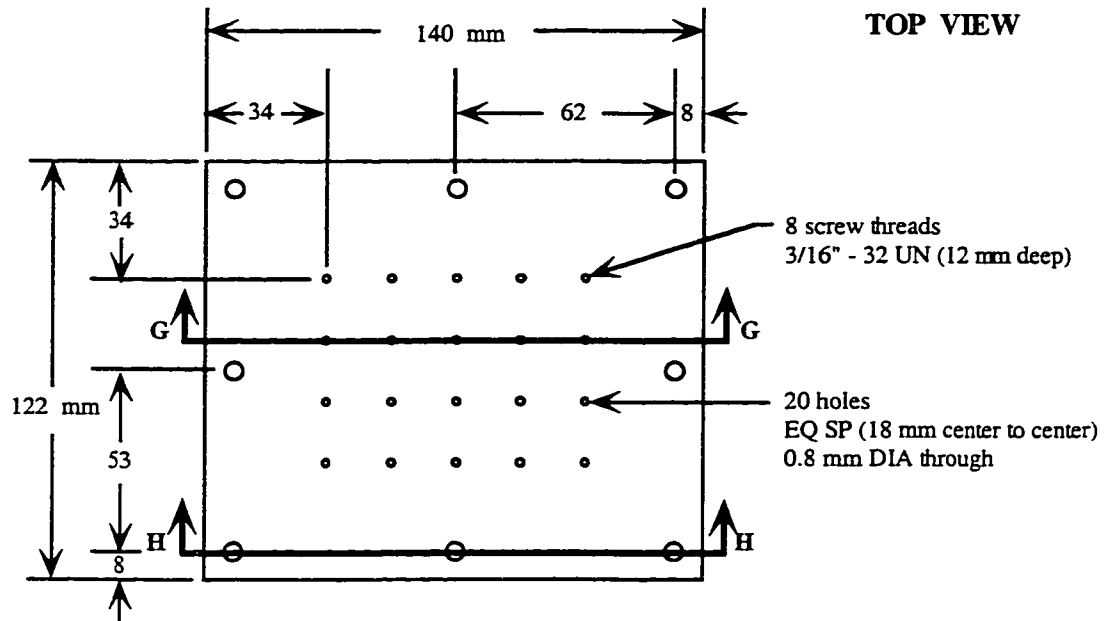
## 20 REACTOR MODEL

## DISPENSER UPPER SECTION



## 20 REACTOR MODEL

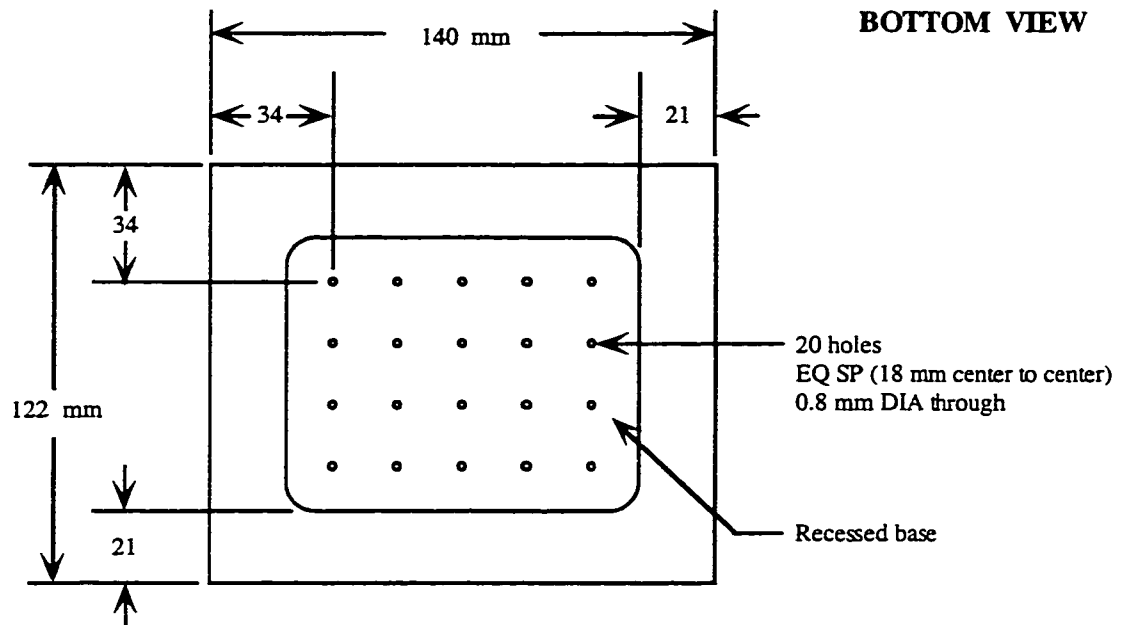
## DISPENSER BASE





## 20 REACTOR MODEL

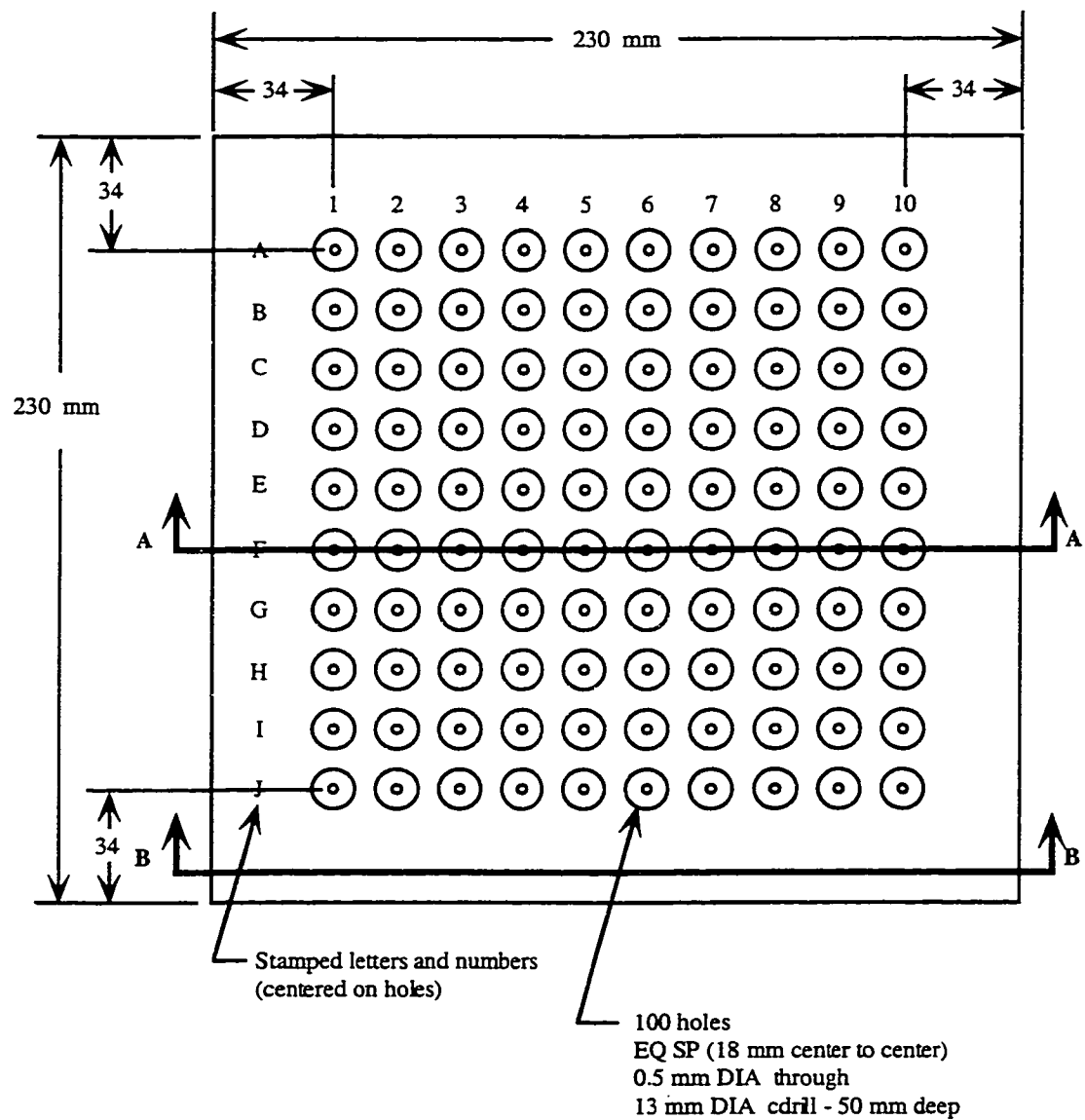
## DISPENSER BASE



# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# REACTOR BLOCK

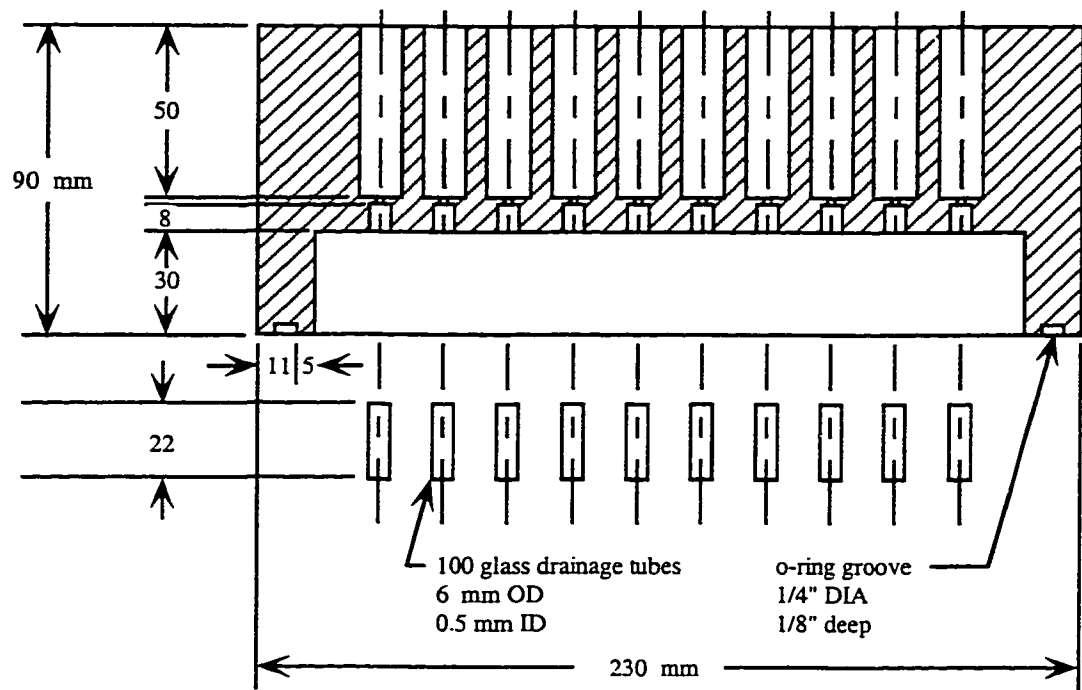
## TOP VIEW



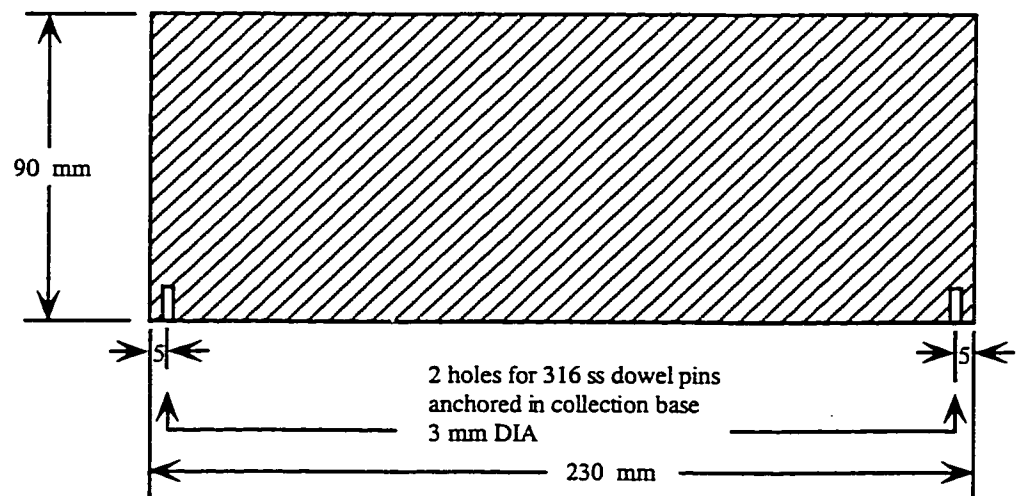
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# REACTOR BLOCK

## SECTION A-A



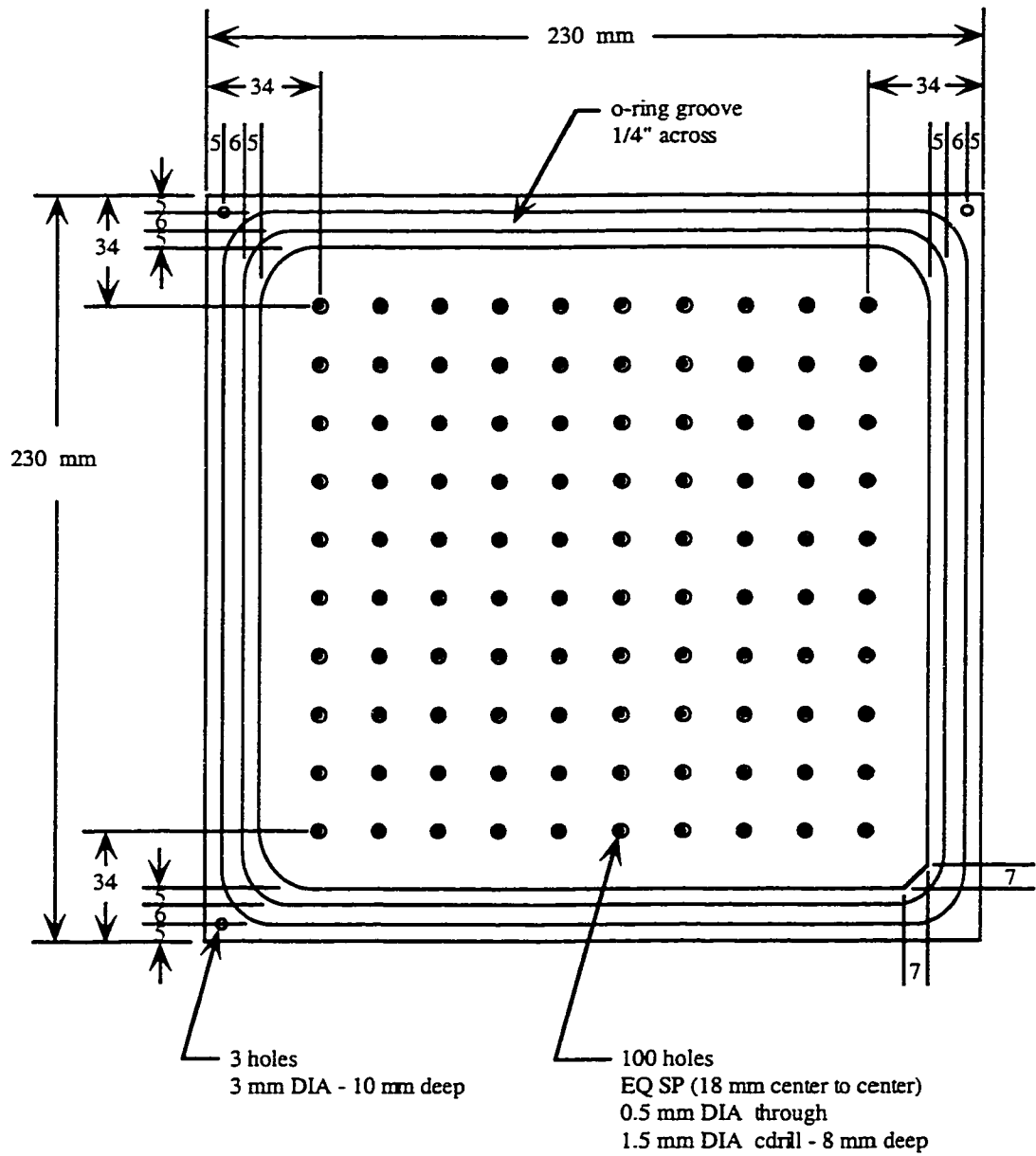
## SECTION B-B



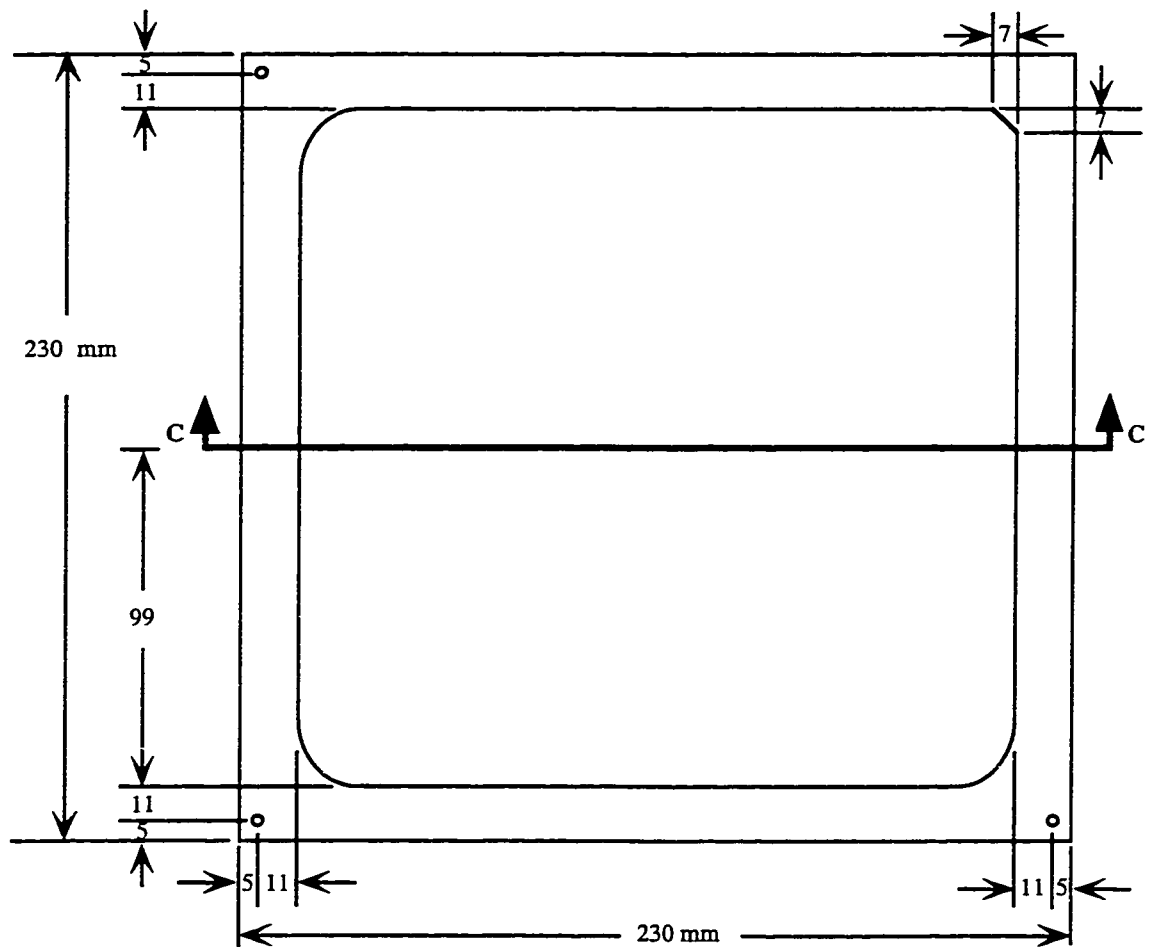
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# REACTOR BLOCK

## BOTTOM VIEW



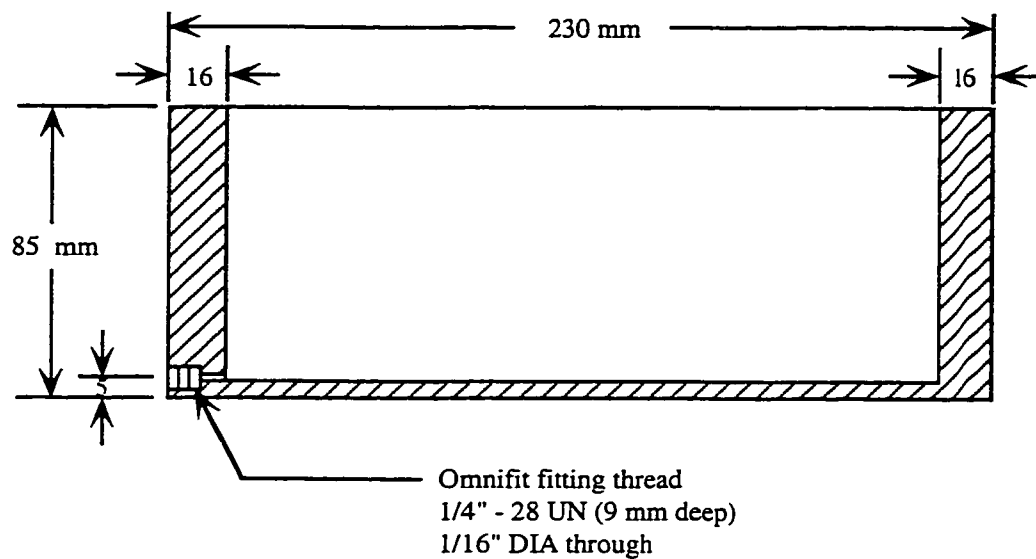
TOP VIEW



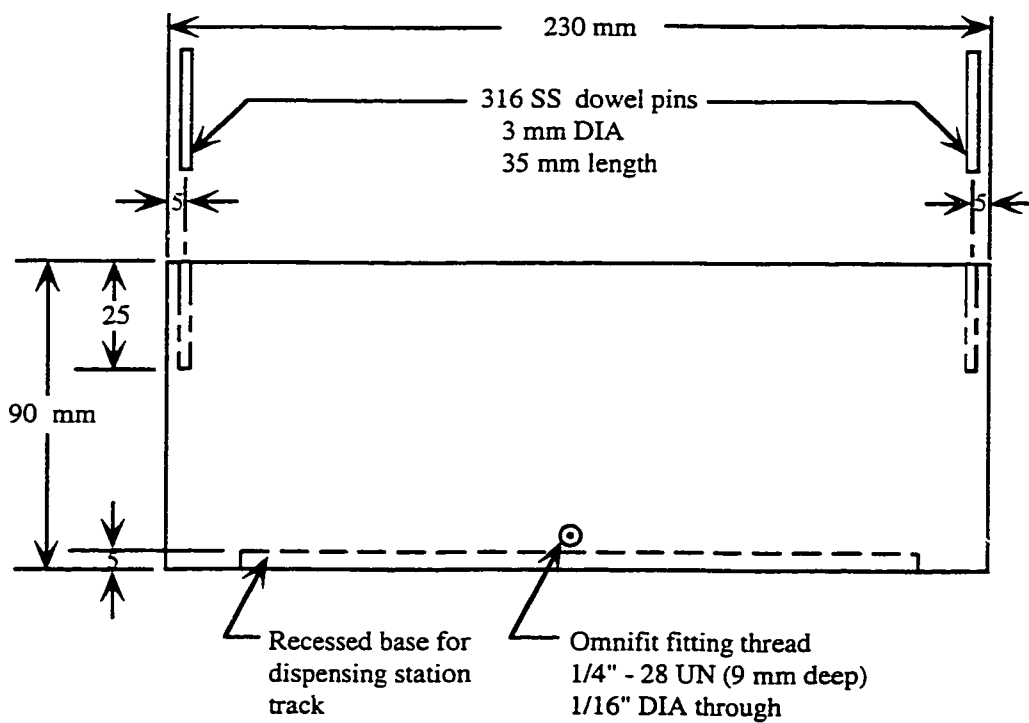
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# COLLECTION BASE

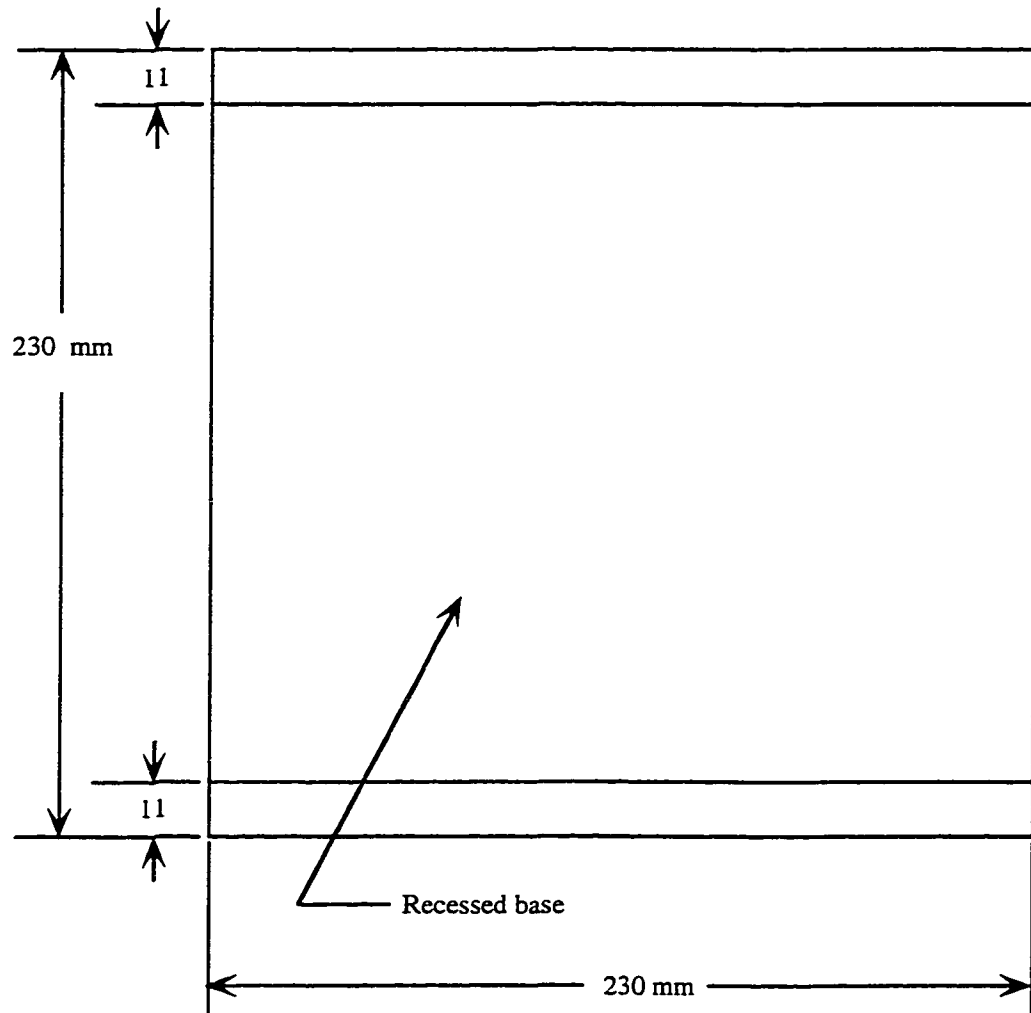
## SECTION C-C



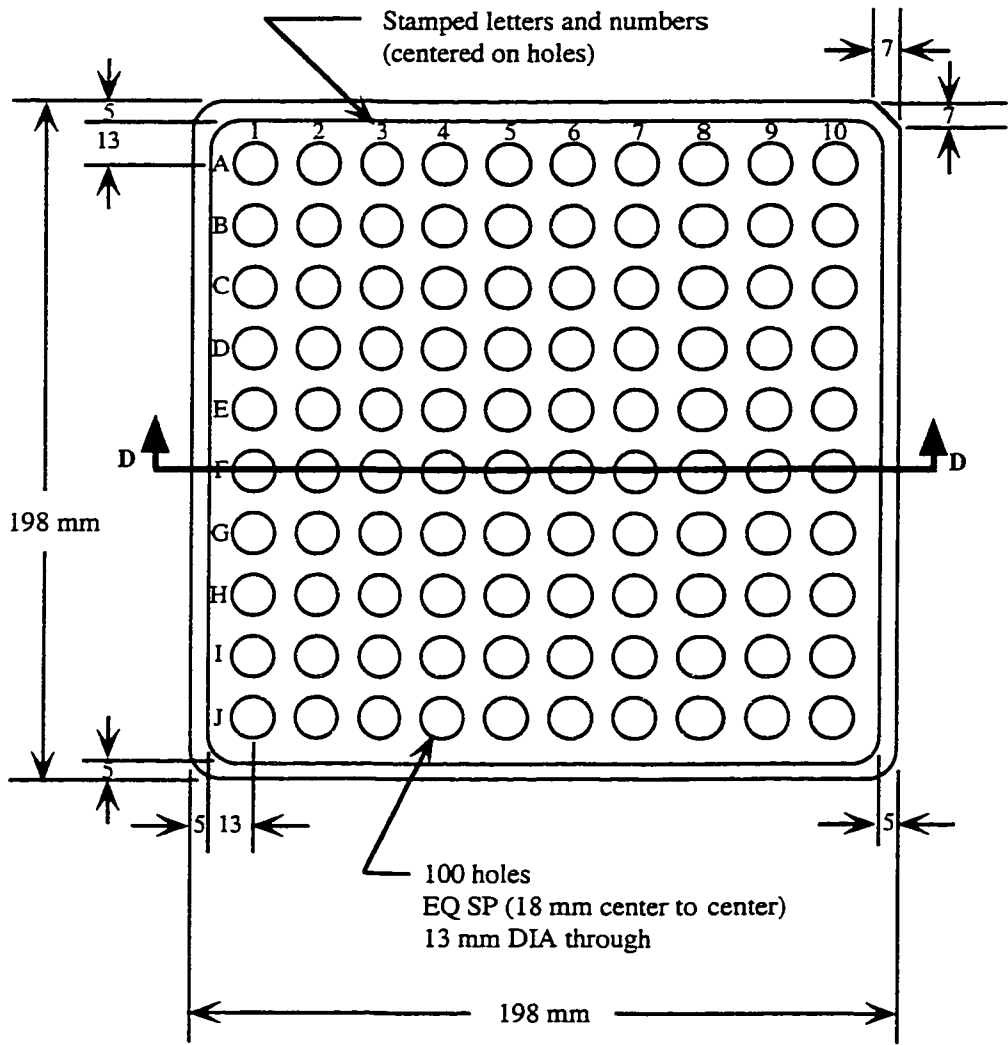
## LEFT VIEW



BOTTOM VIEW



TOP LEVEL

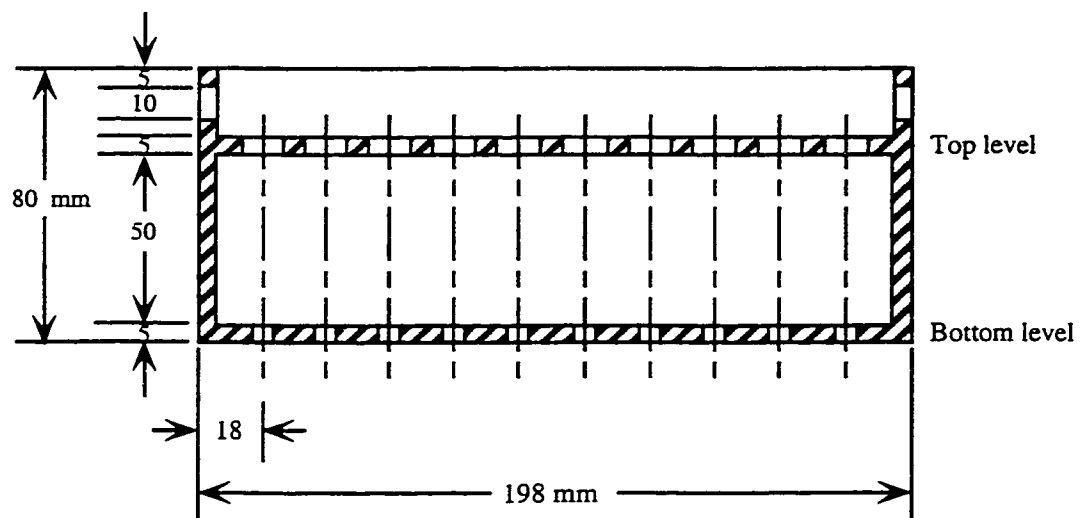




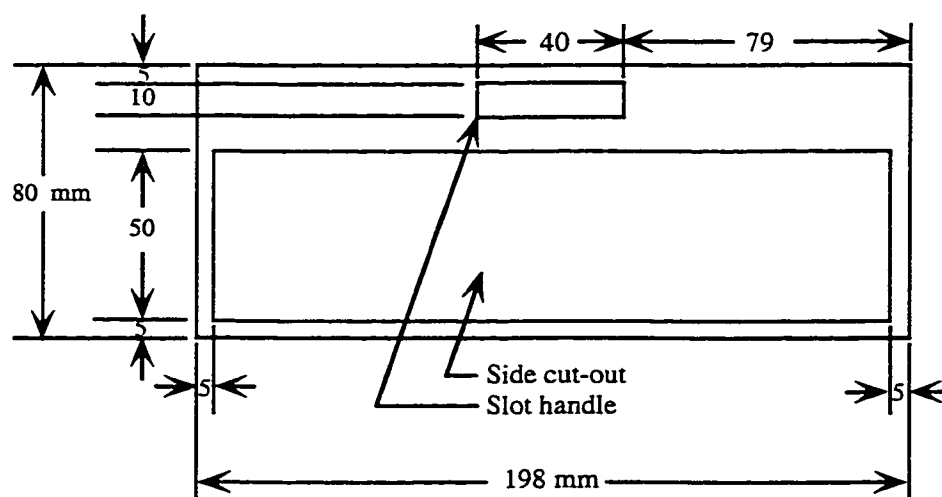
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# COLLECTION TUBE RACK

SECTION D-D



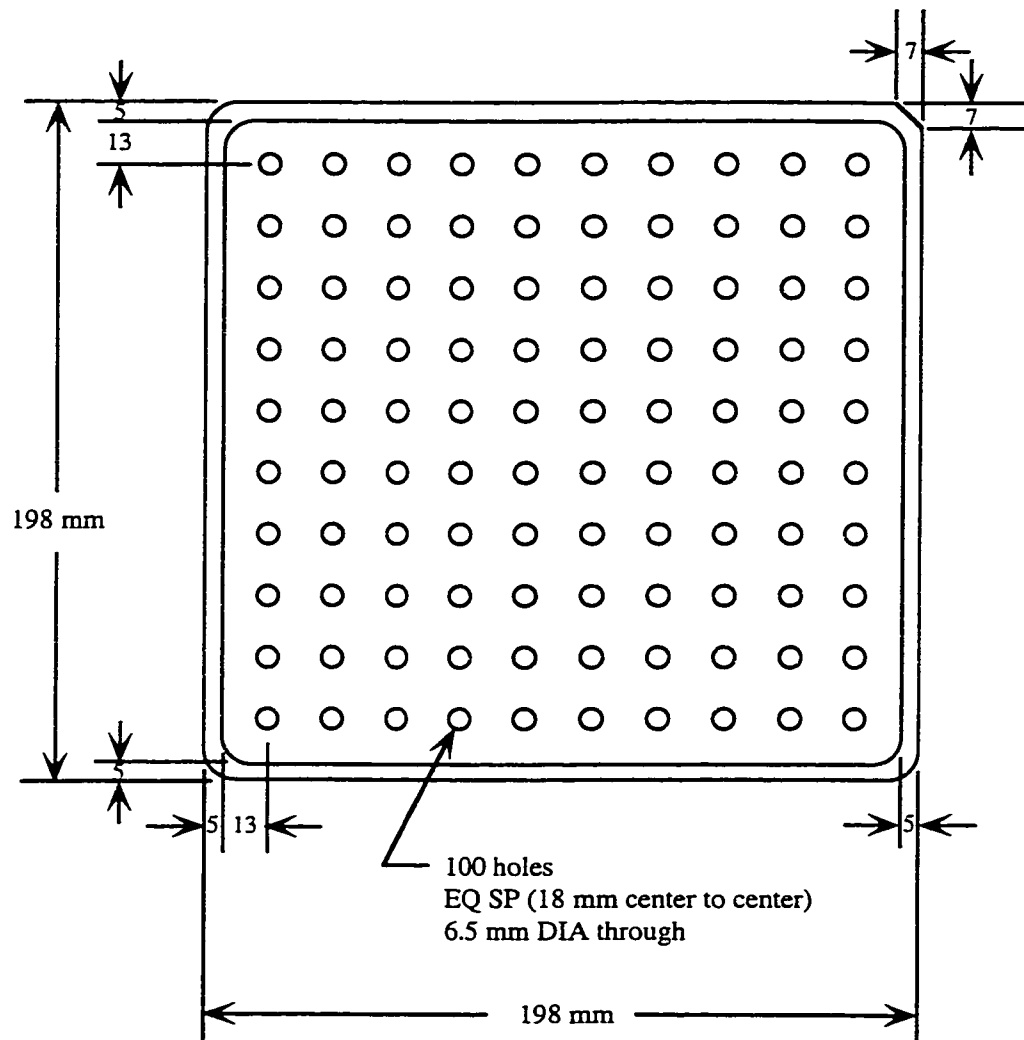
LEFT SIDE VIEW



# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# COLLECTION TUBE RACK

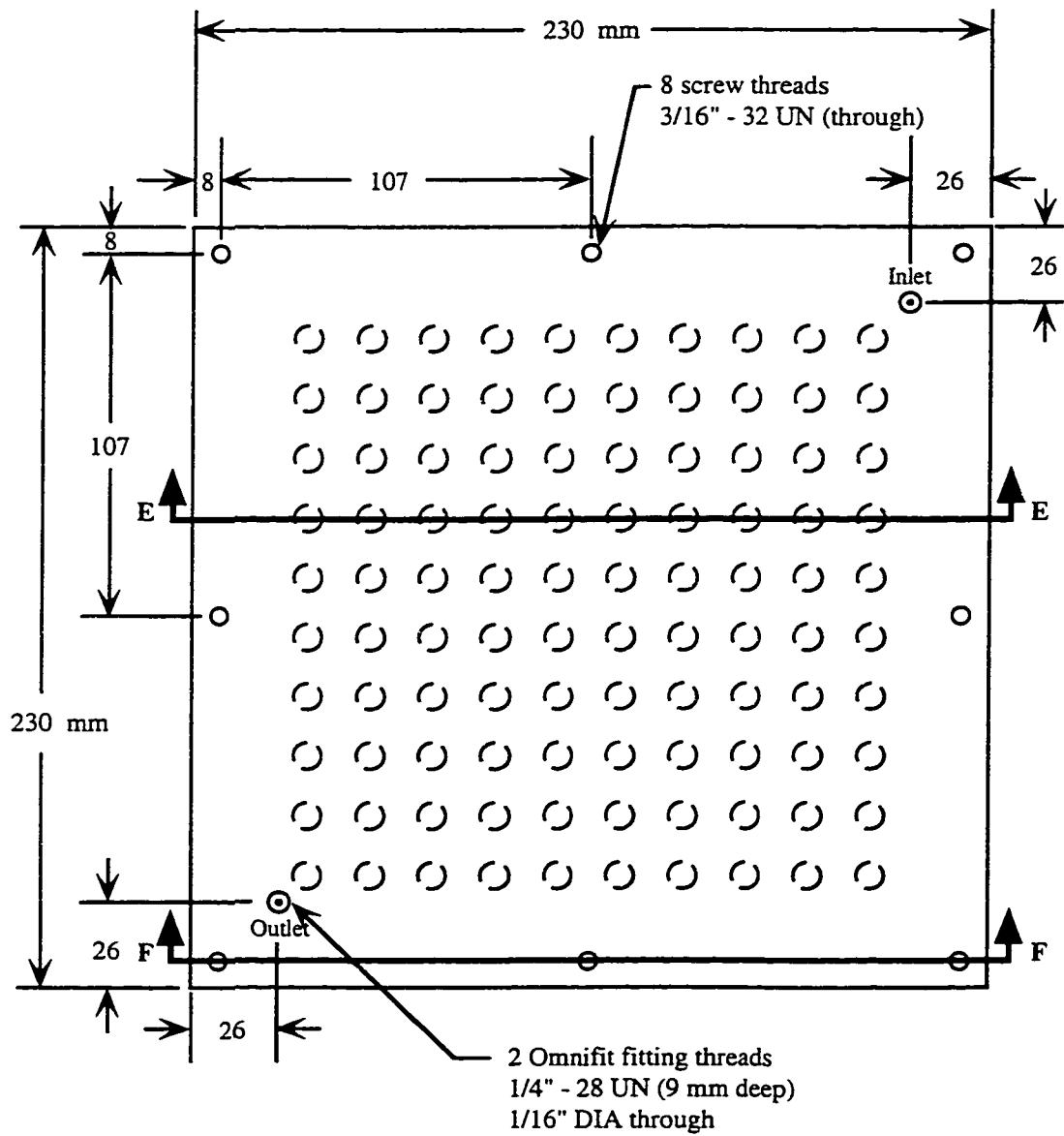
## BOTTOM LEVEL



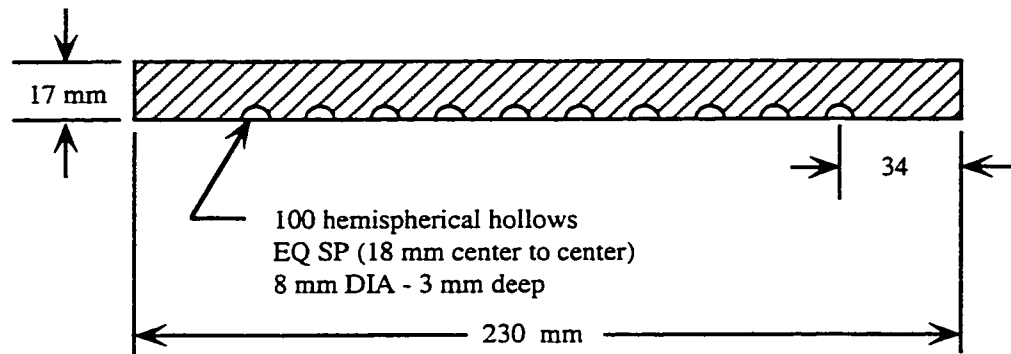
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# DISPENSER UPPER SECTION

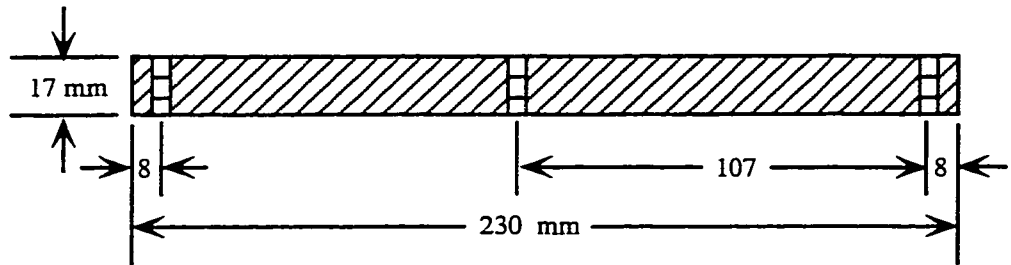
## TOP VIEW



SECTION E-E



SECTION F-F

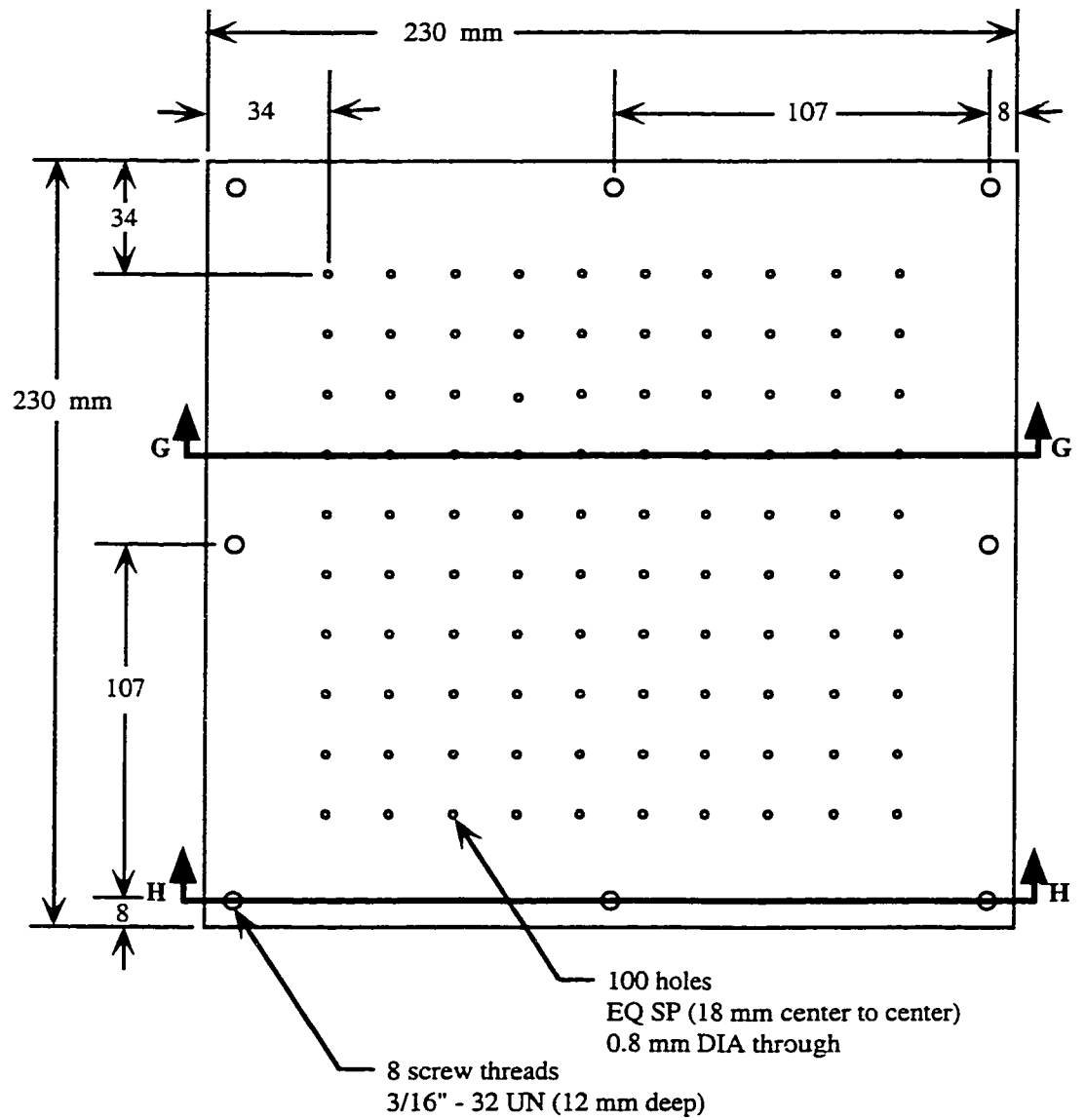


## DISPENSER UPPER SECTION

# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# DISPENSER BASE

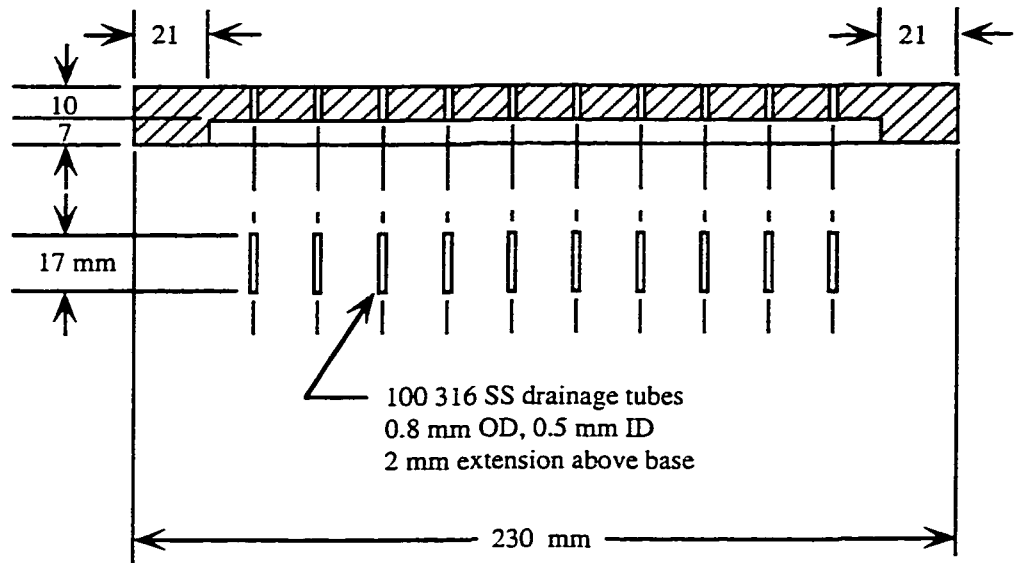
## TOP VIEW



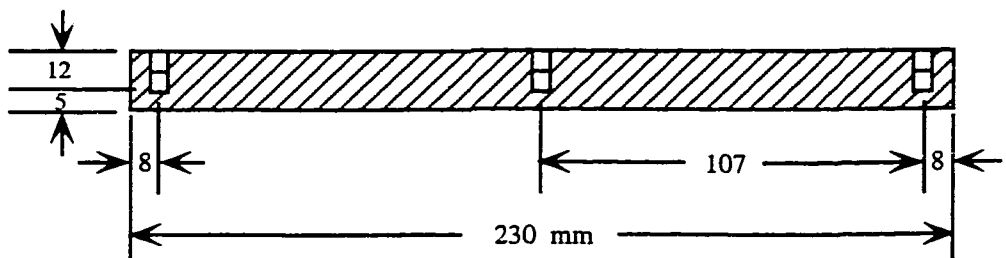
# 100 REACTOR MODEL

# DISPENSER BASE

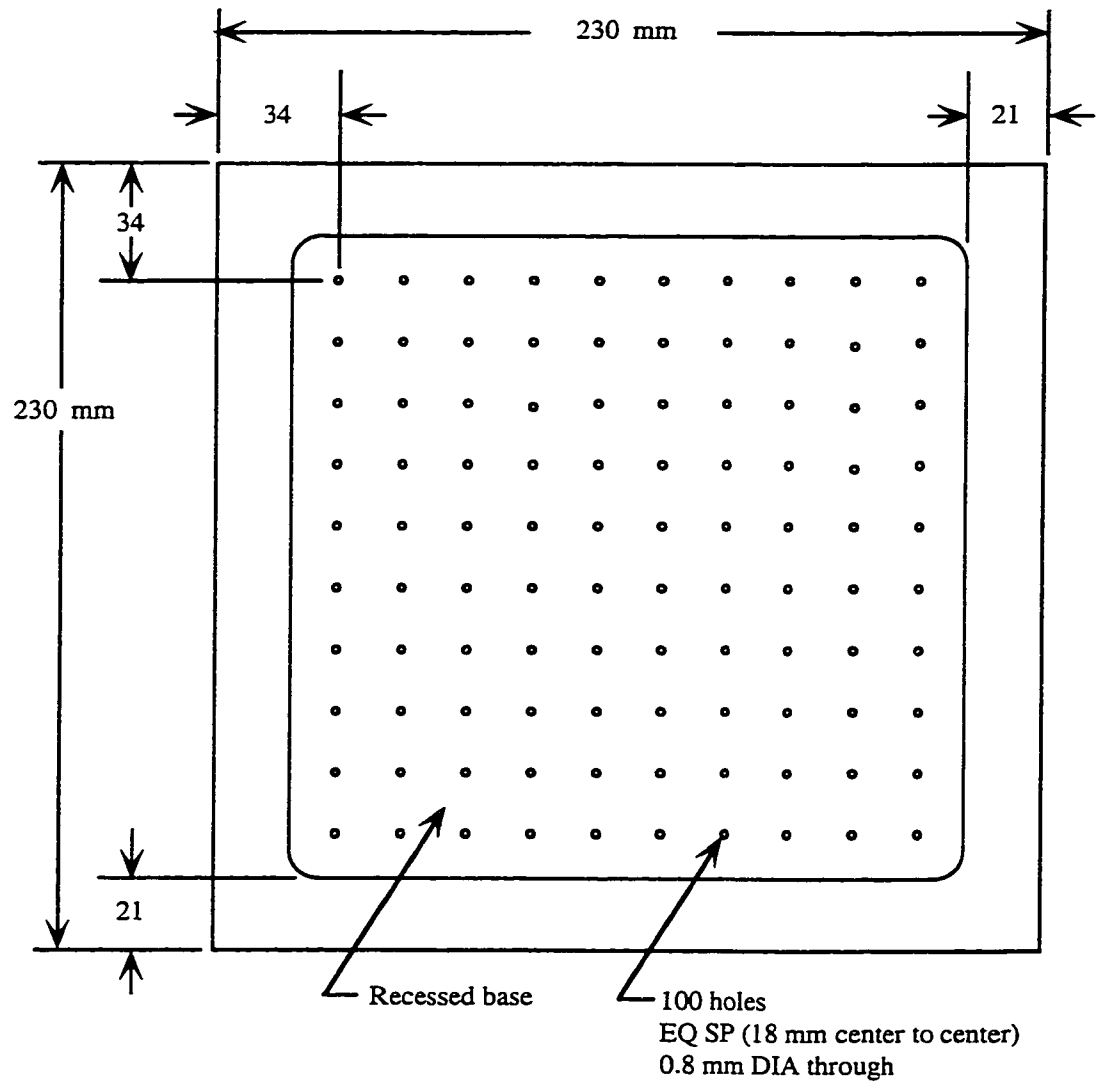
## SECTION G-G



## SECTION H-H



BOTTOM VIEW





## **APPENDIX B**

### **MULTIPLE PEPTIDE SYNTHESIZER OPERATING MANUAL**

## STANDARD PROTOCOL

|                      |   |   |
|----------------------|---|---|
| Protection strategy: | Fmoc  |   |
| Resin:               | Continuous flow resin<br><br>(Batch resins may be used, but nitrogen sparging must be employed and a lower quality product may still be the result)   |   |
| Solvents:            | DMF<br>DCM  | (for deprotection, activation, and washing)<br>(for drying resin before cleavage) |
| Deprotection:        | 20% piperidine in DMF<br>2 x 10-minute deprotections  | (stock solution)  |
| Activation:          | <i>In situ</i> generation of OBt active esters<br><br>1: 1: 2: 1 HBTU: HOBt: DIEA: Fmoc-amino acid (equivalents)<br><br>0.45 M HBTU / HOBt in DMF (stock solution)<br><br>Fmoc-amino acids dissolved in DMF (freshly prepared)<br><br>Catalytic base DIEA (distilled) |   |
| Coupling conditions: | Easy coupling   | 5-fold excess reagents<br>30 minute coupling time                                 |
|                      | Difficult coupling  | 10-fold excess reagents<br>60 minute coupling time                                |
| Cleavage:            | Pre-dry resin using DCM wash<br>Dry under vacuum for at least 1 hour (depending on resin)<br><br>Modified Reagent K all-purpose cleavage cocktail<br><br>90% TFA (freshly prepared)<br>5% water<br>3% thioanisole<br>2% EDT<br><br>2 hour cleavage period             |   |

## STANDARD PROTOCOL (continued)

Recovery: Cold ether precipitation of crude peptide from cleavage solution

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 10:1 volume ratio | (13x100 mm collection test tubes)    |
| 20:1 volume ratio | (50 mL conical centrifugation tubes) |

### Lyophilization

From H<sub>2</sub>O (may need up to 10% acetic acid to dissolve)

For use in pH-sensitive assays, may neutralize by lyophilizing from aqueous NH<sub>4</sub>HCO<sub>3</sub>

## STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURES

### INSTALLATION

The Multiple Peptide Synthesizer must be operated in a fumehood due to its open cabinet design. The synthesizer fits into a standard-sized fumehood, which must contain a water tap acting as an aspirator (i.e. vacuum source) for the synthesizer; a nitrogen gas cylinder is required for pressurization of the reaction module.

- Level cabinet according to bubble level on top of dispensing station, by means of adjustable feet.
- Connect aspirator trap to back control panel at labeled connector using provided tubing, then connect trap to aspirator using vacuum tubing; turn on water tap, open evacuation valve at work station valve manifold, and ensure that aspirator is evacuating line leading to aspirator trap, then close valve and turn off tap.
- Connect nitrogen gas cylinder, equipped with pressure reduction valve, to control panel at labeled connector, and adjust reduction valve to achieve a pressure reduction to 15 psi; open reaction module and pressurization valves at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve to achieve a flowrate of 0.1 L/min, then close pressurization valve.
- Select appropriate dispenser module (20- or 100-reactor version), mount it in dispensing station, and connect all lines leading from control panel to dispenser module, as labeled.

- Fill wash and deprotection reservoirs and connect each through a 100 mL bottle-top dispenser to control panel at appropriate labeled connector using provided tubing, and set each bottle-top dispense to dispense 20 mL (20-reactor model) or 100 mL (100-reactor model); place collection tray at dispensing station.
- Open wash valve at dispensing station valve manifold, test wash dispensing line using bottle-top dispenser mounted on wash reservoir, and continue manually dispensing wash solvent until all air has been displaced from dispenser module and each drainage tube is dispensing wash solvent into collection tray below, then close wash valve.
- Repeat above step for deprotection valve and deprotection reservoir, then open wash valve and wash out dispenser module with a minimum of 10 solvent washes (using a wash volume of 20 mL for 20-reactor model or 100 mL for 100-reactor module); close wash valve, empty collection tray to waste and remove.
- Place appropriate reaction module (20- or 100-reactor version) at work station and connect it to control panel at labeled connector using provided tubing.

## PREPARATION FOR SYNTHESIS

### Synthesis Checkerboards

- Prepare a peptide checkerboard assigning a reactor to each peptide to be synthesized. Reactors are designated by column letter and row number, as seen in the following checkerboard for the 20-reactor model:

|    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| A1 | B1 | C1 | D1 | E1 |
| A2 | B2 | C2 | D2 | E2 |
| A3 | B3 | C3 | D3 | E3 |
| A4 | B4 | C4 | D4 | E4 |

- Prepare an amino acid checkerboard for each coupling round of synthesis, assigning the required amino acid residue for each reactor.

### Amino Acids

- Select and label 15 mL or 50 mL conical centrifugation tubes, as appropriate, for activated amino acid solutions required for each residue addition to each reactor (common residues can be prepared in a common container).
- Weigh out appropriate amino acids, transfer to their respective containers, and seal and store containers until use.

## **Preparation of Dispensing Station**

- Fill wash reservoir if required.
- Prepare deprotection reagent if required, and fill corresponding reservoir.
- If a different dispenser module (20- or 100-reactor version) desired, disconnect all lines leading to dispenser module, unlock dispenser slot, slide out module and exchange it for desired module, relock dispenser slot, and reconnect all lines as labeled.

## **Assembly of Reaction Module**

- Select desired reaction module (20- or 100-reactor version).
- Disassemble reaction module, and ensure collection base is clean (see Cleaning and Maintenance Procedure if required).
- Ensure column reactors in reactor block are clean; inspect reactor block o-ring and replace if required before proceeding (see Clean-up Procedure).
- Reassemble reaction module, and clamp reactor block and base together.
- Insert bottom frit into each column reactor in block (even unused reactors) using frit installer.
- Vacuum-clean inserted frits and reactor interior as required.

## **Resin Addition**

- For each reactor of reaction module, weigh out appropriate amount of resin and transfer to reactor.

- Load reactors by row or column; tape off currently unused rows or columns to avoid contamination and to keep track of current position in reactor array.
- Cover loaded reactor module to avoid reactor contamination before use.

### **Resin Swelling**

- Before beginning synthesis procedures for the day, resin requires wetting and possible swelling (depending on the resin type).
- Place loaded reaction module on cabinet workspace and connect common inlet / aspiration line from back panel to reaction module. Turn on nitrogen supply to synthesizer (i.e. open gas cylinder valve and adjust pressure as required), open reaction module and pressurization valves at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve as required to achieve a flowrate of 0.1 L/min.
- Slide reaction module into the dispensing station, open wash valve at dispensing station valve manifold, and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of wash solvent for resin scale; turn off wash valve and pressurization valve and leave resin to swell for appropriate time. Once resin swelling is complete, turn on aspirator water supply and open vacuum valve at work station to drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat solvent addition and removal as desired to rinse resin, then turn off water supply and remove module from dispensing station.
- At the end of procedure, proceed to synthesis.



## SYNTHESIS

### Deprotection

- Open reaction module and pressurization valves at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve as required to achieve a flowrate of 0.1 L/min.
- Slide reaction module into dispensing station, open deprotection valve at dispensing station valve manifold, and use bottle-top dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of deprotection reagent for resin scale; turn off deprotection valve and pressurization valve and leave resin to deprotect for appropriate time (normally 10 minutes). Turn on aspirator water supply and open vacuum valve at work station to drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat deprotection as desired.
- Open pressurization valve at workstation and wash valve at dispensing station, and use bottle-top dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of wash solvent for resin scale; turn off wash valve and pressurization valve, open vacuum valve and drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat washing as desired (normally 10 times). Remove reaction module from dispensing station and shut off aspirator water supply.
- At end of procedure, proceed to coupling (or if this is final deprotection, proceed to resin drying).

## Coupling

- Place amino acid containers for current residue addition in dispensing rack. To simplify manual dispensing, organize containers in rack in arrangement corresponding to reactor array. Prepare activated amino acid solutions, adding reagents to appropriate individual containers in dispensing rack and vortexing.
- Open pressurization valve at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve as required to achieve a flowrate of 0.1 L/min.
- Manual addition of activated amino acids from dispensing rack to reactors is performed by pipet and should proceed by rows or columns; tape off currently unused rows or columns to avoid contamination and to keep track of current position in array of reactors.
- Turn off pressurization valve and allow coupling to proceed for desired time.
- Once complete, turn on aspirator water supply and open vacuum valve to drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Slide reaction module into dispensing station for washing (unless a double coupling is required, in which case water supply should be shut off): open pressurization valve, open wash valve and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of wash solvent for resin scale; turn off wash valve and pressurization valve, open vacuum valve and drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat washing as desired (normally 10 times). Remove reaction module from dispensing station and shut off aspirator water supply.
- Once complete, continue with next round of deprotection. Dispose of synthesis waste in aspiration trap as required.

## Acetylation

- Prepare acetylation solution and fill corresponding reservoir; replace deprotection reservoir connection to dispensing station valve manifold with acetylation reservoir connection. Place collection tray under dispensing station, open deprotection valve and prime acetylation bottletop dispenser until all dispenser tubes are dispensing solution. Remove collection tray and dispose of liquid to waste.
- Open pressurization valve at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve as required to achieve a flowrate of 0.1 L/min.
- Slide reaction module into dispensing station, open deprotection valve at dispensing station valve manifold, and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of acetylation reagent for resin scale; turn off deprotection valve and pressurization valve and leave to acetylate for appropriate time (normally same period as coupling time). Turn on aspirator water supply and open vacuum valve at work station to drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve.
- Open pressurization valve at workstation and wash valve at dispensing station, and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of wash solvent for resin scale; turn off wash valve and pressurization valve, open vacuum valve and drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat washing as desired (normally 10 times). Remove reaction module from dispensing station and shut off aspirator water supply.
- Once complete, proceed to resin drying, and dispose of remaining acetylation solution. Dispose of synthesis waste in aspiration trap.

## Resin Drying

- Fill drying solvent reservoir (normally DCM). Replace deprotection reservoir connection to dispensing station valve manifold with drying solvent reservoir connection. Place collection tray under dispensing station, open deprotection valve and prime drying solvent bottletop dispenser until all dispenser tubes are dispensing solution. Remove collection tray and dispose of liquid to waste. Use CAUTION when dealing with DCM!
- Turn on aspirator water supply, open pressurization valve at workstation and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of drying solvent for resin scale; turn off deprotection valve and pressurization valve, open vacuum valve and drain liquid from reactors, then close vacuum valve. Repeat washing as desired (normally 3-5 times). Remove reaction module from dispensing station and shut off aspirator water supply.
- Once complete, resins are ready for cleavage. Dispose of synthesis waste in aspirator trap.

## **PREPARATION FOR CLEAVAGE AND PEPTIDE RECOVERY**

### **Preparation of Reaction Module**

- Cover reaction module, disconnect inlet/aspiration line, and carefully disassemble module, placing aside reactor block.
- Clean reaction module base.
- Label cleavage collection tubes by engraving (when dealing with large number of tubes, reactor row-and-column designations are simplest), and place in corresponding positions in cleavage collection tube rack; insert rack into synthesis/cleavage base.
- Reassemble reaction module, clamp reactor block and base together, and reconnect inlet/aspiration line.

### **Preparation of Dispensing Station**

- When using a cleavage solution containing thiol scavengers:
  1. Establish a cleavage waste bottle and a waste collection container within the fumehood for all disposable materials (such as gloves) contaminated with scavengers or cleavage solution.
  2. Double glove before handling scavengers or cleavage solutions.
  3. Bag all disposable materials before removal from the fumehood.

- Prepare cleavage solution and fill corresponding reservoir. Replace deprotection reservoir connection to dispensing station with cleavage reservoir connection. Set bottle-top dispenser to displace appropriate amount of cleavage solution for resin scale; place collection tray at dispensing station.
- Open deprotection valve at dispensing station valve manifold and continue manually dispensing cleavage reagent until all air has been displaced from dispenser module and each drainage tube is dispensing solution into collection tray below, then close deprotection valve. Empty collection tray to waste.

### **Preparation for Peptide Recovery**

- If ether precipitation of peptides is to be performed after transfer of cleavage solutions to 50 mL conical centrifugation tubes, label these tubes by engraving (when dealing with large number of tubes, reactor row-and-column designations are simplest), and place in corresponding positions in tube rack.
- Assemble aspirating pipet for removal of supernatant.
- Fill ether reservoir equipped with bottle-top dispenser and pre-chill to 4° C. Prepare ice bath for tube rack.

## CLEAVAGE

- Remove cover from reaction module.
- Open pressurization valve at work station valve manifold and adjust gas rotameter control valve as required to achieve a flowrate of 0.5 L/min.
- Slide reaction module into dispensing station, open deprotection valve at dispensing station valve manifold, and use bottletop dispenser to dispense appropriate amount of cleavage reagent for resin scale; turn off deprotection valve and reduce pressurization valve to 0.1 L/min, remove reaction module from dispensing station, and leave for appropriate time (normally a 2 hour cleavage period).
- Once cleavage is complete, turn on aspirator water supply and open slightly vacuum valve at work station to assist in draining liquid from reactors into collection test tubes.
- Place reaction module in dispensing station, open deprotection valve and dispense desired cleavage reagent rinse of resins; remove reaction module from dispensing station and leave to drain for 10-15 minutes.
- Immediately after removing reaction module from dispensing station, place collection tray beneath dispenser; open wash valve and dispense wash solvent to rinse out dispenser. Remove collection tray and dispose of contents to waste.
- Once cleavage collection is complete, turn off aspirator water supply. Carefully disassemble reaction module and remove cleavage collection tube rack. Dispose of remaining cleavage solution in cleavage waste bottle. Proceed to peptide recovery.

## PEPTIDE RECOVERY (Cold Ether Precipitation)

- If synthesis scale is small ( $\leq 0.5$  mL cleaved peptide solution per collection tube), perform ether precipitation in collection tubes; otherwise, transfer cleaved peptide solutions from collection tubes to 50 mL conical centrifugation tubes by direct manual pouring, rinsing out each collection tube with neat TFA from a dispensing bottle.
- Place collection tube / centrifugation tube rack in ice bath.
- Manually dispense ether from pre-chilled dispensing bottle into tubes in serial fashion, vortexing each tube to ensure complete mixing and using appropriate ether-to-cleaved peptide solution volume ratio:

|            |                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| 10:1 ratio | 13x100 mm collection test tubes    |
| 20:1 ratio | 50 mL conical centrifugation tubes |
- Leave undisturbed to precipitate for 30 to 60 minutes.
- Remove supernatant from each tube using pipet aspirator, rinsing with ether between each removal.
- Load tubes onto hollow needle evaporator flushed with nitrogen gas for drying and equipped with 30°C water bath to compensate for evaporative cooling; adjust gas flow to each tube using control valves on needles, and allow precipitates to dry completely.
- Crude peptides are prepared for lyophilization by dissolving in minimal amount of water (up to 10% acetic acid may be required to solubilize peptides); lyophilization from  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$  (aq) can be performed if pH adjustment is required.



## **CLEANING AND MAINTENANCE**

### **Reaction Module**

- If scavengers were used in cleavage solution, reaction module will require bleaching to remove resulting odor.
- Up-end reactor block within waste collection bag and strike sharply to dislodge resin. Remove reactor frits using frit removal tool, and vacuum-clean reactors of remaining solid material (using solid collection trap).
- Soak reactor block, synthesis/cleavage base, and cleavage collection tube rack in bleach bath.
- If reactors exhibit staining, reassemble reaction module, reconnect inlet/aspiration line, pressurize base, fill reactors with 25-50% nitric acid, and soak overnight.
- Wash reaction module and cleavage collection tube rack in soapy water, thoroughly rinse, and dry overnight.
- Insert new o-ring in reactor block after every cleavage; inspect reactor drainage tubes for blockage and corrosion, and clean or replace as required.

### **Dispenser**

- If scavengers were used in cleavage solution, dispenser module will require bleaching to remove resulting odor.

- Remove dispenser module from dispensing station, disassemble module, remove o-ring, and soak top and bottom blocks in bleach bath.
- Wash dispenser module in soapy water, thoroughly rinse, and dry overnight.
- Insert new o-ring in top block; inspect dispensing tubes in bottom block for blockage and corrosion, and clean or replace as required.

### **Cabinet**

- Periodically inspect all tubing and connectors for blockage or leaks, and clean with acetone or replace as required.
- Periodically inspect reservoir bottletop dispensers for blockage or leaks, and clean with ethanol as required; a crystalline deposit may build up in the deprotection reservoir dispenser if left idle, and must be removed before resuming use.

## **APPENDIX C**

### **SEMI-AUTOMATED MULTIPLE PEPTIDE SYNTHESIZER (S.A.M.P.S.)**

**Parts list and specifications**

**Automated functions**

**Programming displays**

## S.A.M.P.S. PARTS LIST AND SPECIFICATIONS

|                            |  |                       |
|----------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| <b>Open cabinet:</b>       | Dispensing station   |                       |
|                            | 5 peristaltic dispenser pumps<br>(mounted on back panel)             |                       |
|                            | Nitrogen gas rotameter with control valve<br>(mounted on back panel) |                       |
|                            | Aspirator trap (with vacuum tubing)                                  |                       |
|                            | Power port and on/off switch<br>Dispenser LCD controller port        |                       |
| <b>Dispensing station:</b> | Slide-in ledge for interchangeable dispensers                        |                       |
|                            | Waste collection tray  |                       |
|                            | Slide-in track for interchangeable reaction modules                  |                       |
|                            | 20-reactor dispenser module  |                       |
|                            | 100-reactor dispenser module   |                       |
|                            | Hand-held LCD controller with cable                                  |                       |
|                            | Solvent reservoirs (with connectors):                                | 3 x 4 L<br>2 x 500 ml |
| <b>Reaction modules:</b>   | 20-reactor reaction module   |                       |
|                            | Cover  |                       |
|                            | Cleavage collection tube rack  | (insert)              |
|                            | 100-reactor reaction module  |                       |
|                            | Cover  |                       |
|                            | Cleavage collection tube rack  | (insert)              |
| <b>Accessories:</b>        | Frit installer   | (tool)                |
|                            | Frit remover   | (tool)                |
|                            | Dispensing rack for activated amino acid solutions                   |                       |
| <b>Replacement parts:</b>  | Reactor block drainage tubes   | (threaded)            |
|                            | Dispensing tubes   | (threaded)            |

## S.A.M.P.S. PARTS LIST AND SPECIFICATIONS (continued)

### Disposables:

Reactor bottom frits

Reaction module and dispenser module o-rings

Pump tubing

Reaction module connection tubing

Activated amino acid solution tubes (15 mL and 50 mL)

Cleavage collection test tubes (13 x 100 mm)

Precipitation conical centrifuge tubes (50 mL)

### Overall specifications:

Width 82 cm (32 in.)

Height 44 cm (17 in.)

Depth 41 cm (16 in.)

Weight 36 kg (80 lb.)

Site Standard fumehood

Electrical 110 V / 220 V

Other requirements: Nitrogen gas supply (cylinder)

Water tap with aspirator

## AUTOMATED FUNCTIONS

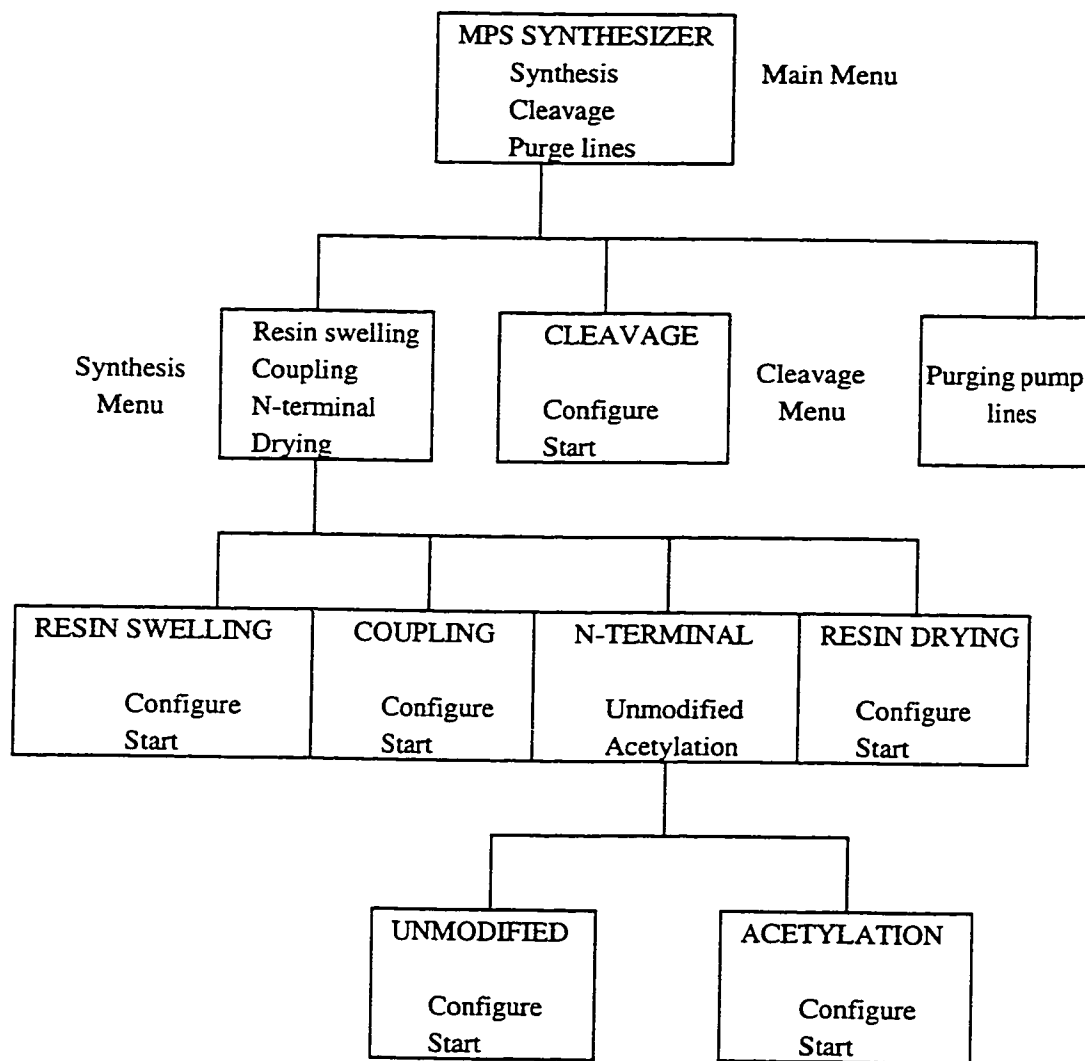
S.A.M.P.S. automated functions are the common synthesis steps of washing, deprotection, N-terminal modification (such as acetylation), and cleavage, as well as housekeeping functions such as pump line priming and purging. The addition of activated amino acid solutions for coupling must be performed manually, and this manual option is also available for acetylation (in case acetylation is not required for all peptides in the reaction module) and cleavage (in case different cleavage solutions are desired for different peptides). The automated functions are performed by a microprocessor-controlled dispenser with interactive programming based on menu-driven selection of functions and modification of function parameters; the functions are independent, permitting a synthesis to be performed in discrete stages rather than in an uninterruptable sequence.

Programming details are provided as flowsheets in the following pages, and include menus, parameter ranges for the different functions, and recommended parameter values. The **Main Menu** provides access to **[Synthesis]**, **[Cleavage]**, and **[Line purging]** options; synthesis functions are performed independently and consist of **Resin Swelling, Coupling** (including deprotection and washing steps), **N-terminal** (with a choice of **Final Deprotection** or an N-terminal modification such as **Acetylation**), and **Resin Drying**. Menu selections are accessed by arrow keys and selected by the **OK** key, while the **ESC** key returns the user to the previous menu. Function menus provide access to parameters through the **[Configure]** option, and allow the function to be initiated through the **[Start]** option. Parameters are selected by arrow keys, old values are cleared by the **CE** key, and new values are entered by the **OK** key. It is important to note that each function retains the latest parameter values upon shutdown, for use as default values upon start-up. Once a

function has been initiated, the procedure can be paused by use of the **ESC** key; a second use of the **ESC** key aborts the process (in case of an error), while the **OK** key resumes the procedure.

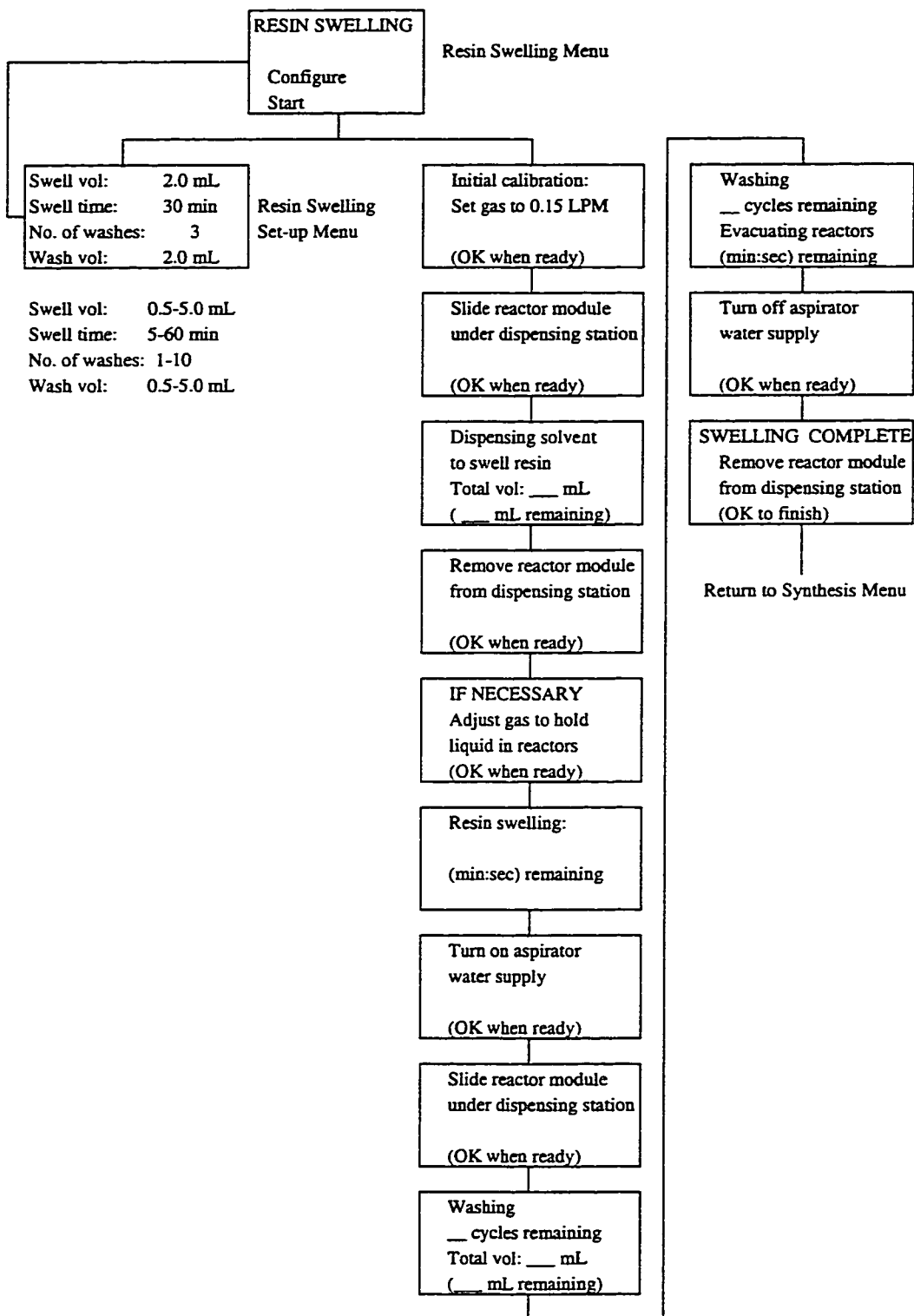
# PROGRAMMING DISPLAYS

## Organizational Overview

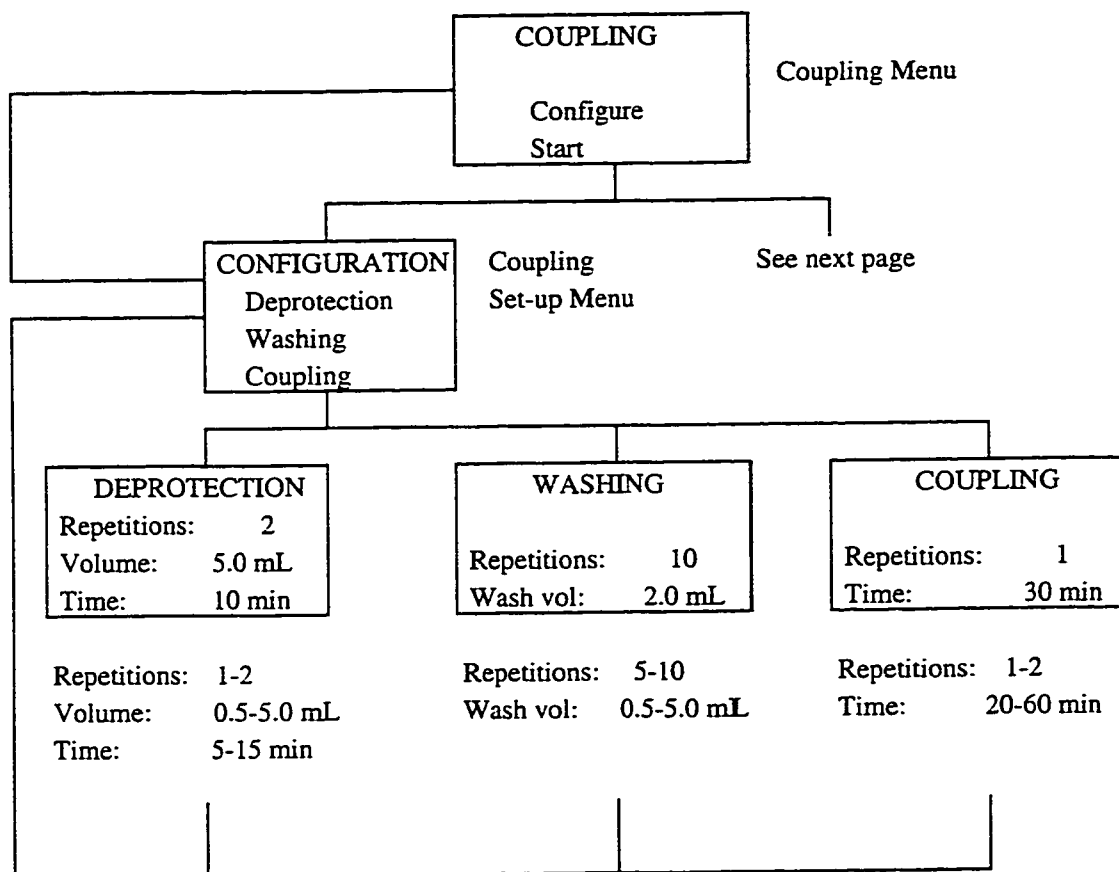


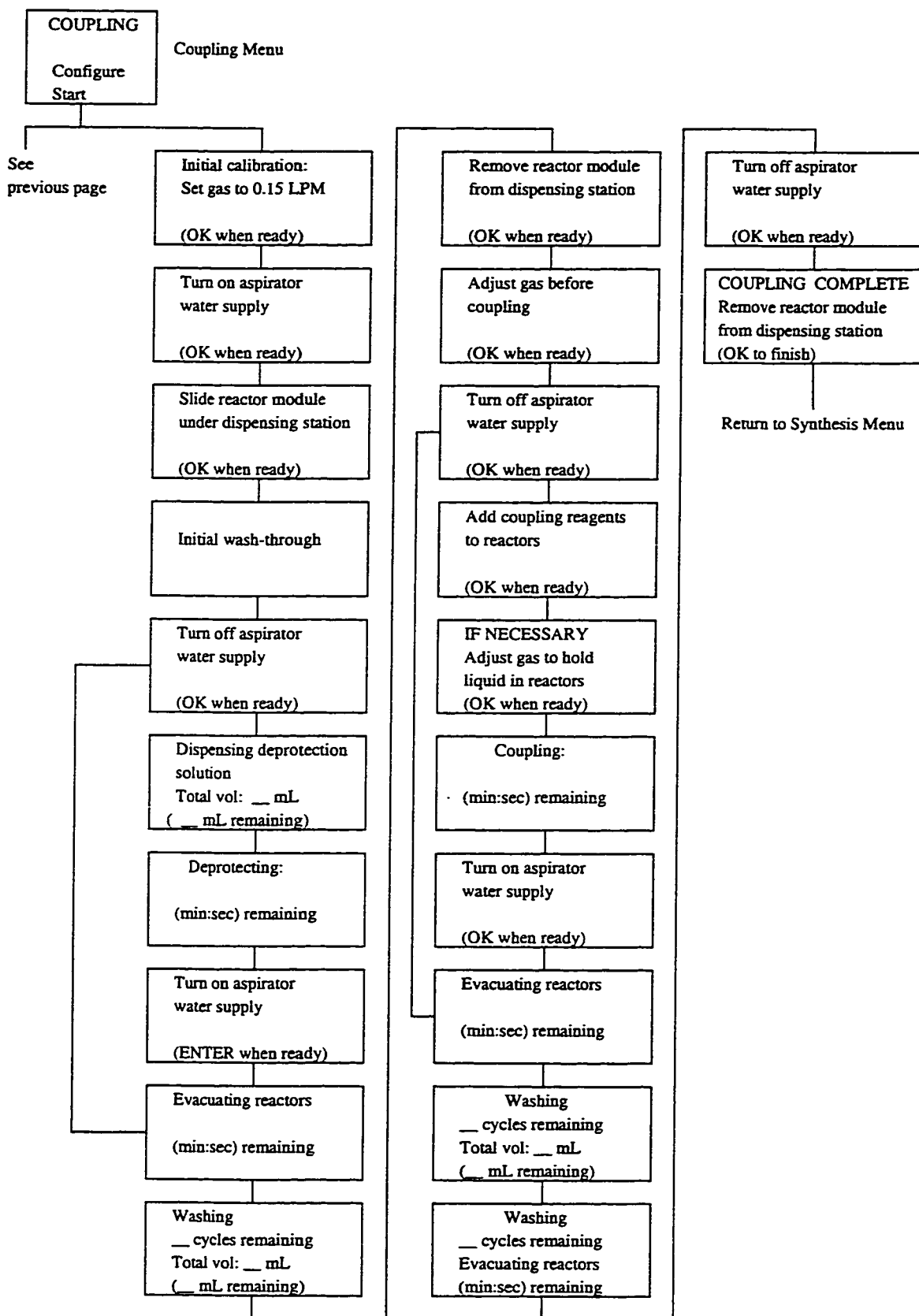


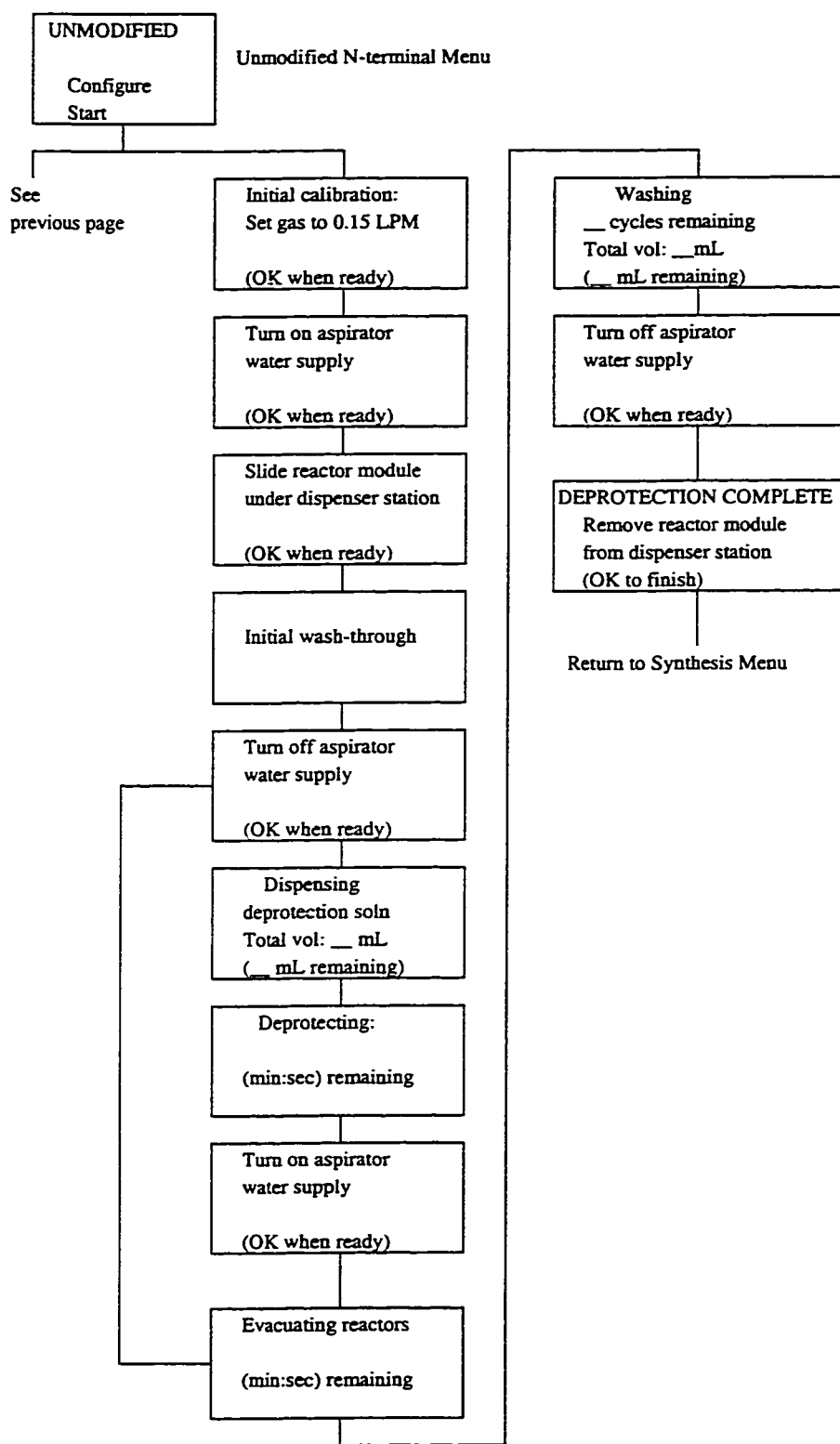
## Resin Swelling Function

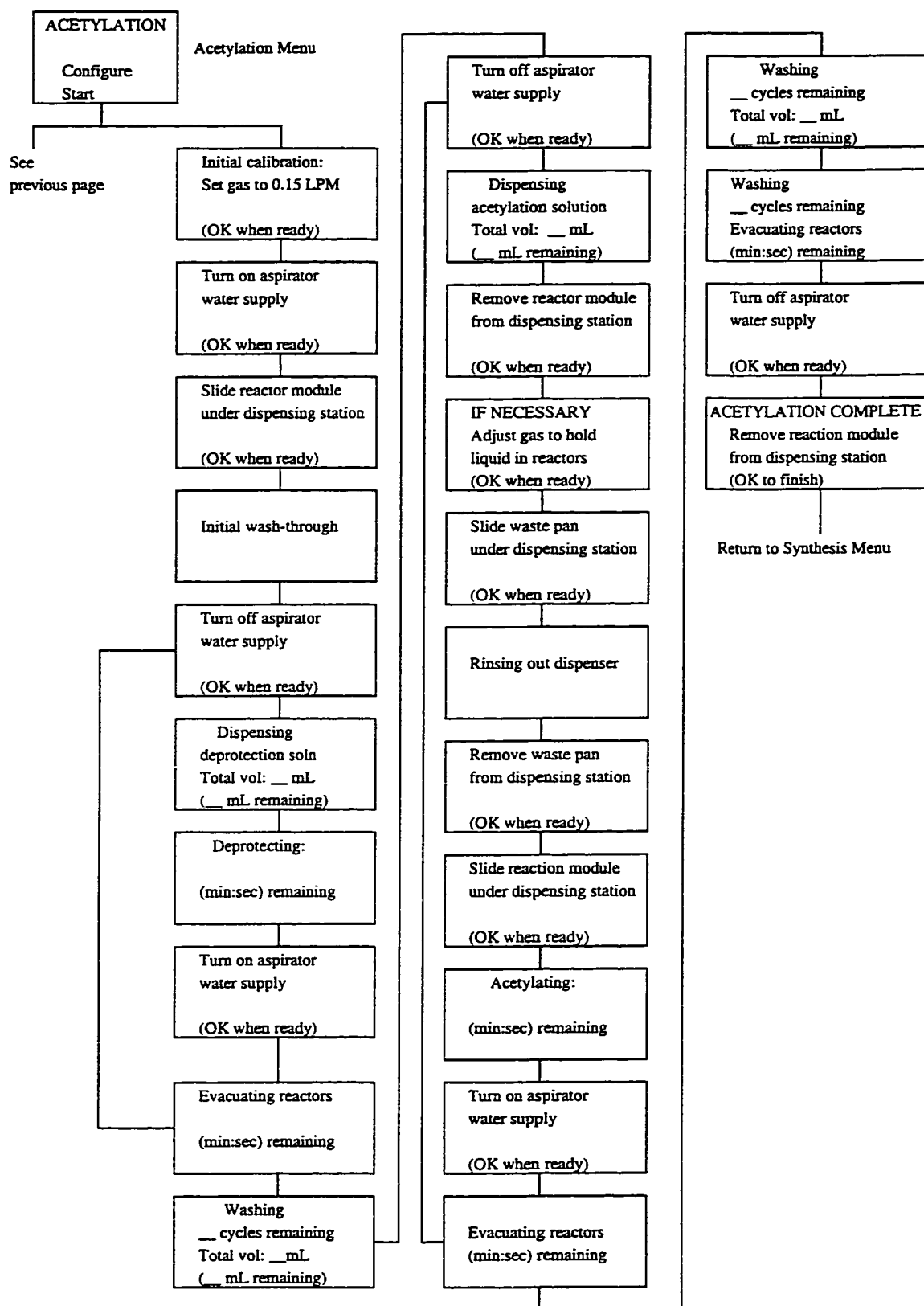


## Coupling Function

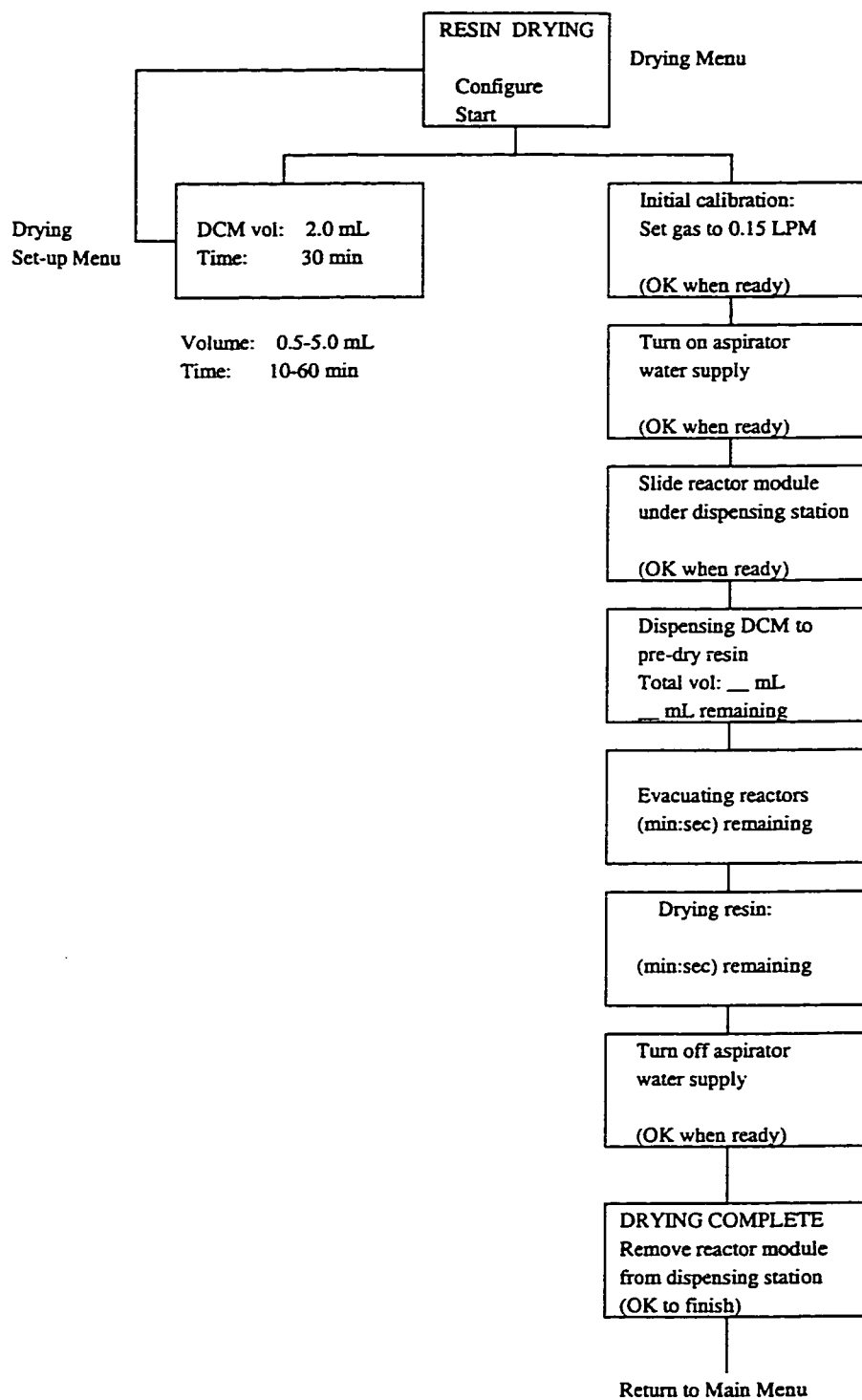








## Resin Drying Function



## Cleavage Function

